



# **1 Kings**

**translationNotes**

v6

# Copyrights & Licensing

## License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to [help@door43.org](mailto:help@door43.org)

**Version:** 6

**Published:** 2017-02-22

## Table of Contents

<b>Copyrights &amp; Licensing</b> . . . . .	<b>1</b>
<b>translationNotes</b> . . . . .	<b>22</b>
Introduction to 1 Kings . . . . .	22
1 Kings 1 General Notes . . . . .	40
1 Kings 1:1-2 . . . . .	41
1 Kings 1:3-4 . . . . .	42
1 Kings 1:5-6 . . . . .	43
1 Kings 1:7-8 . . . . .	45
1 Kings 1:9-10 . . . . .	46
1 Kings 1:11-12 . . . . .	48
1 Kings 1:13-14 . . . . .	49
1 Kings 1:15-17 . . . . .	50
1 Kings 1:18-19 . . . . .	52
1 Kings 1:20-21 . . . . .	53
1 Kings 1:22-23 . . . . .	54
1 Kings 1:24-25 . . . . .	55
1 Kings 1:26-27 . . . . .	57
1 Kings 1:28-31 . . . . .	58
1 Kings 1:32-34 . . . . .	60
1 Kings 1:35-37 . . . . .	61
1 Kings 1:38-40 . . . . .	63
1 Kings 1:41-42 . . . . .	65
1 Kings 1:43-45 . . . . .	66
1 Kings 1:46-48 . . . . .	67
1 Kings 1:49-51 . . . . .	69
1 Kings 1:52-53 . . . . .	71
1 Kings 2 General Notes . . . . .	72
1 Kings 2:1-4 . . . . .	73
1 Kings 2:5-6 . . . . .	75
1 Kings 2:7 . . . . .	77
1 Kings 2:8-9 . . . . .	78
1 Kings 2:10-12 . . . . .	80
1 Kings 2:13-15 . . . . .	82
1 Kings 2:16-18 . . . . .	84
1 Kings 2:19-21 . . . . .	85
1 Kings 2:22-23 . . . . .	87
1 Kings 2:24-25 . . . . .	89
1 Kings 2:26-27 . . . . .	90
1 Kings 2:28-29 . . . . .	91
1 Kings 2:30-31 . . . . .	92
1 Kings 2:32-33 . . . . .	93

*Table of Contents*

---

1 Kings 2:34-35 . . . . .	95
1 Kings 2:36-38 . . . . .	96
1 Kings 2:39-40 . . . . .	97
1 Kings 2:41-42 . . . . .	98
1 Kings 2:43-44 . . . . .	99
1 Kings 2:45-46 . . . . .	100
1 Kings 3 General Notes . . . . .	101
1 Kings 3:1-3 . . . . .	102
1 Kings 3:4-5 . . . . .	104
1 Kings 3:6 . . . . .	105
1 Kings 3:7-9 . . . . .	107
1 Kings 3:10-12 . . . . .	109
1 Kings 3:13-14 . . . . .	111
1 Kings 3:15 . . . . .	112
1 Kings 3:16-17 . . . . .	113
1 Kings 3:18-20 . . . . .	114
1 Kings 3:21-22 . . . . .	115
1 Kings 3:23-25 . . . . .	116
1 Kings 3:26-28 . . . . .	117
1 Kings 4 General Notes . . . . .	119
1 Kings 4:1-4 . . . . .	120
1 Kings 4:5-6 . . . . .	122
1 Kings 4:7-10 . . . . .	123
1 Kings 4:11-14 . . . . .	125
1 Kings 4:15-17 . . . . .	127
1 Kings 4:18-19 . . . . .	128
1 Kings 4:20-23 . . . . .	129
1 Kings 4:24-25 . . . . .	131
1 Kings 4:26-28 . . . . .	132
1 Kings 4:29-31 . . . . .	133
1 Kings 4:32-34 . . . . .	135
1 Kings 5 General Notes . . . . .	136
1 Kings 5:1-3 . . . . .	137
1 Kings 5:4-5 . . . . .	139
1 Kings 5:6 . . . . .	141
1 Kings 5:7-8 . . . . .	142
1 Kings 5:9 . . . . .	143
1 Kings 5:10-12 . . . . .	144
1 Kings 5:13-14 . . . . .	145
1 Kings 5:15-16 . . . . .	146
1 Kings 5:17-18 . . . . .	147
1 Kings 6 General Notes . . . . .	148
1 Kings 6:1-2 . . . . .	149

1 Kings 6:3-4 . . . . .	151
1 Kings 6:5-6 . . . . .	152
1 Kings 6:7-8 . . . . .	153
1 Kings 6:9-10 . . . . .	154
1 Kings 6:11-13 . . . . .	155
1 Kings 6:14-15 . . . . .	157
1 Kings 6:16-18 . . . . .	158
1 Kings 6:19-20 . . . . .	159
1 Kings 6:21-22 . . . . .	160
1 Kings 6:23-26 . . . . .	161
1 Kings 6:27-28 . . . . .	162
1 Kings 6:29-30 . . . . .	163
1 Kings 6:31-32 . . . . .	164
1 Kings 6:33-35 . . . . .	165
1 Kings 6:36 . . . . .	166
1 Kings 6:37-38 . . . . .	167
1 Kings 7 General Notes . . . . .	169
1 Kings 7:1-2 . . . . .	170
1 Kings 7:3-5 . . . . .	171
1 Kings 7:6 . . . . .	172
1 Kings 7:7 . . . . .	173
1 Kings 7:8 . . . . .	174
1 Kings 7:9-10 . . . . .	175
1 Kings 7:11-12 . . . . .	177
1 Kings 7:13-14 . . . . .	178
1 Kings 7:15-17 . . . . .	180
1 Kings 7:18-19 . . . . .	181
1 Kings 7:20-22 . . . . .	182
1 Kings 7:23-24 . . . . .	183
1 Kings 7:25-26 . . . . .	184
1 Kings 7:27-29 . . . . .	185
1 Kings 7:30-31 . . . . .	186
1 Kings 7:32-33 . . . . .	187
1 Kings 7:34-35 . . . . .	188
1 Kings 7:36-37 . . . . .	189
1 Kings 7:38-39 . . . . .	190
1 Kings 7:40-41 . . . . .	191
1 Kings 7:42-43 . . . . .	192
1 Kings 7:44-45 . . . . .	193
1 Kings 7:46-47 . . . . .	194
1 Kings 7:48-49 . . . . .	195
1 Kings 7:50 . . . . .	197
1 Kings 7:51 . . . . .	198

*Table of Contents*

---

1 Kings 8 General Notes . . . . .	199
1 Kings 8:1-2 . . . . .	200
1 Kings 8:3-5 . . . . .	202
1 Kings 8:6-8 . . . . .	204
1 Kings 8:9-11 . . . . .	205
1 Kings 8:12-13 . . . . .	207
1 Kings 8:14-16 . . . . .	208
1 Kings 8:17-19 . . . . .	210
1 Kings 8:20-21 . . . . .	212
1 Kings 8:22-24 . . . . .	214
1 Kings 8:25-26 . . . . .	216
1 Kings 8:27-28 . . . . .	217
1 Kings 8:29-30 . . . . .	219
1 Kings 8:31-32 . . . . .	221
1 Kings 8:33-34 . . . . .	223
1 Kings 8:35-36 . . . . .	225
1 Kings 8:37-38 . . . . .	227
1 Kings 8:39-40 . . . . .	229
1 Kings 8:41-43 . . . . .	230
1 Kings 8:44-45 . . . . .	232
1 Kings 8:46-47 . . . . .	233
1 Kings 8:48 . . . . .	235
1 Kings 8:49-50 . . . . .	236
1 Kings 8:51-53 . . . . .	237
1 Kings 8:54-56 . . . . .	239
1 Kings 8:57-58 . . . . .	241
1 Kings 8:59-61 . . . . .	242
1 Kings 8:62-63 . . . . .	243
1 Kings 8:64 . . . . .	244
1 Kings 8:65-66 . . . . .	245
1 Kings 9 General Notes . . . . .	247
1 Kings 9:1-2 . . . . .	248
1 Kings 9:3 . . . . .	249
1 Kings 9:4-5 . . . . .	250
1 Kings 9:6-7 . . . . .	252
1 Kings 9:8-9 . . . . .	254
1 Kings 9:10-11 . . . . .	256
1 Kings 9:12-14 . . . . .	257
1 Kings 9:15-16 . . . . .	258
1 Kings 9:17-19 . . . . .	259
1 Kings 9:20-21 . . . . .	260
1 Kings 9:22 . . . . .	261
1 Kings 9:23 . . . . .	262

1 Kings 9:24 . . . . .	263
1 Kings 9:25 . . . . .	264
1 Kings 9:26-28 . . . . .	265
1 Kings 10 General Notes . . . . .	266
1 Kings 10:1-2 . . . . .	267
1 Kings 10:3-5 . . . . .	269
1 Kings 10:6-7 . . . . .	270
1 Kings 10:8-9 . . . . .	271
1 Kings 10:10 . . . . .	273
1 Kings 10:11-12 . . . . .	274
1 Kings 10:13 . . . . .	275
1 Kings 10:14-15 . . . . .	276
1 Kings 10:16-17 . . . . .	277
1 Kings 10:18-20 . . . . .	279
1 Kings 10:21-22 . . . . .	280
1 Kings 10:23-25 . . . . .	281
1 Kings 10:26-27 . . . . .	283
1 Kings 10:28-29 . . . . .	284
1 Kings 11 General Notes . . . . .	286
1 Kings 11:1-2 . . . . .	287
1 Kings 11:3-4 . . . . .	289
1 Kings 11:5-6 . . . . .	290
1 Kings 11:7-8 . . . . .	291
1 Kings 11:9-10 . . . . .	292
1 Kings 11:11-13 . . . . .	293
1 Kings 11:14-17 . . . . .	295
1 Kings 11:18-19 . . . . .	297
1 Kings 11:20-22 . . . . .	298
1 Kings 11:23-25 . . . . .	299
1 Kings 11:26-27 . . . . .	301
1 Kings 11:28-30 . . . . .	303
1 Kings 11:31-33 . . . . .	305
1 Kings 11:34-36 . . . . .	307
1 Kings 11:37-39 . . . . .	309
1 Kings 11:40 . . . . .	311
1 Kings 11:41-43 . . . . .	312
1 Kings 12 General Notes . . . . .	314
1 Kings 12:1-2 . . . . .	315
1 Kings 12:3-5 . . . . .	316
1 Kings 12:6-7 . . . . .	317
1 Kings 12:8-9 . . . . .	318
1 Kings 12:10-11 . . . . .	319
1 Kings 12:12-14 . . . . .	320

*Table of Contents*

---

1 Kings 12:15 . . . . .	321
1 Kings 12:16-17 . . . . .	322
1 Kings 12:18-19 . . . . .	324
1 Kings 12:20 . . . . .	325
1 Kings 12:21 . . . . .	326
1 Kings 12:22-24 . . . . .	327
1 Kings 12:25-27 . . . . .	329
1 Kings 12:28-30 . . . . .	331
1 Kings 12:31-32 . . . . .	332
1 Kings 12:33 . . . . .	334
1 Kings 13 General Notes . . . . .	335
1 Kings 13:1-3 . . . . .	336
1 Kings 13:4-5 . . . . .	338
1 Kings 13:6-7 . . . . .	339
1 Kings 13:8-10 . . . . .	340
1 Kings 13:11-13 . . . . .	341
1 Kings 13:14-17 . . . . .	342
1 Kings 13:18-19 . . . . .	344
1 Kings 13:20-22 . . . . .	345
1 Kings 13:23-25 . . . . .	347
1 Kings 13:26-28 . . . . .	348
1 Kings 13:29-30 . . . . .	349
1 Kings 13:31-32 . . . . .	350
1 Kings 13:33-34 . . . . .	351
1 Kings 14 General Notes . . . . .	353
1 Kings 14:1-3 . . . . .	354
1 Kings 14:4-5 . . . . .	355
1 Kings 14:6-8 . . . . .	356
1 Kings 14:9-10 . . . . .	358
1 Kings 14:11-13 . . . . .	360
1 Kings 14:14-16 . . . . .	362
1 Kings 14:17-18 . . . . .	364
1 Kings 14:19-20 . . . . .	365
1 Kings 14:21-22 . . . . .	366
1 Kings 14:23-24 . . . . .	368
1 Kings 14:25-26 . . . . .	370
1 Kings 14:27-28 . . . . .	372
1 Kings 14:29-31 . . . . .	373
1 Kings 15 General Notes . . . . .	375
1 Kings 15:1-3 . . . . .	376
1 Kings 15:4-6 . . . . .	378
1 Kings 15:7-8 . . . . .	380
1 Kings 15:9-11 . . . . .	382



1 Kings 15:12-13 . . . . .	383
1 Kings 15:14-15 . . . . .	384
1 Kings 15:16-17 . . . . .	385
1 Kings 15:18-19 . . . . .	386
1 Kings 15:20-22 . . . . .	388
1 Kings 15:23-24 . . . . .	390
1 Kings 15:25-26 . . . . .	392
1 Kings 15:27-28 . . . . .	394
1 Kings 15:29-30 . . . . .	395
1 Kings 15:31-32 . . . . .	397
1 Kings 15:33-34 . . . . .	398
1 Kings 16 General Notes . . . . .	400
1 Kings 16:1-2 . . . . .	401
1 Kings 16:3-4 . . . . .	403
1 Kings 16:5-6 . . . . .	404
1 Kings 16:7 . . . . .	406
1 Kings 16:8-10 . . . . .	408
1 Kings 16:11-13 . . . . .	410
1 Kings 16:14 . . . . .	412
1 Kings 16:15-17 . . . . .	413
1 Kings 16:18-20 . . . . .	415
1 Kings 16:21-22 . . . . .	417
1 Kings 16:23-24 . . . . .	418
1 Kings 16:25-26 . . . . .	420
1 Kings 16:27-28 . . . . .	422
1 Kings 16:29-30 . . . . .	423
1 Kings 16:31-33 . . . . .	424
1 Kings 16:34 . . . . .	426
1 Kings 17 General Notes . . . . .	428
1 Kings 17:1 . . . . .	429
1 Kings 17:2-4 . . . . .	430
1 Kings 17:5-7 . . . . .	431
1 Kings 17:8-10 . . . . .	432
1 Kings 17:11-13 . . . . .	433
1 Kings 17:14-16 . . . . .	435
1 Kings 17:17-18 . . . . .	437
1 Kings 17:19-21 . . . . .	438
1 Kings 17:22-24 . . . . .	440
1 Kings 18 General Notes . . . . .	441
1 Kings 18:1-2 . . . . .	442
1 Kings 18:3-4 . . . . .	443
1 Kings 18:5-6 . . . . .	444
1 Kings 18:7-8 . . . . .	445

*Table of Contents*

---

1 Kings 18:9-11 . . . . .	446
1 Kings 18:12-13 . . . . .	448
1 Kings 18:14-15 . . . . .	449
1 Kings 18:16-17 . . . . .	450
1 Kings 18:18-19 . . . . .	451
1 Kings 18:20-21 . . . . .	453
1 Kings 18:22-24 . . . . .	454
1 Kings 18:25-26 . . . . .	456
1 Kings 18:27-29 . . . . .	458
1 Kings 18:30-32 . . . . .	460
1 Kings 18:33-35 . . . . .	462
1 Kings 18:36-37 . . . . .	463
1 Kings 18:38-40 . . . . .	465
1 Kings 18:41-42 . . . . .	466
1 Kings 18:43-44 . . . . .	467
1 Kings 18:45-46 . . . . .	468
1 Kings 19 General Notes . . . . .	469
1 Kings 19:1-3 . . . . .	470
1 Kings 19:4-6 . . . . .	472
1 Kings 19:7-8 . . . . .	474
1 Kings 19:9-10 . . . . .	475
1 Kings 19:11-12 . . . . .	477
1 Kings 19:13-14 . . . . .	478
1 Kings 19:15-16 . . . . .	479
1 Kings 19:17-18 . . . . .	480
1 Kings 19:19-20 . . . . .	481
1 Kings 19:21 . . . . .	482
1 Kings 20 General Notes . . . . .	483
1 Kings 20:1-3 . . . . .	484
1 Kings 20:4-6 . . . . .	486
1 Kings 20:7-8 . . . . .	487
1 Kings 20:9-10 . . . . .	488
1 Kings 20:11-12 . . . . .	489
1 Kings 20:13-15 . . . . .	490
1 Kings 20:16-17 . . . . .	492
1 Kings 20:18-19 . . . . .	493
1 Kings 20:20-21 . . . . .	494
1 Kings 20:22-23 . . . . .	495
1 Kings 20:24-25 . . . . .	497
1 Kings 20:26-27 . . . . .	498
1 Kings 20:28 . . . . .	500
1 Kings 20:29-30 . . . . .	501
1 Kings 20:31-32 . . . . .	502

1 Kings 20:33-34 . . . . .	504
1 Kings 20:35-36 . . . . .	506
1 Kings 20:37-38 . . . . .	507
1 Kings 20:39-40 . . . . .	508
1 Kings 20:41-43 . . . . .	510
1 Kings 21 General Notes . . . . .	511
1 Kings 21:1-2 . . . . .	512
1 Kings 21:3-4 . . . . .	513
1 Kings 21:5-7 . . . . .	514
1 Kings 21:8-10 . . . . .	516
1 Kings 21:11-14 . . . . .	518
1 Kings 21:15-16 . . . . .	520
1 Kings 21:17-18 . . . . .	521
1 Kings 21:19-20 . . . . .	522
1 Kings 21:21-22 . . . . .	524
1 Kings 21:23-24 . . . . .	526
1 Kings 21:25-26 . . . . .	527
1 Kings 21:27-29 . . . . .	528
1 Kings 22 General Notes . . . . .	530
1 Kings 22:1-2 . . . . .	531
1 Kings 22:3-4 . . . . .	532
1 Kings 22:5-6 . . . . .	534
1 Kings 22:7-9 . . . . .	535
1 Kings 22:10-12 . . . . .	536
1 Kings 22:13-15 . . . . .	538
1 Kings 22:16-17 . . . . .	540
1 Kings 22:18-20 . . . . .	542
1 Kings 22:21-23 . . . . .	544
1 Kings 22:24-25 . . . . .	545
1 Kings 22:26-28 . . . . .	546
1 Kings 22:29-30 . . . . .	547
1 Kings 22:31-33 . . . . .	548
1 Kings 22:34 . . . . .	549
1 Kings 22:35-36 . . . . .	550
1 Kings 22:37-38 . . . . .	551
1 Kings 22:39-40 . . . . .	552
1 Kings 22:41-42 . . . . .	553
1 Kings 22:43-44 . . . . .	554
1 Kings 22:45-47 . . . . .	555
1 Kings 22:48-50 . . . . .	556
1 Kings 22:51-53 . . . . .	558
<b>translationQuestions . . . . .</b>	<b>560</b>
1 Kings 1 . . . . .	560

Table of Contents

---

1 Kings 2 . . . . .	563
1 Kings 3 . . . . .	567
1 Kings 4 . . . . .	570
1 Kings 5 . . . . .	572
1 Kings 6 . . . . .	574
1 Kings 7 . . . . .	577
1 Kings 8 . . . . .	580
1 Kings 9 . . . . .	585
1 Kings 10 . . . . .	588
1 Kings 11 . . . . .	592
1 Kings 12 . . . . .	597
1 Kings 13 . . . . .	601
1 Kings 14 . . . . .	605
1 Kings 15 . . . . .	609
1 Kings 16 . . . . .	613
1 Kings 17 . . . . .	615
1 Kings 18 . . . . .	617
1 Kings 19 . . . . .	621
1 Kings 20 . . . . .	623
1 Kings 21 . . . . .	626
1 Kings 22 . . . . .	628
<b>translationWords . . . . .</b>	<b>631</b>
twelve tribes of Israel . . . . .	631
Abiathar . . . . .	632
Abijah . . . . .	633
Abner . . . . .	634
Abraham, Abram . . . . .	635
Absalom . . . . .	636
Adonijah . . . . .	637
adversary, enemy . . . . .	638
afflict, affliction . . . . .	639
Ahab . . . . .	640
Ahaziah . . . . .	641
Ahijah . . . . .	642
altar . . . . .	643
Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess . . . . .	644
Amorite . . . . .	645
angel, archangel . . . . .	646
angry, anger . . . . .	648
anoint, anointed . . . . .	649
appoint, appointed . . . . .	650
Arabia, Arabian . . . . .	651
Aram, Aramean, Aramaic . . . . .	652

ark . . . . .	653
ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh . . . . .	654
armor . . . . .	655
Asa . . . . .	656
ash, ashes, dust . . . . .	657
Asher . . . . .	658
Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth . . . . .	659
assembly, assemble . . . . .	660
ax . . . . .	661
Azariah . . . . .	662
Baal . . . . .	663
Baasha . . . . .	664
Bashan . . . . .	665
Bathsheba . . . . .	666
Beersheba . . . . .	667
beg, beggar . . . . .	668
believe, believe in, belief . . . . .	669
Benaiah . . . . .	670
Benjamin . . . . .	671
Bethel . . . . .	672
Beth Shemesh . . . . .	673
biblical time: day . . . . .	674
biblical time: year . . . . .	675
bles, blessed, blessing . . . . .	676
blood . . . . .	678
boast, boastful . . . . .	679
bow, bow down . . . . .	680
bow and arrow . . . . .	681
bread . . . . .	682
breathe, breath . . . . .	683
bronze . . . . .	685
brother . . . . .	686
burden . . . . .	687
burnt offering, offering by fire . . . . .	688
bury, buried, burial . . . . .	689
call, calling, called, call out . . . . .	690
camel . . . . .	692
Canaan, Canaanite . . . . .	693
captive, captivity . . . . .	694
Translation Suggestions . . . . .	695
Carmel, Mount Carmel . . . . .	696
cast out, drive out, throw out . . . . .	697
cedar . . . . .	698

*Table of Contents*

---

chariot . . . . .	699
cherubim, cherub . . . . .	700
chief . . . . .	701
children, child . . . . .	702
Cilicia . . . . .	703
city of David . . . . .	704
command, to command, commandment . . . . .	705
commander, command . . . . .	706
compassion, compassionate . . . . .	707
concubine . . . . .	708
condemn, condemnation . . . . .	709
confess, confession . . . . .	710
confirm, confirmation . . . . .	711
consecrate . . . . .	712
consume . . . . .	713
counsel, counselor, advice, advisor . . . . .	714
courtyard, court . . . . .	715
covenant . . . . .	716
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love . . . . .	718
cow, calf, bull, cattle . . . . .	719
crime, criminal . . . . .	720
cry, cry out . . . . .	721
cupbearer . . . . .	722
curse, cursed . . . . .	723
cut off . . . . .	724
cypress . . . . .	725
Damascus . . . . .	726
Dan . . . . .	727
darkness . . . . .	728
David . . . . .	729
death, die, dead . . . . .	730
declare, declaration . . . . .	732
decree . . . . .	733
dedicate, dedication . . . . .	734
descendant, descended from . . . . .	735
desert, wilderness . . . . .	736
discern, discernment . . . . .	737
disobey, disobedient, disobedience . . . . .	738
dominion . . . . .	739
donkey, mule . . . . .	740
doorpost . . . . .	741
dream . . . . .	742
drunk, drunkard . . . . .	743

dung, manure . . . . .	744
earth, earthly . . . . .	745
Edom, Edomite, Idumea . . . . .	746
Egypt, Egyptian . . . . .	747
elder . . . . .	748
chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect . . . . .	749
Elijah . . . . .	750
Elisha . . . . .	751
Ephraim . . . . .	752
Euphrates River . . . . .	753
evil, wicked, wickedness . . . . .	754
exalt, exaltation . . . . .	756
exile, the Exile . . . . .	757
face . . . . .	758
faithful, faithfulness . . . . .	760
false god, foreign god, god, goddess . . . . .	761
family . . . . .	762
famine . . . . .	763
fast . . . . .	764
ancestor, father, forefather . . . . .	765
favor, favorable, favoritism . . . . .	766
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh . . . . .	767
feast . . . . .	768
fellowship offering . . . . .	769
fig . . . . .	770
fire . . . . .	771
firstborn . . . . .	772
flock, herd . . . . .	773
flute, pipe . . . . .	774
fool, foolish, folly . . . . .	775
foreigner, foreign, alien . . . . .	776
forever . . . . .	777
forgive, forgiveness . . . . .	778
forsake, forsaken, forsook . . . . .	779
foundation, founded . . . . .	780
free, freedom, liberty . . . . .	781
fulfill . . . . .	782
furnace . . . . .	783
Galilee, Galilean . . . . .	784
gate, gate bar . . . . .	785
Gath . . . . .	786
Gaza . . . . .	787
Gibeon, Gibeonite . . . . .	788

*Table of Contents*

---

gift . . . . .	789
Gilead . . . . .	790
glory, glorious . . . . .	791
goat, kid . . . . .	792
God . . . . .	793
gold . . . . .	795
good, goodness . . . . .	796
governor, govern, proconsul, government . . . . .	798
grain offering . . . . .	799
Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites . . . . .	800
hand, right hand, to hand over . . . . .	801
harp . . . . .	803
head . . . . .	804
heart . . . . .	806
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly . . . . .	807
Hebron . . . . .	808
high places . . . . .	809
Hittite . . . . .	810
Hivite . . . . .	811
holy, holiness . . . . .	812
holy place, most holy place . . . . .	813
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord . . . . .	814
honey, honeycomb . . . . .	816
honor, to honor . . . . .	817
Horeb . . . . .	818
horn, horns . . . . .	819
horse . . . . .	820
horsemen . . . . .	821
house . . . . .	822
household . . . . .	823
house of God, Yahweh's house . . . . .	824
humble, humility . . . . .	825
idol, idolatrous . . . . .	826
image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure . . . . .	827
incense . . . . .	828
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir . . . . .	829
innocent . . . . .	831
integrity . . . . .	833
Isaac . . . . .	834
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel . . . . .	835
Issachar . . . . .	836
I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh . . . . .	837
Jacob, Israel . . . . .	838



jealous, jealousy . . . . .	839
Jebusites, Jebus . . . . .	840
Jehoram, Joram . . . . .	841
Jehoshaphat . . . . .	842
Jehu . . . . .	843
Jericho . . . . .	844
Jeroboam . . . . .	845
Jerusalem . . . . .	846
Jesse . . . . .	848
Jezebel . . . . .	849
Jezreel . . . . .	850
Joab . . . . .	851
Jonathan . . . . .	852
Jordan River . . . . .	853
Joseph (OT) . . . . .	854
Joshua . . . . .	855
Josiah . . . . .	856
joy, joyful . . . . .	857
Judah . . . . .	858
judge, judgment . . . . .	859
just, justice, justly . . . . .	861
kingdom . . . . .	862
kingdom of Israel . . . . .	864
Judah, kingdom of Judah . . . . .	865
king . . . . .	867
kiss . . . . .	868
know, knowledge, make known . . . . .	869
labor, laborer . . . . .	870
lamp . . . . .	871
lampstand . . . . .	872
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh . . . . .	873
Lebanon . . . . .	875
letter, epistle . . . . .	876
Levite, Levi . . . . .	877
life, live, living, alive . . . . .	878
lion . . . . .	880
lord, master, sir . . . . .	881
Lord . . . . .	882
Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God . . . . .	883
love . . . . .	884
lute, lyre . . . . .	886
Manasseh . . . . .	887
man of God . . . . .	888

*Table of Contents*

---

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea . . . . .	889
mercy, merciful . . . . .	890
messenger . . . . .	892
Midian, Midianites . . . . .	893
mighty, might . . . . .	894
mind . . . . .	895
Mizpah . . . . .	896
Moab, Moabite, Moabites . . . . .	897
mock, ridicule, scoff at . . . . .	898
Molech, Moloch . . . . .	899
Moses . . . . .	900
mourn, mourning . . . . .	901
name . . . . .	902
Naphtali . . . . .	903
Nathan . . . . .	904
nation . . . . .	905
neighbor . . . . .	906
oak . . . . .	907
oath, swear, swear by . . . . .	908
obey, obedient, obedience . . . . .	909
oil . . . . .	910
olive . . . . .	911
oppress, oppression, oppressor . . . . .	912
ordain . . . . .	913
ox, oxen . . . . .	914
palace . . . . .	915
palm . . . . .	916
Paran . . . . .	917
peace, peaceful . . . . .	918
peace offering . . . . .	919
people group, peoples, the people, a people . . . . .	920
people of God, my people . . . . .	922
Perizzite . . . . .	923
perverse, perversely, pervert . . . . .	924
Pharaoh, king of Egypt . . . . .	925
Philistines . . . . .	926
pillar, column . . . . .	927
plague . . . . .	928
plead, pleading, plea . . . . .	929
possess, possession . . . . .	930
praise . . . . .	931
pray, prayer . . . . .	932
priest, priesthood . . . . .	933

prison, prisoner, imprison . . . . .	935
proclaim, proclamation . . . . .	936
promise . . . . .	937
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess . . . . .	938
prostitute, harlot, whore . . . . .	940
proverb . . . . .	941
punish, punishment . . . . .	942
pure, purify, purification . . . . .	944
queen . . . . .	945
raise, rise, risen, arise, arose . . . . .	946
Ramah . . . . .	948
Ramoth . . . . .	949
rebel, rebellious, rebellion . . . . .	950
receive . . . . .	951
redeem, redemption, redeemer . . . . .	952
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea . . . . .	953
reed, reeds . . . . .	954
Rehoboam . . . . .	955
reign . . . . .	956
rejoice . . . . .	957
repent, repentance . . . . .	958
report . . . . .	959
rest . . . . .	960
restore, restoration . . . . .	961
reward . . . . .	962
righteous, righteousness . . . . .	963
right hand . . . . .	964
robe . . . . .	965
royal . . . . .	966
ruin, ruins . . . . .	967
ruler, rulers, rule . . . . .	968
sackcloth . . . . .	969
sacrifice, offering . . . . .	970
Samaria, Samaritan . . . . .	972
save, safe . . . . .	973
seal, to seal . . . . .	975
seed . . . . .	976
seize . . . . .	977
send, send out, sent . . . . .	978
servant, slave, slavery . . . . .	979
serve, service . . . . .	981
set apart . . . . .	982
sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking . . . . .	983

*Table of Contents*

---

Sheba . . . . .	984
Shechem . . . . .	985
sheep, ram, ewe . . . . .	986
shepherd, to shepherd . . . . .	987
shield . . . . .	989
Shiloh . . . . .	990
Shimei . . . . .	991
Sidon, Sidonians . . . . .	992
siege, besiege . . . . .	993
sign, proof, reminder . . . . .	994
silver . . . . .	996
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning . . . . .	997
slaughter . . . . .	999
sleep, asleep, fall asleep . . . . .	1000
Solomon . . . . .	1001
son, son of . . . . .	1002
soul . . . . .	1004
spear . . . . .	1005
spirit, spiritual . . . . .	1006
statute, statutes . . . . .	1008
stone, stoning . . . . .	1009
strength, strengthen . . . . .	1010
stronghold, fortress, fortified . . . . .	1012
subject, be subject to, in subjection to . . . . .	1013
Succoth . . . . .	1014
suffer, suffering . . . . .	1015
sweep, swept . . . . .	1016
sword . . . . .	1017
temple . . . . .	1018
tent . . . . .	1020
tent of meeting . . . . .	1021
test . . . . .	1022
testimony, testify . . . . .	1023
threshold . . . . .	1024
throne . . . . .	1025
tomb, grave, burial place . . . . .	1026
transgress, transgression . . . . .	1027
tribe . . . . .	1028
tribute . . . . .	1029
trouble, troubles, troubled . . . . .	1030
true, truth, come true . . . . .	1031
trumpet . . . . .	1033
trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness . . . . .	1034

turn, turn away, turn back . . . . .	1035
Tyre, Tyrians . . . . .	1036
understand, understanding . . . . .	1037
Uriah . . . . .	1038
vine . . . . .	1039
vineyard . . . . .	1040
virgin . . . . .	1041
voice . . . . .	1042
vow . . . . .	1043
walk . . . . .	1044
water, waters . . . . .	1045
will of God . . . . .	1046
wise, wisdom . . . . .	1047
woe . . . . .	1048
word . . . . .	1049
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture . . . . .	1050
works, deeds, work, acts . . . . .	1052
worship . . . . .	1053
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless . . . . .	1054
written . . . . .	1055
Yahweh . . . . .	1056
Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host . . . . .	1058
yoke . . . . .	1059
Zadok . . . . .	1060
zeal, zealous . . . . .	1061
Zion, Mount Zion . . . . .	1062
<b>translationAcademy . . . . .</b>	<b>1063</b>
First, Second or Third Person . . . . .	1063
Abstract Nouns . . . . .	1065
Active or Passive . . . . .	1068
Apostrophe . . . . .	1071
Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding . . . . .	1073
Double Negatives . . . . .	1075
Doublet . . . . .	1078
Ellipsis . . . . .	1080
Euphemism . . . . .	1082
Exclusive “We” . . . . .	1084
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . . .	1086
Generic Noun Phrases . . . . .	1088
Hendiadys . . . . .	1090
Hyperbole . . . . .	1092
Hypothetical Situations . . . . .	1095
Idiom . . . . .	1098

*Table of Contents*

---

Inclusive “We” . . . . .	1100
Litotes . . . . .	1102
Merism . . . . .	1104
Metaphor . . . . .	1106
Metonymy . . . . .	1111
Nominal Adjectives . . . . .	1113
Parallelism . . . . .	1115
Personification . . . . .	1117
Pronouns . . . . .	1119
Direct and Indirect Quotations . . . . .	1121
Reflexive Pronouns . . . . .	1123
Rhetorical Question . . . . .	1126
Simile . . . . .	1129
Synecdoche . . . . .	1132
Forms of ‘You’ - Dual/Plural . . . . .	1134
Biblical Distance . . . . .	1136
Biblical Volume . . . . .	1139
Biblical Weight . . . . .	1143
Hebrew Months . . . . .	1145
How to Translate Names . . . . .	1148
Numbers . . . . .	1152
Ordinal Numbers . . . . .	1155
Symbolic Action . . . . .	1158
Translate Unknowns . . . . .	1161
Background Information . . . . .	1164
Introduction of a New Event . . . . .	1167
Proverbs . . . . .	1171

## translationNotes

### Introduction to 1 Kings

#### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of 1 Kings

1. The death of David and the beginning of Solomon's reign
2. The reign of Solomon (3:1–11:43)
  - a) Solomon's wisdom and glory (3:1–4:43)
  - b) Solomon's temple (5:1–8:66)
  - c) Rise and fall of Solomon (9:1–11:43)
3. The kingdom divides
  - a) Rehoboam succeeds Solomon (12:1–24)
  - b) Jeroboam rules the northern kingdom of Israel (12:25–33)
  - c) Ahijah's prophecies against Jeroboam (13:1–14:20)
  - d) Rehoboam's end (14:21–31)
4. Kings and events in Israel and Judah
  - a) Abijam and Asa in Judah (15:1–24)
  - b) Nadab in Israel (15:25–32)
  - c) Baasha in Israel (15:33–16:7)
  - d) Elah in Israel (16:8–14)
  - e) Zimri in Israel (16:15–22)
  - f) Omri in Israel (16:23–28)
  - g) Ahab in Israel (16:29–22:40)
  - h) Jehoshaphat in Judah (22:41–50)
  - i) Ahaziah in Israel (22:51–53)

#### What are the Books of 1 and 2 Kings about?

These books are about the history of the people of Yahweh from the time when they split into two kingdoms after Solomon's death. This was the time when the northern kingdom went its own way under its own kings. The Books of 1 and 2 Kings tell this story from the viewpoint that the kings and the priests should have taught their people to be faithful to Yahweh and to his covenant with them.

The Book of 2 Kings tells how King Josiah repaired the temple and reformed the worship of Yahweh. His actions were in response to the rediscovery of a copy of the Law of Yahweh in Jerusalem (see: 2 Kings 22–23). But at the same time, the northern kingdom was growing increasingly corrupt until the Assyrians conquered it in 722 BC. Finally, the southern kingdom fell to the Babylonian Empire in 586 BC.

**How should the title of this book be translated?**

The books of 1 and 2 Kings were originally one book in Hebrew but were separated into two books when they were translated in Greek. Translators might choose to create a more meaningful title such as “The First Book about the Kings” and “The Second Book about the Kings.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts****What was the religious purpose of 1 and 2 Kings?**

These books were probably written during the exile, after the temple had been destroyed by the Babylonians. Because the temple had had such great religious and cultural significance, the writer may have wanted to explain why the Jews were in exile and how they could continue to worship Yahweh without performing temple sacrifices.

**Part 3: Important Translation Issues****Why do the Books of 1 and 2 Kings refer to someone being addressed indirectly?**

In the languages of the original Old Testament, people often referred to themselves as “your servant” when speaking to anyone in a superior position to themselves. For example, David frequently called himself “your servant” when he spoke to King Saul. He also called Saul “my master.” This type of indirect reference was intended to show honor to the one addressed. English sometimes uses the address “sir” in this way, but a translator should use whatever expressions that are natural in the project language in order to honor someone in a superior position.

**What does the king “did what was right (or evil) in the eyes of Yahweh” mean?**

This kind of expression is repeated throughout the books of 1 and 2 Kings. The writer evaluated the achievements and failures of the people and their kings by how well they kept the covenant with Yahweh.

**What is the meaning of the term Israel?**

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. The descendants of Jacob, who was also named Israel, were a people group who became known as Israel. This people group developed into the unified nation of Israel. After the civil war in the nation of Israel, the tribes in the north took the name Israel, while the southern kingdom became known as the kingdom of Judah.

**List of translationAcademy Topics in 1 Kings**

\* [Abstract Nouns](#) is found in: [20:09](#)



- \* **Active or Passive** is found in: 01:20, 02:10, 02:13, 02:19, 02:28, 02:41, 03:01, 04:05, 05:07, 07:07, 07:09, 07:13, 07:18, 07:20, 07:23, 07:25, 07:30, 07:32, 07:34, 07:36, 07:46, 07:48, 08:03, 08:06, 08:14, 08:17, 08:31, 08:33, 08:37, 08:41, 08:46, 08:51, 08:54, 09:08, 09:12, 10:08, 10:10, 10:11, 10:28, 11:14, 11:41, 12:15, 12:22, 13:01, 13:04, 13:06, 13:23, 13:33, 14:01, 14:06, 14:11, 14:14, 14:17, 14:19, 15:14, 18:12, 18:25, 18:27, 18:36, 19:04, 20:16, 20:26, 21:11, 21:15, 22:10, 22:35, 22:37, 22:43, 22:48
- \* **Apostrophe** is found in: 13:01
- \* **Double Negatives** is found in: 02:08, 09:04, 10:06, 18:09, 20:07
- \* **Doublet** is found in: 02:32, 08:27, 08:29, 08:44, 08:46, 08:57, 08:65, 09:04, 09:06, 12:22, 18:25, 20:22, 20:41, 21:03, 21:15, 21:21, 22:51
- \* **Ellipsis** is found in: 22:24
- \* **Euphemism** is found in: 02:01, 02:10, 11:20, 14:19, 14:29, 15:07, 15:23, 16:05, 16:27, 17:17, 18:27, 22:39, 22:48
- \* **Exclusive “We”** is found in: 22:13
- \* **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information** is found in: 01:52, 02:01, 03:18, 07:13, 07:30, 07:44, 07:46, 11:03, 12:20, 12:31, 14:27, 15:01, 15:16, 15:18, 17:11, 18:16, 18:33, 19:21, 21:03
- \* **Generic Noun Phrases** is found in: 17:17
- \* **Hendiadys** is found in: 10:06
- \* **Hyperbole** is found in: 01:28, 04:20, 08:62, 10:23, 12:16, 12:18, 14:23, 18:18, 18:22, 19:09, 20:07
- \* **Hypothetical Situations** is found in: 22:26
- \* **Idiom** is found in: 01:24, 01:49, 01:52, 02:01, 02:22, 02:39, 03:07, 03:13, 05:01, 06:11, 08:17, 08:22, 08:25, 08:35, 08:57, 08:59, 09:04, 09:06, 10:01, 10:03, 10:08, 10:13, 10:23, 11:05, 11:09, 12:06, 12:08, 12:22, 12:31, 12:33, 13:01, 13:20, 14:04, 15:18, 15:25, 15:33, 16:01, 16:07, 16:18, 16:25, 16:31, 17:01, 17:02, 17:08, 17:14, 17:19, 18:01, 18:14, 18:20, 19:04, 19:09, 19:11, 19:13, 19:17, 20:04, 20:07, 20:39, 21:08, 21:11, 21:17, 21:19, 21:25, 21:27, 22:03, 22:18, 22:35, 22:43, 22:51
- \* **Inclusive “We”** is found in: 20:22
- \* **Litotes** is found in: 04:26
- \* **Merism** is found in: 04:24, 08:29, 08:59, 22:31
- \* **Metaphor** is found in: 03:01, 03:06, 03:07, 04:29, 11:11, 11:31, 11:37, 11:41, 12:03, 12:08, 12:10, 14:06, 14:09, 14:14, 15:01, 15:04, 16:01, 17:19, 20:09, 20:31, 22:10
- \* **Metonymy** is found in: 01:13, 01:15, 01:26, 01:28, 01:35, 01:46, 02:01, 02:05, 02:07, 02:08, 02:10, 02:16, 02:19, 02:24, 02:28, 02:30, 02:32, 02:34, 02:36, 02:43, 02:45, 03:06, 03:10, 03:13, 03:26, 04:24, 05:01, 05:04, 06:11, 08:14, 08:20, 08:22, 08:25, 08:29, 08:31, 08:51, 09:03, 09:04, 09:06, 10:01, 10:06, 10:08, 10:11, 10:23, 11:01, 11:03, 11:11, 11:26, 11:28, 11:31, 11:34, 11:37, 12:16, 12:18, 12:20, 12:21, 12:22, 12:28, 12:31, 13:01, 14:21, 14:23, 14:27, 15:14, 15:18, 15:25, 15:33, 16:07, 16:11, 16:18, 16:25, 16:29, 17:02, 17:05, 17:08, 17:14, 17:22, 18:05, 18:09, 18:22, 18:30, 18:36, 18:45, 19:17, 20:11, 20:13, 20:22, 20:28, 20:33, 20:35, 20:41, 21:19, 21:25, 22:03, 22:05, 22:10, 22:13, 22:16, 22:21, 22:37, 22:43, 22:51

- \* **Parallelism** is found in: 08:06, 08:27, 08:35, 08:41, 08:46, 08:49, 09:06, 09:08, 10:13, 12:25, 15:29, 16:31, 17:22, 18:05, 18:27, 20:13, 21:11, 22:35
- \* **Personification** is found in: 18:38
- \* **Pronouns** is found in: 01:13, 01:20, 01:32, 01:35, 01:49, 03:06, 03:07, 03:18
- \* **Reflexive Pronouns** is found in: 19:04, 19:19
- \* **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 01:05, 01:11, 01:13, 02:22, 02:41, 02:43, 03:07, 08:27, 09:12, 12:16, 14:06, 14:29, 15:07, 15:23, 15:31, 16:05, 16:14, 16:18, 16:27, 17:19, 18:07, 18:09, 18:16, 18:20, 19:09, 20:13, 20:31, 21:05, 21:19, 21:27, 22:03, 22:16, 22:18, 22:24, 22:39, 22:45
- \* **Simile** is found in: 04:29, 07:25, 07:40, 20:26, 22:16
- \* **Synecdoche** is found in: 01:20, 06:01, 06:09, 06:14, 06:27, 06:31, 06:36, 07:01, 07:20, 07:48, 07:51, 08:01, 08:57, 09:03, 09:10, 09:15, 09:17, 09:25, 09:26, 10:16, 10:18, 11:14, 11:23, 12:01, 12:25, 12:33, 14:17, 14:25, 14:27, 15:01, 15:04, 15:09, 15:12, 15:20, 15:27, 16:07, 16:15, 16:23, 19:17, 20:04, 20:07, 20:20, 20:26, 20:29, 21:01, 21:05
- \* **Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural** is found in: 18:25
- \* **Biblical Distance** is found in: 06:01, 06:16, 07:01, 07:09, 07:15, 07:23, 07:27, 07:34
- \* **Biblical Volume** is found in: 04:20, 05:10, 07:25, 07:38, 18:30
- \* **Biblical Weight** is found in: 09:12, 09:26, 10:10, 10:14, 10:16, 10:28, 16:23, 20:39
- \* **Hebrew Months** is found in: 06:01, 06:37, 08:01, 12:31
- \* **How to Translate Names** is found in: 01:03, 01:07, 01:09, 01:11, 01:32, 01:38, 01:43, 02:07, 02:08, 02:39, 04:01, 04:05, 04:07, 04:11, 04:15, 04:18, 04:29, 07:20, 07:46, 11:01, 11:05, 11:07, 11:14, 11:18, 11:20, 11:23, 11:26, 11:28, 11:31, 11:40, 17:01, 17:02, 17:05, 17:08, 18:38, 20:01, 20:26, 21:01
- \* **Numbers** is found in: 07:20, 07:42, 08:65, 09:10, 09:23, 10:16, 10:26, 11:03, 14:21, 15:01, 15:09, 17:11, 18:03, 18:12, 18:18, 18:30, 18:33, 18:43, 19:07, 19:17, 19:19, 20:01, 20:13, 20:29, 22:01, 22:05, 22:31, 22:41, 22:51
- \* **Ordinal Numbers** is found in: 06:01, 06:37
- \* **Translate Unknowns** is found in: 04:20, 04:32, 06:14, 17:02, 19:04
- \* **Background Information** is found in: 18:01

### List of translationWords in 1 Kings

- \* **twelve tribes of Israel** is found in: 14:21, 18:30
- \* **Abiathar** is found in: 01:07, 01:18, 01:41, 02:22, 02:34, 04:01
- \* **Abijah** is found in: 14:01, 14:11, 14:29, 15:01
- \* **Abner** is found in: 02:05, 02:32
- \* **Abraham, Abram** is found in: 18:36

- \* Absalom is found in: 01:05, 02:07, 02:28
- \* Adonijah is found in: 01:05, 01:41, 02:13, 02:22
- \* adversary, enemy is found in: 05:04, 08:33, 08:37, 08:44, 08:46, 11:14, 11:23, 20:20, 20:39, 21:19
- \* afflict, affliction is found in: 08:35
- \* Ahab is found in: 16:27, 17:01, 18:01, 18:09, 18:16, 18:41, 18:45, 19:01, 20:01, 20:09, 20:33, 21:01, 21:08, 21:15, 21:23, 22:10, 22:18, 22:29, 22:37, 22:48
- \* Ahaziah is found in: 22:39, 22:48
- \* Ahijah is found in: 04:01, 11:28, 12:15, 14:01, 14:17, 15:27, 15:29, 15:33, 21:21
- \* altar is found in: 01:49, 01:52, 02:28, 03:04, 06:19, 06:21, 07:48, 08:22, 08:31, 08:54, 08:64, 09:25, 12:31, 13:01, 13:31, 16:31, 18:25, 18:30, 19:09
- \* Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess is found in: 11:01, 11:07, 11:31, 14:21, 14:29
- \* Amorite is found in: 04:18, 09:20, 21:25
- \* angel, archangel is found in: 13:18, 19:04, 19:07
- \* angry, anger is found in: 08:46, 11:09, 14:09, 15:29, 16:01, 16:07, 16:25, 20:41, 21:03, 21:21, 22:51
- \* anoint, anointed is found in: 01:32, 05:01, 19:15
- \* Arabia, Arabian is found in: 10:14
- \* Aram, Aramean, Aramaic is found in: 10:28, 11:23, 15:18, 19:15, 20:01, 20:20, 20:26, 22:01, 22:10, 22:31
- \* ark is found in: 08:03, 08:09
- \* ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh is found in: 02:26, 03:15, 06:19, 08:01, 08:06, 08:20
- \* armor is found in: 10:23, 20:11, 22:34
- \* Asa is found in: 15:07, 15:16, 15:25, 15:31, 16:08, 16:15, 16:23, 16:29, 22:41
- \* ash, ashes, dust is found in: 20:09
- \* Asher is found in: 04:15
- \* Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth is found in: 14:14, 14:23, 15:12, 16:31, 18:18
- \* assembly, assemble is found in: 08:14, 08:22, 08:54, 08:65, 12:03, 12:20
- \* ax is found in: 06:07
- \* Azariah is found in: 04:01
- \* Baal is found in: 16:31, 18:18, 18:22, 18:25, 18:38, 19:17, 22:51
- \* Baasha is found in: 15:16, 15:27, 16:01, 16:07, 21:21
- \* Bashan is found in: 04:11, 04:18
- \* Bathsheba is found in: 01:11, 02:13

- \* Beersheba is found in: 04:24, 19:01
- \* beg, beggar is found in: 17:19
- \* believe, believe in, belief is found in: 10:06
- \* Benaiah is found in: 01:07, 01:26, 02:24, 02:30, 02:45, 04:01
- \* Benjamin is found in: 02:08, 04:18, 12:21, 15:20
- \* Bethel is found in: 12:28, 13:01, 13:08, 13:31, 16:34
- \* Beth Shemesh is found in: 04:07
- \* biblical time: day is found in: 12:31
- \* biblical time: year is found in: 05:10, 06:01, 06:37, 07:01
- \* bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 01:46, 02:45, 05:07, 08:14, 08:54, 08:65, 10:08
- \* blood is found in: 02:05, 02:30, 02:36, 18:27, 21:19, 22:35
- \* boast, boastful is found in: 20:11
- \* bow, bow down is found in: 01:15, 01:28, 01:46, 02:19, 09:06, 16:31, 18:41
- \* bow and arrow is found in: 22:34
- \* bread is found in: 07:48, 13:08, 17:05, 18:03, 18:12, 19:04, 22:26
- \* breathe, breath is found in: 17:17
- \* bronze is found in: 04:11, 07:13, 07:15, 07:27, 07:38, 07:44, 07:46, 08:64, 14:27
- \* brother is found in: 01:09, 02:07, 02:13, 02:22, 09:12, 12:22, 13:29, 20:31
- \* burden is found in: 12:10
- \* burnt offering, offering by fire is found in: 03:04, 03:15, 08:64, 09:25, 10:03, 18:33
- \* bury, buried, burial is found in: 02:10, 02:30, 11:14, 13:20, 13:29, 14:11, 14:29, 15:07, 15:23, 16:05, 16:27, 22:37, 22:48
- \* call, calling, called, call out is found in: 08:41, 12:03, 17:08, 18:03, 18:22, 20:07, 22:13
- \* camel is found in: 10:01
- \* Canaan, Canaanite is found in: 09:15
- \* captive, captivity is found in: 08:46
- \* Carmel, Mount Carmel is found in: 18:18, 18:41
- \* cast out, drive out, throw out is found in: 09:06, 14:23
- \* cedar is found in: 04:32, 05:06, 06:09, 06:14, 06:36, 07:01, 07:11, 09:10, 10:26
- \* chariot is found in: 01:05, 04:26, 07:32, 09:17, 09:22, 10:26, 12:18, 16:08, 18:43, 20:01, 20:20, 20:33, 22:31, 22:37
- \* cherubim, cherub is found in: 06:23, 06:27, 06:29, 06:31, 06:33, 07:27, 07:36, 08:06

- \* chief is found in: 09:23
- \* children, child is found in: 03:07, 03:16, 03:23, 16:11, 20:01, 21:21
- \* Cilicia is found in: 10:28
- \* city of David is found in: 02:10, 03:01, 08:01, 09:24, 11:41, 14:29, 15:07, 15:23, 22:48
- \* command, to command, commandment is found in: 02:01, 02:43, 03:13, 05:06, 05:17, 06:11, 08:49, 08:57, 09:04, 09:22, 11:09, 11:34, 13:08, 13:20, 14:06, 15:04, 17:02, 18:18, 20:11, 20:24, 22:07, 22:31
- \* commander, command is found in: 02:05, 11:28, 14:27, 15:20, 16:15
- \* compassion, compassionate is found in: 03:26, 08:49
- \* concubine is found in: 11:03
- \* condemn, condemnation is found in: 08:31
- \* confess, confession is found in: 08:33
- \* confirm, confirmation is found in: 06:11
- \* consecrate is found in: 13:33
- \* consume is found in: 18:38, 21:21, 22:10
- \* counsel, counselor, advice, advisor is found in: 01:11, 20:24, 22:07
- \* courtyard, court is found in: 07:08, 07:11, 08:64
- \* covenant is found in: 05:10, 08:09, 08:20, 11:11, 19:09
- \* covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love is found in: 03:06, 08:22
- \* cow, calf, bull, cattle is found in: 01:09, 12:28, 18:22, 18:25, 18:33
- \* crime, criminal is found in: 01:20
- \* cry, cry out is found in: 20:39, 22:31
- \* cupbearer is found in: 10:03
- \* curse, cursed is found in: 02:08, 21:08
- \* cut off is found in: 09:06, 14:09, 21:21
- \* cypress is found in: 05:07, 06:14, 06:33
- \* Damascus is found in: 11:23, 15:18, 19:15, 20:33
- \* Dan is found in: 04:24, 12:28, 15:20
- \* darkness is found in: 08:12
- \* David is found in: 01:01, 01:11, 02:01, 02:24, 02:32, 03:01, 03:07, 05:01, 06:11, 07:51, 08:14, 08:17, 08:20, 08:65, 09:04, 11:03, 11:11, 11:20, 11:26, 11:34, 11:41, 12:16, 12:25, 13:01, 14:06, 15:01, 15:09
- \* death, die, dead is found in: 01:52, 02:08, 02:24, 02:30, 02:36, 03:18, 11:14, 11:40, 12:18, 13:31, 14:11, 16:03, 17:11, 19:01, 20:41, 21:08, 21:23, 22:35

- \* declare, declaration is found in: 22:37
- \* decree is found in: 02:01, 08:57, 09:04, 11:31, 22:21
- \* dedicate, dedication is found in: 08:62
- \* descendant, descended from is found in: 02:32, 08:25, 09:04, 09:20, 11:37, 15:29
- \* desert, wilderness is found in: 02:34, 09:17, 19:04, 19:15
- \* discern, discernment is found in: 03:07, 03:10
- \* disobey, disobedient, disobedience is found in: 13:20
- \* dominion is found in: 04:24
- \* donkey, mule is found in: 01:32, 02:39, 10:23, 13:11, 13:23, 18:05
- \* doorpost is found in: 06:31, 06:33
- \* dream is found in: 03:04, 03:15
- \* drunk, drunkard is found in: 16:08, 20:16
- \* dung, manure is found in: 14:09
- \* earth, earthly is found in: 01:38, 08:22, 08:27, 10:23, 13:33, 17:14, 18:41
- \* Edom, Edomite, Idumea is found in: 09:26, 11:01, 11:14, 22:45
- \* Egypt, Egyptian is found in: 03:01, 04:20, 04:29, 06:01, 08:09, 08:14, 08:20, 08:51, 08:65, 09:08, 10:28, 11:14, 11:40, 12:01, 12:28, 14:25
- \* elder is found in: 08:01, 08:03, 20:07, 21:08
- \* chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect is found in: 03:07
- \* Elijah is found in: 17:01, 17:11, 17:19, 18:01, 18:07, 18:14, 18:20, 18:22, 18:25, 18:27, 18:36, 18:43, 19:01, 19:09, 19:19, 21:17, 21:27
- \* Elisha is found in: 19:15, 19:21
- \* Ephraim is found in: 04:07, 11:26, 12:25
- \* Euphrates River is found in: 14:14
- \* evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 01:52, 02:43, 03:07, 08:31, 08:46, 11:05, 13:33, 14:09, 15:25, 15:33, 16:07, 16:18, 16:25, 21:19, 21:25, 22:51
- \* exalt, exaltation is found in: 01:05, 16:01
- \* exile, the Exile is found in: 08:46
- \* face is found in: 13:33, 18:41, 19:13, 21:03
- \* faithful, faithfulness is found in: 02:01
- \* false god, foreign god, god, goddess is found in: 09:06, 09:08, 11:01, 11:07, 12:28, 14:09, 18:22, 18:25, 18:27, 19:01, 20:09, 20:22
- \* family is found in: 08:01, 11:14, 12:20, 13:33, 14:06, 16:03, 16:07, 18:18, 21:21, 21:27

- \* **famine** is found in: 08:37, 18:01
- \* **fast** is found in: 21:08, 21:27
- \* **ancestor, father, forefather** is found in: 01:05, 01:20, 02:10, 02:24, 02:30, 02:43, 03:01, 03:07, 05:04, 06:11, 08:14, 08:20, 08:51, 08:57, 11:03, 11:11, 11:26, 11:41, 12:03, 13:11, 13:20, 14:21, 18:18, 20:33
- \* **favor, favorable, favoritism** is found in: 08:46, 11:18, 13:06
- \* **fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh** is found in: 01:49, 03:26, 08:39, 08:41, 17:11
- \* **feast** is found in: 03:15, 08:01, 08:65, 12:31
- \* **fellowship offering** is found in: 08:62, 08:64
- \* **fig** is found in: 04:24, 10:26
- \* **fire** is found in: 16:18, 18:22, 18:33, 19:11
- \* **firstborn** is found in: 16:34
- \* **flock, herd** is found in: 10:28, 20:26
- \* **flute, pipe** is found in: 01:38
- \* **foreigner, foreign, alien** is found in: 08:41, 11:01, 11:07
- \* **forever** is found in: 01:28, 02:32, 08:12, 09:03, 09:04, 10:08, 11:37
- \* **forgive, forgiveness** is found in: 08:29, 08:33, 08:39, 08:49
- \* **forsake, forsaken, forsook** is found in: 06:11, 08:57, 09:08, 11:31, 19:09
- \* **foundation, founded** is found in: 06:37, 07:09, 16:34
- \* **free, freedom, liberty** is found in: 02:08, 14:09, 21:21
- \* **fulfill** is found in: 02:01, 02:26, 08:14, 08:22, 11:37
- \* **furnace** is found in: 08:51
- \* **Galilee, Galilean** is found in: 09:10
- \* **gate, gate bar** is found in: 04:11, 08:37, 16:34, 17:08, 22:10
- \* **Gath** is found in: 02:39
- \* **Gaza** is found in: 04:24
- \* **Gibeon, Gibeonite** is found in: 03:04, 09:01
- \* **gift** is found in: 09:15, 15:18
- \* **Gilead** is found in: 02:07, 04:11, 04:18, 17:01, 22:03, 22:10, 22:18, 22:29
- \* **glory, glorious** is found in: 08:09
- \* **goat, kid** is found in: 20:26
- \* **God** is found in: 01:15, 02:01, 03:07, 03:26, 05:01, 08:14, 08:17, 08:22, 08:57, 09:08, 10:08, 10:23, 11:03, 11:09, 11:23, 11:31, 13:08, 13:14, 13:23, 13:31, 14:06, 15:01, 15:29, 16:11, 16:25, 16:31, 17:01, 17:11, 17:19, 18:09, 18:20, 18:22, 18:36, 19:07, 20:28, 21:08

- \* gold is found in: 06:19, 06:21, 06:27, 06:29, 06:31, 07:48, 07:51, 09:10, 10:01, 10:10, 10:14, 10:21, 12:28, 14:25, 15:14, 20:01, 22:48
- \* good, goodness is found in: 08:35, 08:65, 14:11, 18:22, 22:07
- \* governor, govern, proconsul, government is found in: 10:14, 20:13, 22:26
- \* grain offering is found in: 08:64
- \* Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites is found in: 08:65
- \* hand, right hand, to hand over is found in: 02:45, 08:14, 08:22, 08:41, 08:46, 11:11, 11:26, 11:34, 13:04, 14:27, 15:18, 16:07, 18:09, 18:45, 20:04, 20:13, 20:28, 20:41, 22:03, 22:10
- \* harp is found in: 10:11
- \* head is found in: 08:01, 08:31
- \* heart is found in: 02:01, 02:43, 03:06, 03:26, 08:17, 08:22, 08:37, 08:39, 08:48, 08:57, 08:65, 09:03, 09:04, 10:01, 10:23, 11:01, 11:09, 12:25, 14:06, 15:01, 15:14, 18:36, 21:05
- \* heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 08:22, 08:27, 08:33, 08:39, 08:49, 14:11, 16:03, 18:45, 21:23, 22:18
- \* Hebron is found in: 02:10
- \* high places is found in: 03:01, 11:07, 12:31, 13:01, 13:31, 14:23, 15:14, 22:43
- \* Hittite is found in: 09:20, 10:28, 11:01, 15:04
- \* holy, holiness is found in: 08:03
- \* holy place, most holy place is found in: 06:16, 06:27, 07:50, 08:06, 08:09
- \* Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord is found in: 18:12, 22:24
- \* honey, honeycomb is found in: 14:01
- \* honor, to honor is found in: 03:13, 18:03
- \* Horeb is found in: 08:09, 19:07
- \* horn, horns is found in: 01:38, 22:10
- \* horse is found in: 04:26, 10:23, 18:05, 20:01, 20:20, 22:03
- \* horsemen is found in: 01:05, 09:17, 10:26, 20:20
- \* house is found in: 02:24, 02:30, 03:01, 07:51, 08:09, 08:14, 08:17, 08:20, 08:41, 08:62, 09:01, 09:06, 11:28, 11:37, 12:16, 12:21, 14:11, 14:25, 16:08, 16:31, 20:04, 20:31, 22:16
- \* household is found in: 04:05, 04:07, 05:09, 16:08
- \* house of God, Yahweh's house is found in: 06:37, 10:03, 14:25, 15:14
- \* humble, humility is found in: 21:27
- \* idol, idolatrous is found in: 11:05, 15:12, 16:11, 16:25, 18:18, 21:25
- \* image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure is found in: 14:09, 15:12



- \* **incense** is found in: 03:01, 07:50, 09:25, 11:07, 12:33, 13:01, 22:43
- \* **inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir** is found in: 08:35, 12:16, 21:03
- \* **innocent** is found in: 08:31
- \* **integrity** is found in: 09:04
- \* **Isaac** is found in: 18:36
- \* **Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel** is found in: 01:03, 01:20, 01:35, 02:01, 02:32, 03:26, 04:01, 04:07, 04:20, 06:01, 08:01, 08:03, 08:09, 08:20, 08:33, 08:51, 08:62, 09:04, 09:20, 10:08, 11:01, 11:09, 11:14, 11:23, 11:31, 11:41, 12:01, 12:16, 12:22, 12:33, 14:06, 14:23, 15:29, 16:11, 16:25, 16:31, 17:01, 17:14, 21:25, 22:51
- \* **Issachar** is found in: 04:15, 15:27
- \* **I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh** is found in: 14:11
- \* **Jacob, Israel** is found in: 18:30, 18:36
- \* **jealous, jealousy** is found in: 14:21
- \* **Jebusites, Jebus** is found in: 09:20
- \* **Jehoram, Joram** is found in: 22:48
- \* **Jehoshaphat** is found in: 04:01, 04:15, 15:23, 22:01, 22:07, 22:18, 22:29, 22:41, 22:48
- \* **Jehu** is found in: 16:01, 16:07, 19:15
- \* **Jericho** is found in: 16:34
- \* **Jeroboam** is found in: 11:26, 11:40, 12:01, 12:12, 12:20, 12:25, 12:33, 13:01, 13:33, 14:01, 14:11, 14:19, 14:29, 15:01, 15:09, 15:25, 16:01, 16:07, 16:18, 16:25, 16:31, 21:21, 22:51
- \* **Jerusalem** is found in: 02:10, 02:36, 03:01, 03:15, 08:01, 09:15, 10:01, 10:26, 11:07, 11:28, 11:31, 11:41, 12:18, 12:21, 12:28, 14:21, 15:01, 15:09, 22:41
- \* **Jesse** is found in: 12:16
- \* **Jezebel** is found in: 16:31, 18:03, 18:12, 18:18, 19:01, 21:05, 21:15, 21:23
- \* **Jezreel** is found in: 04:11, 18:45, 21:01, 21:15, 21:23
- \* **Joab** is found in: 01:07, 01:18, 01:41, 02:05, 02:22, 02:28, 11:14
- \* **Jonathan** is found in: 01:41, 01:43
- \* **Jordan River** is found in: 02:08, 07:46, 17:02
- \* **Joseph (OT)** is found in: 11:28
- \* **Joshua** is found in: 16:34
- \* **Josiah** is found in: 13:01
- \* **joy, joyful** is found in: 01:38, 08:65
- \* **Judah** is found in: 01:09, 01:35, 02:32, 04:20, 09:17, 12:21, 13:11

- \* judge, judgment is found in: 03:07, 03:26, 07:07, 08:31
- \* just, justice, justly is found in: 03:10, 06:11, 07:07, 10:08
- \* king is found in: 01:01, 01:35, 02:13, 02:30, 03:01, 03:07, 03:13, 03:21, 04:01, 04:18, 04:26, 05:01, 06:01, 07:13, 07:40, 07:44, 07:46, 07:51, 08:01, 08:14, 08:62, 09:01, 09:10, 09:26, 10:03, 10:10, 10:14, 10:21, 10:28, 11:01, 11:23, 11:37, 12:01, 12:12, 12:18, 12:20, 12:25, 13:04, 13:11, 14:01, 14:14, 14:27, 15:01, 15:09, 15:16, 15:23, 15:31, 16:05, 16:08, 16:15, 16:23, 16:29, 19:15, 20:01, 20:07, 20:09, 20:16, 20:22, 20:28, 20:37, 21:01, 21:08, 21:17, 22:01, 22:07, 22:16, 22:26, 22:34, 22:43, 22:51
- \* kingdom is found in: 01:46, 02:13, 02:22, 04:20, 09:04, 10:18, 11:11, 11:31, 12:21, 14:06, 18:09
- \* kingdom of Israel is found in: 14:09, 15:09, 15:16, 15:25, 15:31, 16:01, 16:08, 16:15, 16:21, 16:29, 16:31, 18:16, 18:36, 19:09, 19:15, 19:17, 20:01, 20:11, 20:20, 20:26, 20:31, 20:39, 21:05, 21:17, 22:01, 22:07, 22:16, 22:26, 22:34, 22:41, 22:51
- \* Judah, kingdom of Judah is found in: 12:16, 12:25, 13:01, 13:20, 14:21, 14:29, 15:01, 15:09, 15:16, 15:23, 15:33, 16:08, 16:15, 16:23, 16:29, 19:01, 22:01, 22:10, 22:29, 22:41, 22:51
- \* kiss is found in: 19:17
- \* know, knowledge, make known is found in: 05:01, 17:22, 18:36, 20:13, 20:28, 22:24
- \* labor, laborer is found in: 04:05, 05:13, 09:20, 11:28, 12:18
- \* lamp is found in: 11:34, 15:04
- \* lampstand is found in: 07:48
- \* law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh is found in: 02:01
- \* Lebanon is found in: 04:32, 05:06, 07:01, 09:17, 10:16
- \* letter, epistle is found in: 21:08
- \* Levite, Levi is found in: 08:03, 12:31
- \* life, live, living, alive is found in: 01:11, 01:24, 02:22, 03:10, 03:16, 03:21, 04:20, 06:11, 07:08, 08:12, 08:39, 11:23, 12:25, 13:23, 15:04, 16:11, 17:01, 17:08, 17:19, 18:05, 18:14, 19:01, 19:09, 20:18, 20:31, 20:39, 21:08, 22:13
- \* lion is found in: 07:27, 07:36, 10:18, 13:23, 20:35
- \* lord, master, sir is found in: 01:01, 01:11, 01:32, 02:36, 03:16, 03:26, 11:23, 12:25, 18:07, 18:14, 20:04
- \* Lord is found in: 03:10, 03:15, 22:05
- \* Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God is found in: 08:51
- \* love is found in: 03:01, 05:01, 10:08, 11:01
- \* lute, lyre is found in: 10:11
- \* Manasseh is found in: 04:11
- \* man of God is found in: 12:22, 13:01
- \* the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea is found in: 18:43

- \* **mercy, merciful** is found in: 20:31
- \* **messenger** is found in: 19:01, 20:01, 20:09, 22:13
- \* **Midian, Midianites** is found in: 11:18
- \* **mighty, might** is found in: 01:09, 08:41, 11:28, 15:23, 16:05, 16:27, 22:45
- \* **mind** is found in: 12:33, 18:20
- \* **Mizpah** is found in: 15:20
- \* **Moab, Moabite, Moabites** is found in: 11:01, 11:07, 11:31
- \* **mock, ridicule, scoff at** is found in: 18:27
- \* **Molech, Moloch** is found in: 11:07
- \* **Moses** is found in: 08:09, 08:51
- \* **mourn, mourning** is found in: 13:29, 14:11
- \* **name** is found in: 01:46, 03:01, 04:07, 05:01, 05:04, 08:14, 08:17, 08:29, 08:33, 08:41, 09:03, 09:06, 10:01, 11:26, 11:34, 14:21, 16:23, 18:22, 18:25, 18:30, 21:08, 22:16
- \* **Naphtali** is found in: 04:15, 07:13, 15:20
- \* **Nathan** is found in: 01:07, 01:22, 04:05
- \* **nation** is found in: 04:29, 11:01, 14:23, 18:09
- \* **neighbor** is found in: 08:31
- \* **oak** is found in: 13:14
- \* **oath, swear, swear by** is found in: 01:13, 01:28, 01:49, 02:08, 02:22, 02:41, 08:31, 18:09, 22:16
- \* **obey, obedient, obedience** is found in: 09:04, 11:09, 12:22, 16:34, 20:35
- \* **oil** is found in: 01:38, 05:10, 17:11
- \* **olive** is found in: 06:33
- \* **ordain** is found in: 12:31
- \* **ox, oxen** is found in: 01:09, 04:20, 07:25, 07:44, 08:03, 08:62, 19:19
- \* **palace** is found in: 07:11, 09:01, 09:10, 10:03, 10:11, 10:16, 11:20, 15:18, 16:18, 21:01
- \* **palm** is found in: 06:29, 06:31, 06:33, 07:36
- \* **Paran** is found in: 11:18
- \* **peace, peaceful** is found in: 02:05, 02:13, 02:32, 04:24, 05:10, 20:18, 22:16, 22:43
- \* **peace offering** is found in: 03:15, 09:25
- \* **people group, peoples, the people, a people** is found in: 03:07, 04:29, 06:01, 08:33, 08:41, 08:51, 08:59, 09:06, 09:20, 11:01, 13:33, 14:01, 16:21, 18:20, 19:09, 20:26, 20:41, 22:03
- \* **people of God, my people** is found in: 08:14, 16:01

- \* **Perizzite** is found in: 09:20
- \* **perverse, perversely, pervert** is found in: 08:46
- \* **Pharaoh, king of Egypt** is found in: 03:01, 07:08, 09:15, 09:24, 11:01, 11:18
- \* **Philistines** is found in: 04:20, 15:27, 16:15
- \* **pillar, column** is found in: 07:01, 07:03, 07:06, 07:15, 07:18, 07:40, 10:11, 14:23
- \* **plague** is found in: 08:37
- \* **plead, pleading, plea** is found in: 13:06, 18:27
- \* **possess, possession** is found in: 09:17, 13:08, 21:15
- \* **praise** is found in: 08:14, 08:54, 10:08
- \* **pray, prayer** is found in: 08:25, 08:29, 08:33, 08:37, 08:44, 08:49, 09:03, 13:06
- \* **priest, priesthood** is found in: 01:07, 01:18, 01:32, 02:22, 02:34, 04:01, 08:03, 08:06, 08:09, 12:31, 13:01, 13:33
- \* **prison, prisoner, imprison** is found in: 22:26
- \* **proclaim, proclamation** is found in: 15:20, 21:08
- \* **promise** is found in: 02:24, 06:11, 08:20, 08:22, 08:51
- \* **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess** is found in: 01:07, 01:22, 11:28, 13:11, 13:20, 13:29, 14:01, 14:17, 16:07, 18:03, 18:12, 18:20, 18:22, 18:25, 18:36, 19:01, 19:09, 19:15, 20:13, 20:22, 20:35, 20:41, 22:05, 22:18
- \* **prostitute, harlot, whore** is found in: 03:16, 14:23, 15:12, 22:37, 22:45
- \* **proverb** is found in: 04:32, 09:06
- \* **punish, punishment** is found in: 02:08, 11:37, 12:10, 20:39
- \* **pure, purify, purification** is found in: 05:10, 06:19, 06:21, 07:48
- \* **queen** is found in: 10:01, 10:10, 11:18, 15:12
- \* **raise, rise, risen, arise, arose** is found in: 02:19, 03:10, 07:20, 08:20, 11:14, 11:23, 14:06, 15:04
- \* **Ramah** is found in: 15:16
- \* **Ramoth** is found in: 22:03, 22:10, 22:18, 22:29
- \* **rebel, rebellious, rebellion** is found in: 12:18
- \* **receive** is found in: 08:51, 08:64
- \* **redeem, redemption, redeemer** is found in: 01:28
- \* **Sea of Reeds, Red Sea** is found in: 09:26
- \* **reed, reeds** is found in: 14:14
- \* **Rehoboam** is found in: 11:41, 12:01, 12:08, 12:16, 12:21, 14:21, 15:04

- \* **reign** is found in: 01:13, 01:24, 02:10, 06:01, 11:23, 11:41, 14:19, 15:01, 15:25, 15:33, 16:08, 16:15, 16:29, 22:41, 22:51
- \* **rejoice** is found in: 01:38, 05:07
- \* **repent, repentance** is found in: 08:46
- \* **report** is found in: 10:06
- \* **rest** is found in: 05:04, 08:54
- \* **restore, restoration** is found in: 12:21, 13:06, 20:33
- \* **reward** is found in: 08:31, 08:39, 13:06
- \* **righteous, righteousness** is found in: 02:32, 03:06, 08:31, 10:08
- \* **right hand** is found in: 02:19, 22:18
- \* **robe** is found in: 18:45, 22:10, 22:29
- \* **royal** is found in: 10:13, 11:03, 11:14, 15:29, 22:29
- \* **ruin, ruins** is found in: 18:30
- \* **ruler, rulers, rule** is found in: 01:35, 08:14, 11:34, 21:05, 22:45
- \* **sackcloth** is found in: 20:31, 21:27
- \* **sacrifice, offering** is found in: 01:09, 01:18, 01:24, 03:01, 08:03, 08:62, 11:07, 12:25, 13:01, 18:27, 18:36, 22:43
- \* **Samaria, Samaritan** is found in: 13:31, 16:23, 16:29, 18:01, 20:01, 20:09, 20:16, 20:33, 20:41, 21:01, 21:17, 22:10, 22:37, 22:51
- \* **save, safe** is found in: 01:11, 18:05, 22:26
- \* **seal, to seal** is found in: 21:08
- \* **seed** is found in: 18:30
- \* **seize** is found in: 13:04, 20:04, 22:26
- \* **send, send out, sent** is found in: 04:32, 05:01, 05:07, 08:35, 08:44, 12:03, 14:06, 15:18, 17:14, 18:01, 18:09, 18:18, 19:01, 20:01, 20:16, 21:08, 21:11
- \* **servant, slave, slavery** is found in: 01:01, 01:32, 01:46, 02:36, 03:06, 03:07, 03:15, 05:01, 08:22, 08:27, 08:29, 08:35, 08:51, 08:65, 09:22, 09:26, 10:03, 10:08, 10:13, 11:11, 11:31, 12:06, 14:06, 14:17, 15:18, 15:29, 18:09, 18:36, 18:43, 19:01, 20:04, 20:22, 20:31, 20:39, 21:21, 22:03, 22:26, 22:48
- \* **serve, service** is found in: 01:01, 04:20, 08:09, 12:03, 13:33, 19:21, 20:13, 22:51
- \* **set apart** is found in: 07:51, 08:64, 09:03, 09:06, 15:14
- \* **sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking** is found in: 01:03
- \* **Sheba** is found in: 10:01, 10:10
- \* **Shechem** is found in: 12:01, 12:25

- \* sheep, ram, ewe is found in: 01:09, 04:20, 08:03, 08:62, 22:16
- \* shepherd, to shepherd is found in: 22:16
- \* shield is found in: 10:16, 14:25
- \* Shiloh is found in: 02:26, 11:28, 12:15, 14:01
- \* Shimei is found in: 01:07, 02:08, 02:36, 04:18
- \* Sidon, Sidonians is found in: 05:06, 11:01, 11:31, 16:31, 17:08
- \* siege, besiege is found in: 20:01
- \* sign, proof, reminder is found in: 13:01, 20:33
- \* silver is found in: 07:51, 10:14, 10:21, 10:28, 15:14, 16:23, 20:01, 20:39
- \* sin, sinful, sinner, sinning is found in: 08:31, 08:33, 08:46, 12:28, 13:33, 14:14, 15:01, 15:25, 16:01, 16:18, 16:31, 17:17, 18:09, 21:21, 22:51
- \* slaughter is found in: 20:20
- \* sleep, asleep, fall asleep is found in: 01:20, 02:10, 11:41, 14:19, 14:29, 15:07, 15:23, 16:05, 16:27, 18:27, 19:04, 22:39, 22:48
- \* Solomon is found in: 01:09, 01:18, 02:01, 02:24, 02:41, 03:01, 03:10, 04:01, 04:11, 04:20, 04:29, 05:01, 06:01, 06:21, 06:27, 06:29, 06:31, 06:33, 07:01, 07:40, 07:44, 07:46, 07:48, 07:51, 08:01, 08:03, 08:22, 08:54, 08:65, 09:01, 09:10, 09:22, 09:25, 10:01, 10:10, 10:14, 10:21, 10:28, 11:01, 11:07, 11:14, 11:23, 11:26, 11:34, 11:41, 12:01, 12:10, 12:21, 14:21
- \* son, son of is found in: 01:05, 02:08, 02:34, 02:45, 03:06, 03:18, 03:26, 04:01, 04:15, 08:17, 11:11, 11:34, 12:21, 12:31, 13:01, 13:26, 14:19, 16:07, 16:27, 17:17, 18:30, 20:35, 21:21, 21:27
- \* soul is found in: 02:01, 08:48
- \* spear is found in: 18:27
- \* spirit, spiritual is found in: 22:21
- \* statute, statutes is found in: 02:01, 03:01, 03:13, 06:11, 08:57, 09:04, 11:11, 11:31
- \* stone, stoning is found in: 01:09, 12:18, 21:08
- \* strength, strengthen is found in: 20:22
- \* stronghold, fortress, fortified is found in: 16:18
- \* subject, be subject to, in subjection to is found in: 04:05
- \* Succoth is found in: 07:46
- \* suffer, suffering is found in: 02:26
- \* sweep, swept is found in: 16:03
- \* sword is found in: 01:49, 02:08, 02:32, 03:23, 18:27, 19:01, 19:09, 19:17
- \* temple is found in: 05:04, 06:01, 06:21, 06:37, 07:11, 07:20, 07:38, 07:40, 07:44, 07:48, 07:50, 08:09, 08:27, 08:29, 08:33, 08:41, 08:64, 09:08, 09:15, 09:25, 10:11, 12:25

- \* tent is found in: 12:16, 20:11
- \* tent of meeting is found in: 01:38, 02:28, 08:03
- \* test is found in: 10:01
- \* testimony, testify is found in: 02:41, 21:08
- \* threshold is found in: 14:17
- \* throne is found in: 01:13, 01:15, 01:24, 01:26, 01:35, 01:46, 02:01, 02:19, 02:24, 02:32, 02:45, 03:06, 05:04, 07:07, 08:20, 08:25, 09:04, 10:08, 10:18, 16:11, 22:10, 22:18
- \* tomb, grave, burial place is found in: 02:05, 13:20, 13:29, 14:11
- \* transgress, transgression is found in: 08:49
- \* tribe is found in: 07:13, 08:01, 08:14, 11:11, 11:31, 12:20
- \* tribute is found in: 04:20, 10:23
- \* trouble, troubles, troubled is found in: 11:23, 18:18, 20:07
- \* true, truth, come true is found in: 08:25, 08:59, 10:06, 17:22, 22:16
- \* trumpet is found in: 01:32
- \* trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness is found in: 03:06, 14:27
- \* turn, turn away, turn back is found in: 08:33, 08:48, 09:06, 11:01, 11:09, 13:33, 15:04, 18:36, 21:03, 22:43
- \* Tyre, Tyrians is found in: 05:01, 07:13, 09:10, 09:12
- \* understand, understanding is found in: 20:22
- \* Uriaah is found in: 15:04
- \* vine is found in: 04:24
- \* vineyard is found in: 21:01, 21:15
- \* virgin is found in: 01:01
- \* voice is found in: 08:54, 17:22, 18:25, 19:11, 20:35
- \* vow is found in: 01:28
- \* walk is found in: 02:01, 03:01, 03:13, 06:11, 08:25, 08:35, 09:04, 11:31, 15:01, 15:25, 16:01, 16:18, 16:25, 16:31, 22:43, 22:51
- \* water, waters is found in: 14:14, 18:05
- \* wise, wisdom is found in: 02:05, 02:08, 03:10, 03:26, 04:29, 05:07, 07:13, 10:03, 10:06, 10:23, 11:41
- \* woe is found in: 13:29
- \* word is found in: 01:13, 02:01, 02:26, 05:07, 06:11, 08:20, 08:54, 10:06, 12:06, 12:15, 13:08, 13:11, 18:18, 18:20, 18:36, 20:04, 21:11, 21:27, 22:13

- \* word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture is found in: 12:22, 13:01, 13:14, 13:26, 14:17, 16:01, 16:07, 16:34, 17:02, 17:14, 17:22, 18:01, 18:30, 19:09, 20:35, 21:17, 21:27, 22:05, 22:18, 22:37
- \* works, deeds, work, acts is found in: 05:15, 07:51, 09:23, 10:03, 12:03, 16:07, 21:25
- \* worship is found in: 09:06, 11:31, 16:31, 18:12, 22:51
- \* worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless is found in: 01:41, 01:52, 02:26
- \* written is found in: 14:19, 14:29, 15:07, 15:31, 16:05, 16:14, 16:27, 22:39
- \* Yahweh is found in: 01:15, 01:28, 02:01, 02:32, 02:41, 03:01, 03:07, 05:01, 06:01, 06:11, 07:11, 07:40, 07:44, 07:48, 07:51, 08:01, 08:03, 08:06, 08:09, 08:17, 08:20, 08:27, 08:44, 08:54, 08:64, 09:01, 09:03, 09:08, 09:15, 09:25, 10:01, 10:08, 11:01, 11:09, 11:31, 12:15, 12:22, 13:01, 13:08, 13:20, 14:04, 14:14, 15:01, 15:09, 15:25, 15:33, 16:11, 16:18, 16:25, 16:31, 17:01, 17:11, 17:19, 18:03, 18:09, 18:12, 18:18, 18:30, 18:38, 18:45, 19:04, 19:07, 19:09, 19:15, 20:13, 20:28, 20:35, 20:41, 21:03, 21:19, 21:25, 22:07, 22:16, 22:26, 22:43
- \* Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host is found in: 18:14, 19:09
- \* yoke is found in: 12:03, 12:10, 19:19
- \* Zadok is found in: 01:07, 01:26, 02:34, 04:01
- \* zeal, zealous is found in: 19:09
- \* Zion, Mount Zion is found in: 08:01



## 1 Kings 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

1 Kings is a continuation of 2 Samuel.

This chapter records the beginning of the reign of Solomon (chapters 1-11) after the death of David.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The next king

David did not announce who was to succeed him. Because of this, there was fighting between David's sons over who should be king. Adonijah invited guests to a banquet and declared himself king. Then those favoring Solomon told David and he declared Solomon the new king.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Idiom

Several times in this chapter, the people use the idiom "sit on the throne" to mean "be king." Solomon assures Adonijah that if he behaves himself "not a hair of his will fall to the earth" meaning, "he will not be harmed." (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

## 1 Kings 1:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> When King David was very old, even though his servants put many blankets on top of him at night, he was unable to keep warm. <sup>2</sup> So they said to him, “Your Majesty, allow us to search for a young virgin who can stay with you and take care of you. She can sleep close to you and make you warm.”

### ULB:

**1** <sup>1</sup> When King David was very old, they covered him with blankets, but he could not keep warm. <sup>2</sup> So his servants said to him, “Let us look for a young virgin for our master the king. Let her serve the king and take care of him. Let her lie in his arms so that our master the king may keep warm.”

### translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [virgin](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [serve, service](#)

### translationNotes:

- **covered him with blankets** - They put many blankets on King David to try to keep him warm.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> The king gave them permission, so they searched throughout Israel for a beautiful young woman. They found a woman named Abishag, from the town of Shunem, and brought her to the king. <sup>4</sup> She was truly very beautiful. She took care of the king, but the king did not have sexual relations with her.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> So they searched for a beautiful girl within all the borders of Israel. They found Abishag the Shunammite and brought her to the king. <sup>4</sup> The girl was very beautiful. She served the king and took care of him, but the king did not have sexual relations with her.

### translationWords:

- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking](#)

### translationNotes:

- **So they searched** - “So the king’s servants searched”
- **within all the borders of Israel** - This is a generalization. AT: “all over the land of Israel” (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **Abishag** - This is a woman’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Shunammite** - a person from the city of Shunem (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the king** - “King David”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:5-6

### UDB:

5-6 After Absalom died, David's oldest son was Adonijah, whose mother was Haggith. He was a very handsome man. But David had never rebuked him about anything he did. After Absalom died, he thought that he would become king. So he started to boast, saying, "I will become king now." Then he provided for himself some chariots, and men to drive them, and horses to pull them, and fifty men to run as his bodyguards in front of those chariots wherever he went.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> At that time, Adonijah son of Haggith exalted himself, saying, "I will be king." So he prepared for himself chariots and horsemen with fifty men to run ahead of him. <sup>6</sup> His father had never troubled him, saying, "Why have you done this or that?" Adonijah was also a very handsome man, born next after Absalom.

### translationWords:

- Adonijah
- son, son of
- exalt, exaltation
- chariot
- horsemen
- ancestor, father, forefather
- Absalom

### translationNotes:

- **Adonijah son of Haggith** - Haggith was a wife of David. (See [How to Translate Names](#))
- **exalted himself** - "began to boast"
- **horsemen** - These are men who drive chariots pulled by horses.
- **fifty men to run ahead of him** - These men would go ahead of the chariots to clear the way for them and protect them.
- **had never troubled him, saying** - "had never troubled him. He had never even asked him" or "had never wanted to make him angry, so he never even asked him"
- **Why have you done this or that?** - This is a rhetorical question that a father would ask to discipline his son. AT: "You should know that what you have done is wrong." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **born next after Absalom** - David was the father of both Absalom and Adonijah, but they had different mothers. Absalom was born, then Adonijah.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> One day he conferred with Joab, David's army commander, and Abiathar the priest, and they promised to help Adonijah. <sup>8</sup> But other important people refused to help him. These included Zadok, who was also a priest, Benaiah who had supervised David's bodyguards, Nathan the prophet, Shimei and Rei, and David's most capable soldiers.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> He conferred with Joab son of Zeruiah and with Abiathar the priest. They followed Adonijah and helped him. <sup>8</sup> But Zadok the priest, Benaiah son of Jehoiada, Nathan the prophet, Shimei, Rei, and the mighty men who belonged to David did not follow Adonijah.

### translationWords:

- [Joab](#)
- [Abiathar](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Shimei](#)

### translationNotes:

- **He conferred with Joab** - "Adonijah discussed his plans with Joab"
- **Joab ... Zeruiah ... Abiathar ... Adonijah ... Zadok ... Benaiah ... Jehoiada ... Nathan ... Shimei ... Rei** - These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **followed Adonijah and helped him** - "supported and helped Adonijah" or "promised to support and help Adonijah"

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:9-10

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> One day Adonijah went to stone of Zoheleth near En Rogel, which is near Jerusalem, to sacrifice some sheep and oxen and fattened cattle. He invited most of his brothers, King David's other sons, to come. He also invited all of the king's officials from Judah to come to the celebration. <sup>10</sup> But he did not invite Nathan, Benaiah, or the king's most capable soldiers, or his younger brother Solomon.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> Adonijah sacrificed sheep, oxen, and fattened calves by the stone of Zoheleth, which is beside En Rogel. He invited all his brothers, the king's sons, and all the men of Judah, the king's servants. <sup>10</sup> But he did not invite Nathan the prophet, Benaiah, the mighty men, or his brother Solomon.

### translationWords:

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [stone, stoning](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [mighty, might](#)
- [Solomon](#)

### translationNotes:

- **fattened calves** - “calves that were given plenty of food so that they would be fat” or “young cows that were specially prepared for sacrifice”
- **stone of Zoheleth** - This is a rocky area near Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **En Rogel** - This was the name of a spring where people got water. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **all his brothers ... all the men** - This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **all his brothers, the king's sons** - These two phrases refer to the same people.
- **men of Judah, the king's servants** - These two phrases refer to the same people.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)

- 1 Kings 01 Translation Questions



## 1 Kings 1:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> Nathan found out what they were doing, so he went to Solomon's mother Bathsheba and asked her, "Have you not heard that Haggith's son Adonijah is making himself king? And King David does not know about it! <sup>12</sup> So if you want to save yourself and your son Solomon from being killed, allow me to tell you what you should do.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> Then Nathan spoke to Bathsheba the mother of Solomon, saying, "Have you not heard that Adonijah son of Haggith has become king, and David our master does not know it? <sup>12</sup> Now therefore let me give you advice, so that you may save your own life and the life of your son Solomon.

### translationWords:

- [Bathsheba](#)
- [David](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [counsel, counselor, advice, advisor](#)
- [save, safe](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Have you not heard ... it?** - The purpose of this question is to introduce the information that Nathan wants to tell Bathsheba. AT: "You do not seem to have heard ... it." or "Have you heard ... it?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **that Adonijah son of Haggith has become king** - "that Haggith's son Adonijah is trying to become king"
- **Haggith** - Adonijah's mother and a wife of David. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:13-14

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> Go right away to King David. Say to him, ‘Your Majesty, you solemnly promised me that my son Solomon would become the king after you die and that he would sit on your throne and rule. So why are people saying that Adonijah is now king?’ <sup>14</sup> Then, Bathsheba, while you are still talking to the king, I will come in and tell him that what you are saying to him about Adonijah is true.”

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> Go to King David; say to him, ‘My master the king, did you not swear to your servant, saying, “Surely Solomon your son will reign after me, and he will sit on my throne?” Why then is Adonijah reigning?’ <sup>14</sup> While you are there speaking with the king, I will come in after you and confirm your words.”

### translationWords:

- oath, swear, swear by
- reign
- throne
- word

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The prophet Nathan continues to speak to Bathsheba.
- **did you not swear to your servant ... throne?** - The purpose of this question was to remind David of what he had promised Bathsheba. AT: “you swore to your servant ... throne.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **to your servant** - Bathsheba speaks to David as if she were someone else to show that she respects David. AT: “to me, your servant” (See: [Pronouns](#))
- **he will sit on my throne** - Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. AT: “he will be king just as I was” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Why then is Adonijah reigning?** - Bathsheba was to use a question so David would pay attention. AT: “So then, Adonijah should not be reigning.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **confirm your words** - “tell him that what you have said is true”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 1:15-17****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> So Bathsheba went to see the king in his bedroom. He was very old, and Abishag was taking care of him. <sup>16</sup> Bathsheba bowed very low in front of the king, and the king asked her, “What do you want?”

<sup>17</sup> She replied, “Your Majesty, you solemnly promised me, knowing that Yahweh our God was listening, that my son Solomon would become king after you die and that he would sit on your throne and rule.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> So Bathsheba went into the king’s room. The king was very old, and Abishag the Shunammite was serving the king. <sup>16</sup> Bathsheba bowed and prostrated herself before the king. Then the king said, “What do you desire?” <sup>17</sup> She said to him, “My master, you swore to your servant by Yahweh your God, saying, ‘Surely Solomon your son shall reign after me, and he shall sit on my throne.’

**translationWords:**

- bow, bow down
- Yahweh
- God
- throne

**translationNotes:**

- **the king’s room** - “the room in which the king slept”
- **Abishag the Shunammite** - This is the young virgin that King David’s servants had brought to care for him. Translate as in [1:3](#).
- **bowed and prostrated herself before the king** - “bowed close to the ground in front of the king”
- **What do you desire?** - “What can I do for you?”
- **you swore to** - The form of “you” here is emphatic. AT: “you yourself swore to”
- **your servant** - Bathsheba speaks as if she were another person to show David that she respects him. Translate as in [1:13](#). AT: “me, your servant”
- **Yahweh** - This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.
- **he shall sit on my throne** - Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. Translate as in [1:13](#). AT: “he will be king just as I was” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 1:18-19****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> But now, Adonijah has made himself king, and you do not know anything about it. <sup>19</sup> He has sacrificed a lot of oxen and fattened cattle and sheep, and he has invited all of your other sons to the celebration. He has also invited Abiathar the priest and Joab the commander of your army, but he did not invite your son Solomon.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Now, see, Adonijah is king, and you, my master the king, do not know it. <sup>19</sup> He has sacrificed oxen, fatted calves, and sheep in abundance, and has invited all the sons of the king, Abiathar the priest, and Joab the captain of the army, but he has not invited Solomon your servant.

**translationWords:**

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [Abiathar](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Solomon](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Bathsheba continues speaking to King David.
- **see** - “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”
- **oxen, fatted calves, and sheep in abundance** - “many oxen, fatted calves, and sheep”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:20-21

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> Your Majesty, all the people of Israel are expecting you to tell them who is the one who will become king after you are no longer with us. <sup>21</sup> If you do not do that, what will happen is that after you die people will consider that my son Solomon and I are rebelling, and they will execute us because we did not help Adonijah to become king.”

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> As for you, my master the king, the eyes of all Israel are on you, waiting for you to tell them who will sit on the throne after you, my master. <sup>21</sup> Otherwise it will happen, when my master the king sleeps with his fathers, that I and my son Solomon will be regarded as criminals.”

### translationWords:

- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [sleep, asleep, fall asleep](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [crime, criminal](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Bathsheba continues to speak to King David.
- **the eyes of all Israel are on you** - Here “eyes” refers to the people. This is a generalization. AT: “all the people of Israel are watching you” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **will sit on the throne** - Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. Similar words appear in [1:13](#). AT: “will be king”
- **when my master the king sleeps with his fathers** - Bathsheba speaks to King David as if she were speaking about him to show that she respects him. AT: “when you sleep with your fathers” (See: [Pronouns](#))
- **sleeps with his fathers** - This is a polite way of saying “dies.” (See [Euphemism](#))
- **I and my son Solomon will be regarded as criminals** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “the new king will regard my son Solomon and me as criminals” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 1:22-23****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> While she was still talking to the king, Nathan came to the palace. <sup>23</sup> The king's servants told David, "Nathan the prophet has come." So Bathsheba left, and Nathan went into where the king was and knelt down, with his face on the ground.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> While she was still speaking with the king, Nathan the prophet came in. <sup>23</sup> The servants told the king, "Nathan the prophet is here." When he came in before the king, he prostrated himself before the king with his face to the ground.

**translationWords:**

- [Nathan](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Nathan the prophet speaks to King David.
- **prostrated himself** - "bowed very low"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:24-25

### UDB:

<sup>24</sup> Then Nathan said, "Your Majesty, have you declared that Adonijah will become king after you?  
<sup>25</sup> I say that because today he has gone down to En Rogel and has sacrificed a lot of oxen, fattened cattle, and sheep. And he has invited all of your other sons, Joab the army commander, and Abiathar the priest. They are all eating and drinking with him and saying, 'We hope that King Adonijah will live a long time!'

### ULB:

<sup>24</sup> Nathan said, "My master the king, have you said, 'Adonijah will reign after me, and he will sit on my throne?' <sup>25</sup> For he has gone down today and sacrificed oxen, fatted calves, and sheep in abundance, and has invited all the king's sons, the captains of the army, and Abiathar the priest. They are eating and drinking before him, and saying, 'Long live King Adonijah!'

### translationWords:

- [reign](#)
- [throne](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Nathan the prophet continues to speak to King David.
- **have you said, 'Adonijah will reign after me, and he will sit on my throne?'** - This can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: "have you said that Adonijah will reign after you, and he will sit on your throne?" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))
- **he will sit on my throne** - Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. Translate as in [1:13](#). AT: "he will be king just as I was"
- **eating and drinking before him** - Adonijah probably sat at a table where he could watch all those he had invited as they ate and drank. The main idea is that the people Nathan named were with Adonijah and they were celebrating together. AT: "eating and drinking with him" or "eating and drinking where he can see them" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)



- 1 Kings 01 General Notes
- **1 Kings 01 Translation Questions**

## 1 Kings 1:26-27

### UDB:

<sup>26</sup> But he did not invite me or Zadok the priest or Benaiah or Solomon. <sup>27</sup> Did you say that they should do this without telling your other officials who you want to become king after you are no longer the king?"

### ULB:

<sup>26</sup> But as for me, your servant, Zadok the priest, Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and your servant Solomon, he has not invited us. <sup>27</sup> Has my master the king done this without telling us, your servants, who should sit on the throne after him?"

### translationWords:

- [Zadok](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [throne](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Nathan the prophet continues to speak to King David.
- **Has my master the king done this without telling us, your servants, who should sit on the throne after him?** - Nathan refers to David in the third person. This is a way of showing respect to the king. It can be stated in second person. AT: "Have you, my master the king, done this without telling us, your servants, who should sit on the throne after you?" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **who should sit on the throne** - Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. Similar words appear in [1:13](#). AT: "who would be king after him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:28-31

### UDB:

<sup>28</sup> Then King David said, “Tell Bathsheba to come in here again.” So someone went and told her, and she came in and stood in front of the king.

**29-30** Then the king said, “Yahweh has rescued me from all my troubles. I promised you, with Yahweh the God whom we Israelites worship listening, that your son Solomon would be king after I am no longer the king. Today, as surely as Yahweh lives, I solemnly declare that I will do what I promised.” <sup>31</sup> Bathsheba knelt down with her face on the ground and said, “Your Majesty, I hope you will live forever!”

### ULB:

<sup>28</sup> Then King David answered and said, “Call Bathsheba back to me.” She came into the king’s presence and stood before the king. <sup>29</sup> The king made an oath and said, “As Yahweh lives, who has redeemed me out of all trouble, <sup>30</sup> as I vowed to you by Yahweh, the God of Israel, saying, ‘Solomon your son will reign after me, and he will sit on my throne in my place,’ I will do this today.” <sup>31</sup> Then Bathsheba bowed with her face to the ground and prostrated herself before the king and said, “May my master King David live forever!”

### translationWords:

- oath, swear, swear by
- Yahweh
- redeem, redemption, redeemer
- vow
- bow, bow down
- forever

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King David makes a promise to Bathsheba.
- **came into the king’s presence** - “came before the king” or “came back to the king”
- **made an oath** - “made a solemn promise”
- **he will sit on my throne in my place** - Sitting on the throne is a metonym for being king. Similar words appear in **1:13**. AT: “he will take my place and be king just as I was” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **May my master King David live forever** - Bathsheba knew David would not live forever; this is a way of saying that he is a good king. (See: **Hyperbole**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:32-34

### UDB:

<sup>32</sup> Then King David said to a servant, “Summon Zadok the priest, Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah.” So a servant went and summoned them. When they came in, <sup>33</sup> he said to them, “Put my son Solomon on my mule. Take him with my officials down to the spring at Gihon. <sup>34</sup> There, you two, Zadok and Nathan, must anoint him with olive oil to appoint him to be the king of Israel. Then you two must blow trumpets, and all the people there must shout, ‘We hope that King Solomon will live for many years!’

### ULB:

<sup>32</sup> King David said, “Call to me Zadok the priest, Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah son of Jehoiada.” So they came before the king. <sup>33</sup> The king said to them, “Take with you the servants of your master, and have Solomon my son ride on my own mule and take him down to Gihon. <sup>34</sup> Let Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet anoint him king over Israel and blow the trumpet and say, ‘Long live King Solomon!’

### translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [anoint, anointed](#)
- [trumpet](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King David anoints Solomon king.
- **the servants of your master** - David speaks of himself as if he were speaking of someone else so Zadok, Nathan, and Benaiah would remember that David is still king. AT: “my servants” (See: [Pronouns](#))
- **Gihon** - This is the name of a water spring. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:35-37

### UDB:

<sup>35</sup> Then follow him back here, and he will come and sit on my throne. He will then become king instead of me. I have appointed him to be the ruler of all the people of Israel and of Judah.”

<sup>36</sup> Benaiah replied, ”We will do that! We hope that Yahweh, who is your God and our God, will cause it to happen! <sup>37</sup> King David, Yahweh has helped you. We hope that he will also help Solomon and enable him to become an even greater king than you have been.”

### ULB:

<sup>35</sup> Then you will come up after him, and he will come and sit on my throne; for he will be king in my place. I have appointed him to be ruler over Israel and Judah.” <sup>36</sup> Benaiah son of Jehoiada answered the king, and said, ”So let it be! May Yahweh, the God of my master the king, confirm it. <sup>37</sup> As Yahweh has been with my master the king, so may he be with Solomon, and make his throne greater than the throne of my master King David.”

### translationWords:

- throne
- king
- appoint, appointed
- ruler, rulers, rule
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Judah

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King David continues to speak on behalf of Solomon as the one who will become king.
- **he will come and sit on my throne** - The words “sit on the throne” are used as a metonym for being king in [1:13](#), [1:17](#), and [1:30](#). Here David speaks of Solomon literally sitting on a physical throne.
- **So let it be!** - They agree and will do what King David said.
- **May Yahweh, the God of my master the king, confirm** - Benaiah speaks to King David as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects King David. AT: “My master and king, may Yahweh your God confirm” (See: [Pronouns](#))
- **has been with my master the king, so** - Benaiah speaks to King David as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects King David. AT: “has been with you, my master the king, so” (See: [Pronouns](#))

- **make his throne greater than the throne of my master King David** - The word “throne” is a metonym for either 1) the person who sits on the throne. AT: “make the one who sits on the throne greater than my master King David” or 2) the kingdom over which the one who sits on the throne rules. AT: “make his kingdom greater than the kingdom of my master King David” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the throne of my master King David** - Benaiah speaks to King David as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects King David. AT: “your throne, my master King David” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:38-40

### UDB:

<sup>38</sup> So Zadok, Nathan, Benaiah, and the two groups of men who were the king's bodyguards went and put Solomon on King David's mule and escorted him down to the spring at Gihon. <sup>39</sup> There Zadok took the container of olive oil from the sacred tent and anointed Solomon. Then two of them blew trumpets, and all the people shouted, "We hope that King Solomon will live for many years!" <sup>40</sup> Then all the people followed him back up to the city, shouting joyfully and playing flutes. They shouted very loudly, so that the ground shook.

### ULB:

<sup>38</sup> So Zadok the priest, Nathan the prophet, Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and the Cherethites and the Pelethites went down and had Solomon ride upon King David's mule; they brought him to Gihon. <sup>39</sup> Zadok the priest took the horn of oil out of the tent and anointed Solomon. Then they blew the trumpet, and all the people said, "Long live King Solomon!" <sup>40</sup> Then all the people went up after him, and the people played the flutes and rejoiced with great joy, so that the earth shook with their sound.

### translationWords:

- horn, horns
- oil
- tent of meeting
- flute, pipe
- rejoice
- joy, joyful
- earth, earthly

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The people of Israel anoint Solomon as king over Israel.
- **Cherethites ... Pelethites** - These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Gihon** - This is the name of a spring, where fresh water comes out of the ground. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **took the horn of oil out of the tent** - This means the priest took the special animal horn filled with olive oil that was kept in Yahweh's special tent.
- **took the horn of oil** - Possible meanings are 1) the horn of an animal filled with olive oil or 2) a container that had replaced the original horn, but the people still called it a horn. AT: "took a container of oil"
- **all the people** - This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:41-42

### UDB:

<sup>41</sup> When Adonijah and all his guests were finishing eating at their celebration, they heard the noise. When Joab heard the sound of the trumpets, he asked, “What is the meaning of all that noise in the city?”

<sup>42</sup> While he was still speaking, Jonathan son of Abiathar the priest, arrived. Adonijah said, “Come in! You are a man whom we can trust, so you must be bringing us good news!”

### ULB:

<sup>41</sup> Adonijah and all the guests who were with him heard it as they finished eating. When Joab heard the sound of the trumpet, he said, “Why is there an uproar in the city?” <sup>42</sup> While he was still speaking, Jonathan son of Abiathar the priest came. Adonijah said, “Come in, for you are a worthy man and bring good news.”

### translationWords:

- [Adonijah](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Jonathan](#)
- [Abiathar](#)
- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Adonijah hears the loud noise and waits for the news.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:43-45

### UDB:

<sup>43</sup> Jonathan replied, "No, I do not have good news! His Majesty, King David, has made Solomon to be the king! <sup>44</sup> He sent Zadok, Nathan, Benaiah, and the his own groups of bodyguards to go with Solomon. They put Solomon on King David's mule. <sup>45</sup> They went down to the spring at Gihon, and there Zadok and Nathan have anointed him to become the king. Now they have returned from there to the city, shouting joyfully. That is why there is that great noise that you are hearing.

### ULB:

<sup>43</sup> Jonathan answered and said to Adonijah, "Our master King David has made Solomon the king, <sup>44</sup> and the king has sent with him Zadok the priest, Nathan the prophet, Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and the Cherethites and the Pelethites. They have had Solomon ride on the king's mule. <sup>45</sup> Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet have anointed him king at Gihon, and have come up from there rejoicing, so that the city is in an uproar. This is the noise that you have heard.

### translationWords:

- [Jonathan](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Adonijah learns that Solomon is the new king.
- **Cherethites ... Pelethites** - These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:46-48

### UDB:

<sup>46</sup> So Solomon is now our king. <sup>47</sup> Furthermore, the palace officials came to His Majesty, King David, to tell him that they approved of what he had done. They said, ‘We wish that God will make Solomon even more famous than you have been and enable him to be an even better king than you have been.’ When they said that, the king, lying on his bed, bowed his head to worship Yahweh. <sup>48</sup> Then he said, ‘I praise Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, because he has allowed one of my sons to become the king today and has permitted me to see it happen.’”

### ULB:

<sup>46</sup> Also, Solomon is sitting on the throne of the kingdom. <sup>47</sup> Moreover, the king’s servants came to bless our master King David, saying, ‘May your God make the name of Solomon better than your name, and make his throne greater than your throne.’ Then the king bowed down on the bed. <sup>48</sup> The king also said, ‘Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Israel, who has given a person to sit on my throne this day, and that my own eyes should see it.’”

### translationWords:

- [kingdom](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [name](#)
- [throne](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Jonathan continues to speak to Adonijah about Solomon.
- **is sitting on the throne of the kingdom** - Possible meanings are 1) that these words are a metonym for being king. AT: “is now king” or 2) that Solomon was physically sitting on the physical throne. Similar words appear in [1:35](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **a person to sit on my throne this day** - Possible meanings are 1) that these words are a metonym for being king. AT: “a person to be king today as I was” or 2) that Solomon was physically sitting on the physical throne. Similar words appear in [1:35](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 01 General Notes
- 1 Kings 01 Translation Questions

## 1 Kings 1:49-51

### UDB:

<sup>49</sup> Then all of Adonijah's guests trembled, so they all immediately got up and left and scattered. <sup>50</sup> Adonijah was afraid of what Solomon would do, so he went to the sacred tent and grabbed the projections at the corners of the altar, because he thought that no one would kill him there. <sup>51</sup> But someone told Solomon, "See, Adonijah is afraid of you, so he has gone to the sacred tent and is holding on to the altar. He is saying, 'Before I leave, I want King Solomon to solemnly promise that he will not command that I be executed.'"

### ULB:

<sup>49</sup> Then all the guests of Adonijah were terrified. They stood up and each man went his way. <sup>50</sup> Adonijah was afraid of Solomon and rose up, went, and took hold of the horns of the altar. <sup>51</sup> Then it was told Solomon, saying, "See, Adonijah is afraid of King Solomon, for he has laid hold on the horns of the altar, saying, 'Let King Solomon swear to me first that he will not kill his servant with the sword.'"

### translationWords:

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- altar
- oath, swear, swear by
- sword

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Adonijah becomes terrified of King Solomon.
- **They stood up** - Another possible meaning is "They began to act quickly" (See: **Idiom**)
- **Adonijah ... took hold of the horns of the altar** - The "horns of the altar" symbolized the strength and protection of Yahweh, but because Adonijah literally went into the area of the physical tent to take literal hold of the physical horns, you should translate this literally.
- **Adonijah ... rose up, went** - Another possible meaning is "Adonijah ... quickly went" (See: **Idiom**)
- **is afraid of King Solomon** - The servants speak to King Solomon as if they were speaking of someone else to show that they respected King Solomon. AT: "is afraid of you, King Solomon" (See: **Pronouns**)
- **he will not kill his servant** - Adonijah speaks of himself as if he were speaking of another person so people will think that he respects King Solomon. AT: "he will not kill me" (See: **Pronouns**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 1:52-53

### UDB:

<sup>52</sup> Solomon replied, “If he proves that he is loyal to me, I will not harm him at all. But if he does anything that is wrong, he will be executed.” <sup>53</sup> So King Solomon sent some men to Adonijah, and they brought him back from the altar. He came to Solomon and bowed down in front of him. Then Solomon said to him, “Go home.”

### ULB:

<sup>52</sup> Solomon said, “If he will show himself a worthy man, not a hair of his will fall to the earth, but if wickedness is found in him, he will die.” <sup>53</sup> So King Solomon sent men, who brought Adonijah down from the altar. He came and bowed down to King Solomon, and Solomon said to him, “Go to your house.”

### translationWords:

- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [altar](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Solomon spares the life of Adonijah.
- **not a hair of his will fall to the earth** - This is an exaggeration to say that Solomon will keep Adonijah safe. AT: “not a hair of his head will fall” or “I will keep him safe” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **wickedness is found in him** - The abstract noun “wickedness” can be translated as a verb. It is spoken of as if it were an object that could be found in a container. This can be translated in active form. AT: “he does what is evil” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 01 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter has two stories: David's last advice to Solomon and Solomon's punishment of those who supported Adonijah and also Shimei, who had cursed David when David was fleeing from Absalom. (See: [curse](#), [cursed](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Exalting oneself

Exalting oneself can lead to disaster as when Adonijah made himself king. (See: [exalt](#), [exaltation](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Euphemism

David spoke of his impending death using a euphemism: "I am going the way of all the earth." (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Parallelism

David wanted to emphasize the importance of obeying God to his son Solomon. He used parallelism, saying the same thing seven times using different words: "Keep the commands of Yahweh your God to walk in his ways, to obey his statutes, his commandments, his decisions, and his covenant decrees, being careful to do what is written in the law of Moses." Some languages have other ways of emphasizing an idea. (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 02:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Kings 2:1-4

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> When David knew that he was about to die, he gave these final instructions to his son Solomon:

<sup>2</sup> "I am about to die, as everyone else on earth does. Be courageous and conduct yourself as man should. <sup>3</sup> Do what Yahweh our God tells you to do. Conduct yourself as he wants you to do. Obey all of his laws and commands and decrees and instructions that are written in the laws that Moses gave us. Do this in order that you will prosper in all that you do and wherever you go. <sup>4</sup> If you continually do that, Yahweh will do what he promised me. He said, 'If your descendants do what I tell them to do, and faithfully obey my commands with all their inner beings, they will always be the ones who will rule Israel.'

### ULB:

<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> As the day of David's death approached, he commanded Solomon his son, saying, <sup>2</sup> "I am going the way of all the earth. Be strong, therefore, and show yourself a man. <sup>3</sup> Keep the commands of Yahweh your God to walk in his ways, to obey his statutes, his commandments, his decisions, and his covenant decrees, being careful to do what is written in the law of Moses, so you may prosper in all you do, wherever you go, <sup>4</sup> so that Yahweh may fulfill his word which he spoke concerning me, saying, 'If your sons carefully watch their conduct, to walk before me faithfully with all their heart and with all their soul, you will never cease to have a man on the throne of Israel.'

### translationWords:

- David
- command, to command, commandment
- Solomon
- Yahweh
- God
- walk
- statute, statutes
- decree
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- fulfill
- word
- faithful, faithfulness
- heart
- soul
- throne
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

**translationNotes:**

- **I am going the way of all the earth** - This is a polite way of saying “I am going to die.” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **show yourself a man** - The ellipsis can be filled in. AT: “show everyone that you are a man” or “live so that everyone can see you are a good man” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **walk in his ways** - Walking on a path is a metonym for the way a person lives. AT: “live the way he commands” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **prosper** - “succeed” or “do well”
- **may fulfill his word** - “do everything he promised he would do” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **If your sons ... you will never cease** - Yahweh is talking to David, so the words “you” and “your” refer to David.
- **to walk before me faithfully** - Yahweh is talking to David, so the word “me” refers to Yahweh.
- **with all their heart and with all their soul** - The idiom “with all ... heart” means “completely” and “with all ... soul” means “with all ... being.” These two phrases have similar meanings. AT: “with all their being” or “with all their energy” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))
- **you will never cease to have a man on the throne of Israel** - The word “throne” is a metonym for the king who sits on the throne. AT: “your descendants will never cease to be kings of Israel” The litotes “will never cease to have” can be stated positively. AT: “one of your descendants will always be the king of Israel.” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Litotes](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> There is something else that I want you to do. You know what Joab did to me. He killed my two army commanders, Abner and Amasa. He murdered them violently. He is guilty of murder.

<sup>6</sup> Because you are wise, do to him what you think is best for you to do, but do not allow him to become old and die peacefully.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> You know also what Joab son of Zeruijah did to me, and what he did to the two commanders of the armies of Israel, to Abner son of Ner, and to Amasa son of Jether, whom he killed. He shed the blood of war in peace and put the blood of war on the belt around his waist and on the shoes on his feet. <sup>6</sup> Deal with Joab by the wisdom you have learned, but do not let his gray head go down to the grave in peace.

### translationWords:

- Joab
- commander, command
- Abner
- blood
- peace, peaceful
- wise, wisdom
- tomb, grave, burial place

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King David continues to tell Solomon how to lead Israel.
- **what Joab ... did to me, and what he did** - David is referring to the same thing twice. AT: “what Joab ... did to me—that is, what he did”
- **shed the blood of war in peace** - Possible meanings are 1) “killed those men during a time of peace as if he were killing them in war” or 2) “took revenge on those men during a time of peace because they had killed people in war” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **put the blood of war on the belt around his waist and on the shoes on his feet** - Possible meanings are 1) Joab was close enough to these men when he killed them that their blood splattered on his belt and on his sandals or 2) the word “blood” is a metonym for guilt of murder, and the belt and the shoes are metonyms for Joab’s authority as commander, so David is saying that because Joab is guilty of murder, he should not be commander of the army. Either way, it is best to translate this literally. (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **do not let his gray head go down to the grave in peace** - “make sure Joab dies a violent death before he grows old.” (See [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:7

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> But act kindly toward the sons of Barzillai, the man from the region of Gilead, and be sure that they always have enough food to eat. Do that because Barzillai helped me when I was running away from your older brother Absalom.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> However, show kindness to the sons of Barzillai the Gileadite, and let them be among those who eat at your table, for they came to me when I fled from Absalom your brother.

### translationWords:

- [Gilead](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [brother](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King David continues to tell Solomon how to lead Israel.
- **Barzillai** - a man's name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **let them be among those who eat at your table** - The table is a metonym for the home where the table is. AT: "welcome them to eat at your home" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:8-9

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> Also, you remember Gera's son Shimei from the town of Bahurim in the area where the descendants of Benjamin live. You know what he did to me. He cursed me terribly on the day I left Jerusalem and went to the town of Mahanaim. But when he later came down to see me when I was crossing the Jordan River, I solemnly promised, while Yahweh listened, that I would not cause him to be executed. <sup>9</sup> But now you must surely punish him. You are a wise man, so you will know what you should do to him. He is an old man, but be sure that his blood flows when he dies .”

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> Look, there is with you Shimei son of Gera, the Benjamite of Bahurim, who cursed me with a violent curse on the day I went to Mahanaim. Shimei came down to meet me at the Jordan, and I swore to him by Yahweh, saying, ‘I will not put you to death with the sword.’ <sup>9</sup> Now therefore do not let him go free from punishment. You are a wise man, and you will know what you ought to do to him. You will bring his gray head down to the grave with blood.”

### translationWords:

- Shimei
- son, son of
- Benjamin
- curse, cursed
- Jordan River
- oath, swear, swear by
- death, die, dead
- sword
- free, freedom, liberty
- punish, punishment
- wise, wisdom

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King David continues to tell Solomon how to lead Israel.
- **Shimei ... Gera** - men's names (See [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Benjamite** - descendant of Benjamin
- **Bahurim ... Mahanaim** - place names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **do not let him go free from punishment** - This can be expressed positively. AT: “be sure to punish him” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

- **bring his gray head down to the grave with blood** - Blood is a metonym for violent death, and the head is synecdoche for the whole person. AT: “make sure he dies a violent death” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 2:10-12

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> Then David died and was buried in that part of Jerusalem which was called the city of David. <sup>11</sup> David had been king of Israel for forty years. He ruled for seven years in Hebron and for thirty-three years in Jerusalem. <sup>12</sup> Solomon became the ruler to take the place of his father David and took control of all of the kingdom.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> Then David slept with his ancestors and was buried in the city of David. <sup>11</sup> The days that David reigned over Israel were forty years. He had reigned for seven years in Hebron and for thirty-three years in Jerusalem. <sup>12</sup> Then Solomon sat on the throne of his father David, and his rule was firmly established.

### translationWords:

- sleep, asleep, fall asleep
- bury, buried, burial
- city of David
- reign
- Hebron
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, forefather

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - David dies and Solomon takes his place as the new king of Israel.
- **slept with his ancestors** - David dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. AT: “died” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **David ... and was buried** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “David ... and they buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **The days that David reigned over Israel were** - “The time that David reigned over Israel was” or “David reigned over Israel for”
- **sat on the throne of his father David** - The throne represents the authority of the king. AT: “became king, as his father David had been” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **his rule was firmly established** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “Yahweh firmly established Solomon’s rule” or “Yahweh caused Solomon to take complete control of the kingdom” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:13-15

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> One day Adonijah came to Solomon's mother Bathsheba. She said to him, "Have you come because you want things to go well?" He replied, "Yes."

<sup>14</sup> But then he said, "I have something to request you to do." She said, "Tell me what you want me to do."

<sup>15</sup> He said, "You know that all the Israelite people expected me to be their king because I am David's oldest son. But that did not happen. Instead, my younger brother became king, because that is what Yahweh wanted."

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> Then Adonijah son of Haggith came to Bathsheba the mother of Solomon. She said, "Do you come peacefully?" He replied, "Peacefully." <sup>14</sup> Then he said, "I have something to say to you." So she replied, "Speak." <sup>15</sup> Adonijah said, "You know that the kingdom was mine, and that all Israel expected me to be king. But things changed, and the kingdom was given to my brother, for it was his from Yahweh."

### translationWords:

- Adonijah
- Bathsheba
- peace, peaceful
- kingdom
- king
- brother

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Adonijah comes to speak to Bathsheba.
- **peacefully** - "with no desire to cause harm"
- **all Israel** - This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **things changed** - "what we expected to happen did not happen"
- **the kingdom was given to my brother** - This can be translated in active form. AT: "Yahweh gave the kingdom to my brother" or "my brother became king" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 02 General Notes
- 1 Kings 02 Translation Questions

**1 Kings 2:16-18****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> Now I have one thing that I request you to do. Please do not refuse to do it." She replied, "Tell me what you want me to do."

<sup>17</sup> He said, "Please ask King Solomon to give to me Abishag, the woman from the town of Shunem, to be my wife. I am sure that he will not refuse."

<sup>18</sup> Bathsheba replied, "Very well, I will speak to the king for you."

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Now I have one request of you, and do not turn away from my face." Bathsheba said to him, "Speak." <sup>17</sup> He said, "Please speak to Solomon the king, for he will not turn away from your face, so that he may give me Abishag the Shunammite as my wife." <sup>18</sup> Bathsheba said, "Very well, I will speak to the king."

**translationWords:****translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Adonijah shares his request with Bathsheba.
- **do not turn away from my face ... he will not turn away from your face** - Turning from the face of someone is a metonym for refusing to look at someone, which in turn is a metonym for refusing to do what that person requests. AT: "do not refuse to do what I request ... he will not refuse to do what you request" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Abishag the Shunammite** - (See: [1:3](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:19-21

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> So Bathsheba went to King Solomon. The king got up from his throne and went to greet her and bowed down to her. Then he sat on his throne again and asked someone to bring a chair for her. So she sat down at the king's right side.

<sup>20</sup> Then she said, "I have one small thing that I want you do. Please do not say that you will not do it." The king replied, "Mother, what do you want? I will not refuse you."

<sup>21</sup> She said, "Allow Abishag to be given to your older brother Adonijah to be his wife."

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> Bathsheba therefore went to King Solomon to speak to him for Adonijah. The king rose to meet her and bowed down to her. Then he sat down on his throne and had a throne brought for the king's mother. She sat at his right hand. <sup>20</sup> Then she said, "I wish to ask one small request of you, for you will not turn away from my face." The king answered her, "Ask, my mother, for I will not turn away from your face." <sup>21</sup> She said, "Let Abishag the Shunammite be given to Adonijah your brother as his wife."

### translationWords:

- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- bow, bow down
- throne
- right hand

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Bathsheba goes to King Solomon with Adonijah's request.
- **The king rose** - "The king stood up" from where he was sitting on his throne.
- **had a throne brought** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "told someone to bring a throne" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the king's mother** - Bathsheba
- **you will not turn away from my face ... I will not turn away from your face** - Turning from the face of someone is a metonym for refusing to look at someone, which in turn is a metonym for refusing to do what that person requests. AT: "you will not refuse to do what I request ... I will not refuse to do what you request" Similar words are found in [2:16-17](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Let Abishag the Shunammite be given to Adonijah ... as his wife** - This can be translated in active form. AT: "Allow Adonijah ... to marry Abishag the Shunammite" or "Give Abishag the Shunammite to Adonijah ... as his wife" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:22-23

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> The king replied angrily, “What? Are you requesting me to give Abishag to Adonijah? Does he want me to allow him to rule the kingdom, too? Because he is my older brother, does he think that he should be the king? Does he think that Abiathar should be the priest instead of Zadok, and that Joab should be the army commander instead of Benaiah because they supported him when he tried to become the king?”

<sup>23</sup> Then Solomon solemnly promised, requesting Yahweh to listen, “I wish God to strike me and kill me if I do not cause Adonijah to be executed for requesting this!

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> King Solomon answered and said to his mother, “Why do you ask Abishag the Shunammite for Adonijah? Why do you not ask the kingdom for him also, for he is my elder brother—for him, for Abiathar the priest, and for Joab son of Zeruijah?” <sup>23</sup> Then King Solomon swore by Yahweh, saying, “May God do so to me, and more also, if Adonijah has not spoken this word against his own life.

### translationWords:

- Adonijah
- kingdom
- brother
- Abiathar
- priest, priesthood
- Joab
- oath, swear, swear by
- life, live, living, alive

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King Solomon gives an answer to Adonijah’s request.
- **Why do you ask ... Adonijah? Why do you not ask the kingdom for him also ... Zeruijah?** - King Solomon was angered by his mother’s request. AT: “You are wrong to ask ... Adonijah! This is the same as asking the kingdom for him also ... Zeruijah!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **May God do so to me, and more also, if Adonijah has not spoken this word against his own life** - This is an idiom. AT: “God will have every right to execute me—and to do even worse things to me—if I do not execute Adonijah because he has made this request” (See: [Idiom](#))



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:24-25

### UDB:

<sup>24</sup> Yahweh has appointed me to be the king and placed me here to rule as my father David did. He has promised that my descendants will be the kings of Israel. So just as surely as Yahweh lives, I solemnly promise that Adonijah will be executed today!” <sup>25</sup> So King Solomon gave orders to Benaiah to go and kill Adonijah, and Benaiah did that.

### ULB:

<sup>24</sup> Now therefore as Yahweh lives, who has established me and set me on the throne of David my father, and who has made me a house as he promised, surely Adonijah will be put to death today.” <sup>25</sup> So King Solomon sent Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and Benaiah found Adonijah and put him to death.

### translationWords:

- throne
- David
- ancestor, father, forefather
- house
- promise
- death, die, dead
- Solomon
- Benaiah

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King Solomon executes Adonijah.
- **set me on the throne** - The word “throne” refers to Solomon’s authority to rule that was given by Yahweh. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **who has made me a house** - Here “house” refers to descendants that Yahweh gave to King Solomon, who would continue to reign after him. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 2:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> Then Solomon said to Abiathar the priest, “Go to the town of Anathoth, to your land there. You deserve to be killed, but I will not execute you now, because you were the one who supervised the men who carried Yahweh’s sacred chest for David my father, and you endured all the troubles that my father endured.” <sup>27</sup> So Solomon dismissed Abiathar from being the priest of Yahweh. By doing that he caused to happen what Yahweh had said many years previously at Shiloh, that some day he would get rid of the descendants of Eli.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> Then to Abiathar the priest the king said, “Go to Anathoth, to your own fields. You are worthy of death, but I will not at this time put you to death, because you carried the ark of the Lord Yahweh before David my father and suffered in every way my father suffered.”[1]Some versions have, ... *the ark of Yahweh ...* <sup>27</sup> So Solomon dismissed Abiathar from being priest to Yahweh, that he might fulfill the word of Yahweh, which he had spoken concerning the house of Eli at Shiloh.

**translationWords:**

- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [suffer, suffering](#)
- [fulfill](#)
- [word](#)
- [Shiloh](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Solomon dismisses Abiathar from being priest.
- **suffered in every way my father suffered** - Abiathar had suffered alongside King David before David became king.
- **that he might fulfill** - The word “he” refers to King Solomon.
- **which he had spoken** - The word “he” refers to Yahweh.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:28-29

### UDB:

<sup>28</sup> Joab had not supported Absalom when he tried to become the king, but he had supported Adonijah. So when Joab heard what had happened, he ran to the sacred tent, and he took hold of the altar because he thought that no one would kill him there. <sup>29</sup> When someone told Solomon that Joab had run to the sacred tent and was alongside the altar, Solomon told Benaiah, “Go and execute Joab.”

### ULB:

<sup>28</sup> The news came to Joab, for Joab had supported Adonijah, though he had not supported Absalom. So Joab fled to the tent of Yahweh and took hold of the horns of the altar. <sup>29</sup> It was told King Solomon that Joab had fled to the tent of Yahweh and was now beside the altar. Then Solomon sent Benaiah son of Jehoiada, saying, “Go, execute him.”

### translationWords:

- [Joab](#)
- [Absalom](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [altar](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King Solomon orders Benaiah to execute Joab.
- **The news came to Joab** - “Joab heard what Solomon did after he had become king”
- **the horns of the altar** - The horns of the altar symbolized Yahweh’s power and protection. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **It was told King Solomon that Joab had fled** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “Someone told King Solomon that Joab had fled” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:30-31

### UDB:

<sup>30</sup> So Benaiah went to the sacred tent and said to Joab, “The king commands that you come out.” But Joab replied, “No, I will die here.” So Benaiah went back to the king and reported what he had said to Joab, and what Joab had replied.

<sup>31</sup> The king replied to him, “Do what he has requested. Kill him and bury his body. If you do that, I and my descendants will no longer be punished for what Joab did when he killed two men who were innocent.

### ULB:

<sup>30</sup> So Benaiah came to the tent of Yahweh and said to him, “The king says, ‘Come out.’” Joab replied, “No, I will die here.” So Benaiah returned to the king, saying, “Joab said he wanted to die at the altar.” <sup>31</sup> The king said to him, “Do as he has said. Kill him and bury him so that you may take away from me and from my father’s house the blood that Joab shed without cause.

### translationWords:

- [Benaiah](#)
- [king](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [house](#)
- [blood](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Benaiah goes to execute Joab.
- **bury him so that you may take away from me and from my father’s house the blood that Joab shed without cause** - Here “house” stands for the descendants of David while “blood” represents guilt. AT: “bury him and so remove from me and my family the guilt for the murders Joab committed without cause” or “bury him. Do that so Yahweh will not hold me and my father’s house guilty because Joab murdered people for no reason” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:32-33

### UDB:

<sup>32</sup> But I hope that Yahweh will punish Joab for attacking and killing Abner, the commander of the army of Israel, and Amasa, the commander of the army of Judah, two men who were more righteous and better men than he is. My father David did not even know that Joab was planning to murder them. <sup>33</sup> I hope that Yahweh will punish Joab and his descendants forever for his murdering Abner and Amasa. But I hope that things will go well forever for David's descendants who rule as he did."

### ULB:

<sup>32</sup> May Yahweh return his blood on his own head, because he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself and killed them with the sword, Abner son of Ner, the captain of the army of Israel, and Amasa son of Jether, the captain of the army of Judah, without my father David knowing it. <sup>33</sup> So may their blood return on the head of Joab and on the head of his descendants forever. But to David and his descendants, and to his house, and to his throne, may there be peace forever from Yahweh."

### translationWords:

- Yahweh
- righteous, righteousness
- sword
- Abner
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Judah
- David
- descendant, descended from
- forever
- throne
- peace, peaceful

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King Solomon explains why Joab should die.
- **May Yahweh return his blood on his own head** - The word "his" refers to Joab. "Blood" is a metonym for murder. And, the idiom "blood return on the head of" means the person should be considered guilty for murder. AT: "Joab has murdered people, and I want Yahweh to hold him guilty for what he has done" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

- **more righteous and better** - These words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Abner and Amasa were much better men than Joab. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **may their blood return on the head of Joab and on the head of his descendants** - The word “blood” is a metonym for murder. And, the idiom “blood return on the head of” means the person should be considered guilty for murder. AT: “I want Yahweh to hold Joab and his descendants guilty” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **to his house, and to his throne** - The words “house” and “throne” are metonyms for the family and the kingdom. AT: “to David’s descendants and to David’s kingdom” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:34-35

### UDB:

<sup>34</sup> So Benaiah went into the sacred tent and killed Joab. Joab was buried on his property in the wilderness of Judah. <sup>35</sup> Then the king appointed Benaiah to be the commander of the army instead of Joab, and he appointed Zadok to be the priest instead of Abiathar.

### ULB:

<sup>34</sup> Then Benaiah son of Jehoiada went up and attacked Joab and killed him. He was buried in his own house in the wilderness. <sup>35</sup> The king put Benaiah son of Jehoiada over the army in his place, and he put Zadok the priest in Abiathar's place.

### translationWords:

- [son, son of](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Abiathar](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Benaiah kills Joab and becomes the commander of King Solomon's army.
- **He was buried in his own house** - This can be translated in active form. AT: "They buried Joab in his own house"
- **in his own house** - The house is a metonym for the land on which the house stood. The Israelites buried people out of doors in graves or tombs. AT: "where his family lived" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 2:36-38

### UDB:

<sup>36</sup> Then the king sent a messenger to summon Shimei, and the king said to him, "Build a house for yourself here in Jerusalem. Remain there and do not leave the city to go anywhere. <sup>37</sup> Be sure that the day that you leave Jerusalem and go across the Kidron Brook, you will be executed, and it will be your own fault."

<sup>38</sup> Shimei replied, "Your Majesty, what you say is good. I will do what you have said." So Shimei remained in Jerusalem for several years.

### ULB:

<sup>36</sup> Then the king sent and called for Shimei, and said to him, "Build yourself a house in Jerusalem and live there, and do not go out from there to any other place. <sup>37</sup> For on the day you go out, and pass over the Kidron Valley, know you for certain that you will surely die. Your blood will be on your own head." <sup>38</sup> So Shimei said to the king, "What you say is good. As my master the king has said, so your servant will do." So Shimei lived in Jerusalem for many days.

### translationWords:

- [Shimei](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [blood](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King Solomon tells Shimei to stay in Jerusalem or Shimei will die.
- **Your blood will be on your own head** - Here "blood" is a metonym for guilt and the head is a metonym for the person. AT: "You will be responsible for your own death" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:39-40

### UDB:

<sup>39</sup> But three years later, two of Shimei's slaves ran away. They went to stay with Maacah's son Achish, the king of the city of Gath. When someone told Shimei that they were in Gath, <sup>40</sup> he put a saddle on his donkey and got on the donkey and went to Gath. He found his slaves staying with King Achish and brought them back home.

### ULB:

<sup>39</sup> But at the end of three years, two of the servants of Shimei ran away to Achish son of Maacah, the king of Gath. So they told Shimei, saying, "See, your servants are in Gath." <sup>40</sup> Then Shimei arose, saddled his donkey and went to Achish in Gath to seek his servants. He went and brought his servants back from Gath.

### translationWords:

- [Gath](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Shimei leaves Jerusalem.
- **Achish ... Maacah ... Gath** - men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Gath** - a Philistine city (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Shimei arose** - This is an idiom. "Shimei quickly" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:41-42

### UDB:

<sup>41</sup> But someone told King Solomon that Shimei had gone from Jerusalem to Gath and had returned.

<sup>42</sup> So the king sent a soldier to summon Shimei and said to him, "I told you to solemnly promise, knowing that Yahweh was listening, that you must not leave Jerusalem. I told you, 'Be sure that if you ever leave Jerusalem, you will be executed.' And you replied to me, 'What you have said is good; I will do what you have said.'

### ULB:

<sup>41</sup> When Solomon was told that Shimei had gone from Jerusalem to Gath and had returned, <sup>42</sup> the king sent and called for Shimei and said to him, "Did I not make you swear by Yahweh and testify to you, saying, 'Know for certain that on the day you go out and go to any other place, you will surely die'? Then you said to me, 'What you say is good.'

### translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [testimony, testify](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King Solomon judges Shimei for leaving Jerusalem.
- **Solomon was told** - This can be translated in active form. AT: "someone told Solomon" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Did I not make you swear ... saying, 'Know ... die'?** - Solomon is reminding Shimei of what Shimei had promised. AT: "You know very well that I made you swear ... saying, 'Know ... die!'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:43-44

### UDB:

<sup>43</sup> So why did you not do what you solemnly promised to Yahweh? Why did you disobey what I commanded you?"

<sup>44</sup> The king also said to Shimei, "You know in your inner being all the evil things that you did to my father David. So Yahweh will now punish you for the evil things that you did.

### ULB:

<sup>43</sup> Why then have you not kept your oath to Yahweh and the command that I gave you?" <sup>44</sup> The king also said to Shimei, "You know in your heart all the wickedness that you did to my father David. Therefore Yahweh will return your wickedness on your own head.

### translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [heart](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King Solomon pronounces judgment upon Shimei for leaving Jerusalem.
- **Why then have you not kept your oath ... you?** - Possible meanings are 1) Solomon is asking for an answer or 2) AT: "You have done wrong by breaking your oath ... you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **will return your wickedness on your own head** - Here the head is a metonym for the person, and wickedness is spoken of as if it were a solid or liquid that could be put on a person's head. AT: "will hold you responsible for all your wickedness" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 2:45-46

### UDB:

<sup>45</sup> But Yahweh will bless me, and he will enable David's descendants to rule forever."

<sup>46</sup> Then the king gave a command to Benaiah son of Jehoiada. He went out and put Shimei to death. So Solomon obtained complete control of the kingdom.

### ULB:

<sup>45</sup> But King Solomon will be blessed and the throne of David will be established before Yahweh forever." <sup>46</sup> Then the king gave a command to Benaiah son of Jehoiada. He went out and put Shimei to death.

So the rule was well established in Solomon's hand.

### translationWords:

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [throne](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [son, son of](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King Solomon orders Shimei to be put to death.
- **the throne of David will be established before Yahweh forever** - Here "throne of David" represents the authority and rule of David and all his descendants forever. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **in Solomon's hand** - This use of "hand" represents Solomon's power and authority. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 02 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter has two stories. Verses 1-15 is the story of Solomon's dream when God asked him what he wanted and he said he needed wisdom to be a good and fair ruler. 16-28 is the story of a court case showing Solomon's wisdom. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Wisdom

God was very pleased with Solomon's request for wisdom. This is because wisdom was something that he could use to serve other people instead of himself. Because this was a noble request, God promised Solomon wisdom, wealth and fame. (See: [promise](#))

#### Putting the needs of others first

There are two additional examples of people putting the needs of others in front of their own needs. God is pleased with people wanting to do their job well more than wanting to be blessed. And a mother will put the life of her child above every other concern. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 03:01 Notes](#)

**1 Kings 3:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Now Solomon made an agreement to marry the king's daughter. Then Solomon brought the king's daughter to live in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. She lived there until Solomon's workers had finished building his house, the temple of Yahweh, and the wall around Jerusalem. <sup>2</sup> At that time the temple of Yahweh had not yet been built, so the Israelite people were still offering sacrifices at many other places of worship. <sup>3</sup> Solomon loved Yahweh, and he obeyed all the instructions that his father David had given him. But he also offered sacrifices and burned incense at various places.

**ULB:**

**3** <sup>1</sup> Solomon allied himself by marriage with Pharaoh king of Egypt. He took Pharaoh's daughter and brought her into the city of David until he had finished building his own house, the house of Yahweh, and the wall around Jerusalem. <sup>2</sup> The people were sacrificing at the high places, because no house had yet been built for the name of Yahweh. <sup>3</sup> Solomon showed his love for Yahweh by walking in the statutes of David his father, except that he sacrificed and burned incense at the high places.

**translationWords:**

- Solomon
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- king
- Egypt, Egyptian
- city of David
- house
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- sacrifice, offering
- high places
- name
- love
- walk
- statute, statutes
- David
- ancestor, father, forefather
- incense

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Solomon marries an Egyptian.
- **Solomon allied himself by marriage with Pharaoh king of Egypt** - Solomon became the son-in-law of Pharaoh king of Egypt so the two kings would work together and fight together against their enemies.
- **until he had finished building** - She was still in the city of David after he had finished building.
- **the house of Yahweh** - “the temple”
- **no house had yet been built** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “no one had yet built a house” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **for the name of Yahweh** - The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for the name” refers to worshiping the person. AT: “in which people would worship Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **walking in the statutes of David his father** - How one lives one’s life is spoken of as walking on a path. AT: “obeying the laws that David his father had made” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 03 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 3:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> One day the king went to the city of Gibeon to offer a sacrifice there, because that was where a very famous place of worship was. He offered a thousand whole burnt sacrifices there. <sup>5</sup> That night, Yahweh appeared to him in a dream. He asked him, “What would you like me to give to you?”

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> The king went to Gibeon to sacrifice there, for that was the great high place there. Solomon offered a thousand burnt offerings on that altar. <sup>5</sup> Yahweh appeared at Gibeon to Solomon in a dream by night; he said, “Ask! What should I give you?”

### translationWords:

- [Gibeon, Gibeonite](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [altar](#)
- [dream](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God asks Solomon what he can do for Solomon.
- **the great high place** - “the most famous place for makings sacrifices” or “the most important altar”
- **Ask! What should I give you?** - “Ask me for whatever you want and I will give it to you.” or “What do you want? Ask and I will give it to you.”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 03 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 3:6

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> Solomon replied, "You always greatly and faithfully loved my father David, who served you well. You did that because he was faithful to you and acted righteously and honestly toward you. And you have shown how greatly and faithfully you loved him by giving me to him, his son, and now I am ruling as he did before he died.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> So Solomon said, "You have shown great covenant faithfulness to your servant, David my father, because he walked before you in trustworthiness, in righteousness, and in uprightness of heart. You have kept for him this great covenant faithfulness and have given him a son to sit on his throne today.

### translationWords:

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- servant, slave, slavery
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- righteous, righteousness
- heart
- son, son of
- throne

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Solomon responds to God's question.
- **You have shown great covenant faithfulness** - "You have been very faithful to your agreement"
- **because he walked before you in trustworthiness, in righteousness, and in uprightness of heart** - Walking is a metaphor for the way one lives. The abstract nouns "trustworthiness," "righteousness," and "uprightness" can be translated as adjectives. AT: "because he was trustworthy and righteous, and his heart was upright" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **and in uprightness of heart** - A sincere person is spoken of as one whose heart is upright. AT: "and he was sincere" or "and he spoke the truth and did what was good" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **have given him a son** - The "son" is Solomon. (See: [Pronouns](#))
- **to sit on his throne** - "to rule in his place" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **today** - "now." Solomon is speaking not of one day, but of the years he had already been ruling.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 03 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 3:7-9

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> Now, Yahweh my God, you have enabled me to be the king like my father was. But I am very young, like a little child. I do not know how to rule my people at all. <sup>8</sup> I live among the people whom you have chosen. They are a very large group of people. There are very, very many of them; no one can count them. <sup>9</sup> So please enable me to think clearly, in order that I may rule your people well. Enable me to know what is good and what is evil. If you do not do that, I will never be able to rule this great group of people who belong to you.”

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> Now Yahweh my God, you have made your servant king in the place of David my father, though I am only a little child. I do not know how to go out or come in. <sup>8</sup> Your servant is in the midst of the people whom you have chosen, a great people, too numerous to be numbered or counted. <sup>9</sup> So give your servant an understanding heart to judge your people, so that I may discern between good and evil. For who is able to judge this great people of yours?”

### translationWords:

- Yahweh
- God
- servant, slave, slavery
- king
- David
- ancestor, father, forefather
- children, child
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect
- judge, judgment
- discern, discernment
- evil, wicked, wickedness

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Solomon asks for wisdom.
- **your servant** - Solomon speaks as if he is another person to show respect to Yahweh. AT: “me” (See: [Pronouns](#))
- **I am only a little child** - Solomon is saying that he is like a child who does not know as much as a father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **I do not know how to go out or come in** - This is hyperbole for not knowing anything about what he is supposed to do. AT: “I do not know the right way to do things” or “I do not know how to be the king” (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **For who is able to judge this great people of yours?** - Solomon asks a question to emphasize that he knows that no one can judge. AT: “No one is able to judge this great people of yours.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 03 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 3:10-12

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh was very pleased that Solomon had requested that. <sup>11</sup> God said to him, "You did not request that you live for many years or that you become very rich or that you be able to kill all your enemies. Instead, you have requested that I enable you to be wise, in order that you will be able to know and to do what is right while you govern these people. <sup>12</sup> So I will certainly do what you requested. I will enable you to be very wise. The result will be that no one who has lived before you or who will live after you will be as wise as you are.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> This request of Solomon pleased the Lord. <sup>11</sup> So God said to him, "Because you have asked this thing and have not asked for yourself long life or riches or the life of your enemies, but have asked for yourself understanding to discern justice, <sup>12</sup> See, now I will do all you asked of me when you gave me your request. I give you a wise and an understanding heart, so that there has been no one like you before you, and no one like you will rise up after you.

### translationWords:

- Solomon
- Lord
- life, live, living, alive
- discern, discernment
- just, justice, justly
- wise, wisdom
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God gives Solomon wisdom and more.
- **the life of your enemies** - The "life" is a metonym for the power to kill. AT: "the power to kill your enemies" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **now I will do all you asked of me when you gave me your request** - "I will do what you asked me to do when you spoke with me"
- **I give you a wise and an understanding heart** - The heart is a metonym for what a person thinks and desires. AT: "I make you able to be wise and to understand many things" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 03 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 3:13-14

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> I will also give you things that you did not request. I will enable you to become very rich and honored, all of the years that you live. You will be richer and more honored than any other king.

<sup>14</sup> If you conduct your life as I want you to, and if you obey all my laws and commandments, as your father David did, I will enable you to live for many years.”

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> I have also given you what you have not asked, both riches and honor, so that there will not be any among the kings like you all your days. <sup>14</sup> If you will walk in my ways to keep my statutes and my commandments, as your father David walked, then I will lengthen your days.”

### translationWords:

- honor, to honor
- king
- walk
- statute, statutes
- command, to command, commandment

### translationNotes:

- **walk in my ways to keep** - Living one's life is spoken of as walking on a path. AT: “live as I want you to live and obey” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **lengthen your days** - “days” represents Solomon's life. AT: “make you live a long time” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 03 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 3:15

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> Then Solomon awoke, and he realized that God had spoken to him in a dream. Then he went to Jerusalem and stood in front of the sacred tent where the sacred chest was, and he offered many sacrifices that were completely burned on the altar and offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh. Then he made a feast for all his officials.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> Then Solomon awoke, and behold, it was a dream. He came to Jerusalem and stood before the ark of the covenant of the Lord. He offered up burnt offerings and peace offerings, and made a feast for all his servants.

### translationWords:

- [dream](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [peace offering](#)
- [feast](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

### translationNotes:

- **behold** - The word “behold” here shows that Solomon saw something interesting.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 03 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 3:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> One day two prostitutes came and stood in front of King Solomon. <sup>17</sup> One of them said, "Your Majesty, this woman and I live in the same house. I gave birth to a baby while she was there in the house.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Then two women who were prostitutes came to the king and stood before him. <sup>17</sup> One woman said, "Oh, my master, this woman and I live in the same house, and I gave birth to a child with her in the house.

**translationWords:**

- prostitute, harlot, whore
- lord, master, sir
- life, live, living, alive
- children, child

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Two prostitutes ask Solomon to make a decision.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 03 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 3:18-20

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> On the third day after my baby was born, this woman also gave birth to a baby. Only the two of us were in the house. There was no one else there.

<sup>19</sup> But one night this woman's baby died because she accidentally rolled on top of her baby and smothered it. <sup>20</sup> So she got up at midnight and took my baby boy who was lying beside me while I was sleeping. She carried him to her bed and brought her dead baby and put it in my bed.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> It happened on the third day after I gave birth that this woman also gave birth. We were together. There was no one else with us in the house, but only the two of us in the house. <sup>19</sup> Then this woman's son died in the night, because she lay on him. <sup>20</sup> So she arose at midnight and took my son from beside me, while your servant slept, and laid him at her breast, and laid her dead son at my breast.

### translationWords:

- [son, son of](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The two prostitutes tell Solomon their story.
- **lay on him** - It may be helpful to state that this caused the baby to die. AT: "accidentally rolled on top of her baby and smothered him" (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **your servant** - The woman speaks as if she were speaking of someone else to show that she respects Solomon. AT: "I" (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 03 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 3:21-22

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> When I awoke the next morning and was ready to nurse my baby, I saw that it was dead. But when I looked at it closely in the morning light, I saw that it was not my baby!”

<sup>22</sup> But the other woman said, “That is not true! The baby that is alive is mine, and the baby that is dead is yours!” Then the first woman said, “No, the dead baby is yours, and the one that is alive is mine!” And they continued to argue in front of the king.

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> When I rose in the morning to nurse my child, he was dead. But when I had looked at him carefully in the morning, he was not my son, whom I had borne.” <sup>22</sup> Then the other woman said, “No, the living one is my son, and the dead one is your son.” The first woman said, “No, the dead one is your son, and the living one is my son.” This is how they spoke before the king.

### translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [king](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Two prostitutes continue to share their story with Solomon.
- **nurse my child** - This means to feed her baby milk from her breast.
- **before the king** - “before Solomon” or “while Solomon could see and hear them”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 03 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 3:23-25****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> Then the king said, “Both of you are saying, ‘My baby is the one that is alive and the one that is dead is yours.’” <sup>24</sup> So he said to one of his servants, “Bring me a sword.” So the servant brought a sword to the king. <sup>25</sup> Then the king said to the servant, “Cut the baby that is alive into two parts. Give one part to each of the women.”

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> Then the king said, “One of you says, ‘This is my son who is alive, and your son is dead,’ and the other says, ‘No, your son is the dead one, and my son is the living one.’” <sup>24</sup> The king said, “Bring me a sword.” So they brought a sword before the king. <sup>25</sup> Then the king said, “Divide the living child in two, and give half to this woman and half to the other.”

**translationWords:**

- [sword](#)
- [children, child](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Solomon makes a decision for the two women.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 03 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 3:26-28

### UDB:

<sup>26</sup> But the woman whose baby was alive greatly loved her baby, so she said to the king, “No, Your Majesty! Do not allow him to kill the baby! Give her the child that is alive!” But the other woman said to the king, “No, cut it in half. Then it will not be her baby or my baby.”

<sup>27</sup> Then the king said to the servant, “Do not kill the baby. Give the baby to the woman who said, ‘Do not cut the baby in half,’ because she is truly the baby’s mother.”

<sup>28</sup> All the Israelite people heard about what the king had decided, and they had an awesome respect for him. They realized that God had truly enabled him to be very wise, to judge people’s matters fairly.

### ULB:

<sup>26</sup> Then the woman whose son was alive spoke to the king, for her heart was full of compassion for her son, and she said, “Oh, my master, give her the living child, and by no means kill him.” But the other woman said, “He shall be neither mine nor yours. Divide him.” <sup>27</sup> Then the king answered and said, “Give the first woman the living child, and by no means kill him. She is his mother.” <sup>28</sup> When all Israel heard of the judgment which the king had rendered, they feared the king, because they saw that the wisdom of God was in him for giving judgments.

### translationWords:

- son, son of
- heart
- compassion, compassionate
- lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- judge, judgment
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- wise, wisdom
- God

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The real mother asks the king to spare the child’s life.
- **her heart was full of compassion for her son** - The heart is spoken of as if it were a container and compassion as if it were a solid object. AT: “she greatly loved her baby” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **all Israel** This is a generalization. (See: **Hyperbole**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 03 Translation Questions](#)

## **1 Kings 4 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter names the important people in Solomon's government and shows the extent of his kingdom.

### **Links:**

- [1 Kings 04:01 Notes](#)



## 1 Kings 4:1-4

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Now when Solomon was king over all Israel, <sup>2</sup> these were his most important officials:

- Azariah, whose father was Zadok, was the priest.
- <sup>3</sup> Shisha's sons Elihoreph and Ahijah were the official secretaries.
- Ahilud's son Jehoshaphat was the one who announced to the people the king's decisions.
- <sup>4</sup> Benaiah was the army commander.
- Zadok and Abiathar were also priests.
- 

### ULB:

4 <sup>1</sup> King Solomon was king over all Israel. <sup>2</sup> These were his officials: Azariah son of Zadok was the priest. <sup>3</sup> Elihoreph and Ahijah sons of Shisha, were secretaries. Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was the recorder. <sup>4</sup> Benaiah son of Jehoiada was over the army. Zadok and Abiathar were priests.[1]Some versions treat *Zadok and Abiathar were priests* as a later addition to the text.

### translationWords:

- king
- Solomon
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Azariah
- son, son of
- Zadok
- priest, priesthood
- Ahijah
- Jehoshaphat
- Benaiah
- Abiathar

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the beginning of a list of Solomon's officials.
- **Azariah ... Zadok ... Elihoreph ... Ahijah ... Shisha ... Jehoshaphat ... Ahilud ... Benaiah ... Jehoiada ... Abiathar** - men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 04 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 4:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Azariah, whose father was Nathan, was in charge of the governors.

- Another of Nathan's sons, Zabud, was a priest and the king's chief advisor.
- <sup>6</sup> Ahishar supervised the servants who worked in the palace.
- Abda's son Adoniram supervised the men who were forced to do work for the king.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Azariah son of Nathan was over the officers. Zabud son of Nathan was a priest and the king's friend. <sup>6</sup> Ahishar was over the household. Adoniram son of Abda was over the men who were subjected to forced labor.

### translationWords:

- Nathan
- household
- subject, be subject to, in subjection to
- labor, laborer

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The list of Solomon's officials continues.
- **Azariah ... Nathan ... Zabud ... Ahishar ... Adoniram ... Abda** - men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the men who were subjected to forced labor** - This can be translated in active form. AT: "the men whom Solomon forced to work for him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 04 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 4:7-10

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> Solomon appointed twelve men to govern the districts in Israel. They also were required to provide food for the king and all the others who lived and worked in the palace. Each man was required to provide from his own district the food for one month in each year. <sup>8</sup> Their names were:

- Ben Hur, for the hill area of the tribe of Ephraim.
- <sup>9</sup> Ben Deker, for the cities of Makaz, Shaalbim, Beth Shemesh, and Elon Bethhanan,
- <sup>10</sup> Ben Hesed, for the cities of Arubboth and Socoh and the area near the city of Hopher,
- 

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> Solomon had twelve officers over all Israel, who provided food for the king and his household. Each man had to make provision for one month in the year. <sup>8</sup> These were their names: Ben Hur, in the hill country of Ephraim; <sup>9</sup> Ben Deker in Makaz, Shaalbim, Beth Shemesh, and Elonbeth Hanan; <sup>10</sup> Ben Hesed, in Arubboth (to him belonged Socoh and all the land of Hopher);

### translationWords:

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- household
- name
- Ephraim
- Beth Shemesh

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Continuation of Solomon's List of Officials:
- **Ben Hur ... Ben Deker ... Ben Hesed** - These are the names of men. Note that "Ben" before a name means "son of" so "Ben Hur" means "the son of Hur." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **in the hill country ... in Makaz ... in Arubboth** - "who was the official in charge of the hill country ... who was the official in charge of Makaz ... who was the official in charge of Arubboth"
- **Ephraim ... Makaz ... Shaalbim ... Beth Shemesh ... Elonbeth Hanan ... Arubboth ... Socoh ... Hopher** - These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 04 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 4:11-14****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> Ben Abinadab, who was married to Solomon's daughter Taphath, for all the district of Dor,

- <sup>12</sup> Ahilud's son Baana, for the cities of Taanach and Megiddo, for all the region near the city of Zarethan, and from the city of Beth Shan south of Jezreel as far as the cities of Abel Meholah and Jokmeam,
- <sup>13</sup> Ben Geber, for the city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead, for the villages in Gilead that belonged to Jair, who was a descendant of Manasseh, and for the area of Argob in the region of Bashan. There were sixty large cities in that region altogether, each city with a wall around it and bronze bars across the gates.
- <sup>14</sup> Iddo's son Ahinadab, for the city of Mahanaim east of the Jordan River;
- 

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Ben Abinadab, in all the district of Dor (he had Taphath the daughter of Solomon as his wife);

<sup>12</sup> Baana son of Ahilud, in Taanach and Megiddo, and all Beth Shan that is beside Zarethan below Jezreel, from Beth Shan to Abel Meholah as far as the other side of Jokmeam; <sup>13</sup> Ben Geber, in Ramoth Gilead (to him belonged the towns of Jair son of Manasseh, that are in Gilead, and the region of Argob belonged to him, which is in Bashan, sixty great cities with walls and bronze gate bars); <sup>14</sup> Ahinadab son of Iddo, in Mahanaim;

**translationWords:**

- Solomon
- Jezreel
- Gilead
- Manasseh
- Bashan
- bronze
- gate, gate bar

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - The list of Solomon's officials continues, and the list of the areas of which they were in charge begins.
- **Ben Abinadab ... Ben Geber ... Jair ... Manasseh ... Ahinadab ... Iddo** - men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **in all the district of Dor ... in Taanach ... in Ramoth Gilead ... in Mahanaim** - “who was the officer in charge of all the district of Dor ... who was the officer in charge of Taanach ... who was the officer in charge of Ramoth Gilead ... who was the officer in charge of Mahanaim”
- **Taphath** - woman’s name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Dor ... Beth Shan ... Zarethan ... Jezreel ... Beth Shan to Abel Meholah ... Jokmeam ... Ramoth Gilead ... Argob ... Bashan ... Mahanaim** - place names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 04 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 4:15-17

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> Ahimaaz, who had married Solomon's daughter Basemath, for the territory of the tribe of Naphtali,

- <sup>16</sup> Hushai's son Baana, for the territory of the tribe of Asher and for the city of Aloth,
- <sup>17</sup> Paruah's son Jehoshaphat, for the territory of the tribe of Issachar,
- 

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> Ahimaaz, in Naphtali (he also married Basemath the daughter of Solomon as his wife); <sup>16</sup> Baana son of Hushai, in Asher and Bealoth; <sup>17</sup> Jehoshaphat son of Paruah, in Issachar;

### translationWords:

- [Naphtali](#)
- [son, son of](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Issachar](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The list of Solomon's officials and the areas of which they were in charge continues.
- **Ahimaaz ... Baana ... Hushai ... Jehoshaphat ... Paruah** - men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **in Naphtali ... in Asher ... in Issachar** - "who was the officer in charge of Naphtali ... who was the officer in charge of Asher ... who was the officer in charge of Issachar"
- **Basemath** - a woman's name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Naphtali ... Asher ... Issachar** - tribal lands named after the sons of Israel (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Bealoth** - name of a piece of land (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 04 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 4:18-19****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> Ela's son Shimei, for the territory of the tribe of Benjamin,

- <sup>19</sup> Uri's son Geber, for the region of Gilead, the land that Sihon the king of the Amor people group formerly ruled, and Og who formerly ruled the region of Bashan.

In addition to all these, Solomon appointed one governor for the territory of the tribe of Judah.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Shimei son of Ela, in Benjamin; <sup>19</sup> and Geber son of Uri, in the land of Gilead, the country of Sihon king of the Amorites and of Og king of Bashan, and he was the only official who was in the land.

**translationWords:**

- [Shimei](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [king](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [Bashan](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - The list of Solomon's officials and the areas of which they were in charge continues.
- **Shimei ... Ela ... Geber ... Uri ... Sihon ... Og** - men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Benjamin** - tribal land named for a son of Israel (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Gilead ... Bashan** - names of pieces of land (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the country of Sihon** - "the land that in earlier years belonged to Sihon"
- **Amorites** - the name of a people group (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **in the land** - Here "the land" refers to the land of Judah; the previous officials presided over different parts of Israel.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 04 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 4:20-23

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> There were as many people in Judah and Israel as there are grains of sand on the seashore. They had plenty to eat and drink, and they were happy. <sup>21</sup> Solomon's kingdom extended from the Euphrates River in the northeast to the region of Philistia in the west and to the border of Egypt in the south. The conquered people in those areas paid taxes and were under Solomon's control all during his life.

<sup>22</sup> The people whom Solomon ruled were required to bring to Solomon every day thirty donkey-loads of fine flour and sixty donkey-loads of wheat, <sup>23</sup> ten head of cattle that had been raised in stalls, twenty head of cattle raised in pastures, one hundred sheep, grain-fed poultry—and wild game: deer, gazelle, and roebucks.

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> Judah and Israel were as numerous as the sand by the sea. They were eating and drinking and were happy. <sup>21</sup> Solomon ruled over all the kingdoms from the River to the land of the Philistines and to the border of Egypt. They brought tribute and served Solomon all the days of his life. <sup>22</sup> Solomon's provision for one day was thirty cors of fine flour and sixty cors of meal, <sup>23</sup> ten fat oxen, twenty oxen out of the pastures, and one hundred sheep, besides deer, gazelles, roebucks, and fattened fowl.

### translationWords:

- Judah
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Solomon
- kingdom
- Philistines
- Egypt, Egyptian
- tribute
- serve, service
- life, live, living, alive
- ox, oxen
- sheep, ram, ewe

### translationNotes:

- **Judah and Israel were as numerous as the sand by the sea** - The speaker uses hyperbole to say that there were so many people that it would be impossible to count them all. The words "Judah" and "Israel" are metonyms for the people who lived in Judah and Israel. AT:

“There were as many people in Judah and Israel as there are grains of sand by the sea” or “there were more people in Judah and Israel than a person could count” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Metonymy](#))

- **the River** - “the Euphrates River” (UDB)
- **thirty cors** - A cor is a unit of dry measure. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))
- **deer, gazelles, roebucks** - four-legged animals that run fast (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **deer** - more than one of these animals
- **fattened fowl** - “birds that people fed so they would become fat”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 04 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 4:24-25

### UDB:

<sup>24</sup> Solomon ruled over all the area west of the Euphrates River, from the city of Tiphseh in the northeast to the city of Gaza in the southwest. He ruled over all the kings in that area. There was peace between his government and the governments of nearby countries. <sup>25</sup> All during the years that Solomon ruled, the people of Judah and Israel lived safely.

### ULB:

<sup>24</sup> For he had dominion over all the region on this side of the River, from Tiphseh as far as to Gaza, over all the kings on this side the River, and he had peace on all sides around him. <sup>25</sup> Judah and Israel lived in safety, every man under his vine and under his fig tree, from Dan to Beersheba, all the days of Solomon.

### translationWords:

- [dominion](#)
- [Gaza](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [vine](#)
- [fig](#)
- [Dan](#)
- [Beersheba](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Tiphseh** - name of a piece of land
- **Judah and Israel** - The words “Judah” and “Israel” are metonyms for the people of Judah and Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **every man under his vine and under his fig tree** - “each family had their own garden with grapevines and fig trees,” This showed that the people lived in safety and peace, since they were not at war and had time to grow their gardens.
- **from Dan to Beersheba** - This represents the whole land of Israel from Dan in the north to Beersheba in the south. (See: [Merism](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 04 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 4:26-28

### UDB:

<sup>26</sup> Solomon had forty thousand stalls for the horses that pulled his chariots and twelve thousand men who rode on horses.

<sup>27</sup> His twelve district governors supplied the food that King Solomon needed for himself and for all those who ate in the palace. Each governor supplied food for one month each year. They provided everything that Solomon required. <sup>28</sup> They also brought stalks of barley and wheat for the fast horses that pulled the chariots and for the other work horses. They brought this fodder to the places where the horses were kept.

### ULB:

<sup>26</sup> Solomon had forty thousand stalls of horses for his chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen. <sup>27</sup> Those officials provided food for King Solomon and for all who came to King Solomon's table, every man in his month. They let nothing be lacking. <sup>28</sup> They also brought to the proper place barley and straw for the chariot horses and riding horses, each one bringing in what he was able.

### translationWords:

- [horse](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [king](#)

### translationNotes:

- **stalls of horses** - A stall is a place where an animal such as a horse is kept and cared for.
- **who came to King Solomon's table** - "who ate with King Solomon" or "whom King Solomon invited to eat with him"
- **every man in his month** - Solomon had assigned each of the 12 officials in [4:7-19](#) to bring him food in a different month.
- **They let nothing be lacking** - This can be expressed positively. AT: "They provided everything that Solomon needed" (See: [Litotes](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 04 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 4:29-31

### UDB:

<sup>29</sup> God enabled Solomon to be extremely wise and to have great understanding. He enjoyed learning about a huge number of things. <sup>30</sup> He was wiser than all the wise men in the regions east of Israel, and all the wise men in Egypt. <sup>31</sup> Ethan from Ezrah and Heman and Calcol and Darda and the sons of Mahol were considered to be very wise, but Solomon was wiser than all of them. People in all the nearby countries heard about Solomon.

### ULB:

<sup>29</sup> God gave Solomon great wisdom and understanding, and wideness of understanding like the sand on the seashore. <sup>30</sup> Solomon's wisdom exceeded the wisdom of all the people of the east and all the wisdom of Egypt. <sup>31</sup> He was wiser than all men—than Ethan the Ezrahite, Heman, Calcol, and Darda, the sons of Mahol—and his fame reached all the surrounding nations.

### translationWords:

- Solomon
- wise, wisdom
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Egypt, Egyptian
- nation

### translationNotes:

- **God gave Solomon great wisdom and understanding** - God enabling Solomon to be wise and to understand many things is spoken of as if God were giving Solomon physical objects. The abstract nouns “wisdom” and “understanding” can be translated as verbs. AT: “God made Solomon able to be wise and to understand many things” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **wideness of understanding like the sand on the seashore** - Solomon was able to understand many things about many different subjects. The abstract noun “wideness” can be translated as an adjective. AT: “Solomon was able to understand many things about a wide range of subjects” (See: [Simile](#))
- **Solomon's wisdom exceeded the wisdom of all the people** - “Solomon was wiser than all the wise people”
- **the people of the east** - This refers to people from countries east of Israel such as Arabia and Mesopotamia.
- **Ethan ... Heman ... Calcol ... Darda ... Mahol** - men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 04 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 4:32-34

### UDB:

<sup>32</sup> He composed more than one thousand songs. <sup>33</sup> He talked about various kinds of plants, from the huge cedar trees in Lebanon to the tiny hyssop plants that grow in cracks in walls. He also talked about wild animals, birds, reptiles, and fish. <sup>34</sup> People came from all over the world to hear the wise things that Solomon said. Many kings sent men to listen to him and then return and tell them what Solomon said.

### ULB:

<sup>32</sup> He spoke three thousand proverbs and his songs were one thousand and five in number. <sup>33</sup> He described the plants, from the cedar that is in Lebanon to the hyssop that grows out of the wall. He explained also about beasts, birds, creeping things, and fish. <sup>34</sup> People came from all the nations to hear the wisdom of Solomon. They came from all kings of the earth who had heard of his wisdom.

### translationWords:

- [proverb](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)

### translationNotes:

- **cedar ... hyssop** - These words form a merism that includes all plants. AT: “cedar tree ... hyssop bush” or “the greatest of trees ... least important of bushes” (See: [Translate Unknowns and Merism](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 04 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This is the beginning of the description of the building of the temple. (See: [temple](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Building the temple

Building the temple took a lot of work and cooperation. King Hiram of Tyre provided lumber for building the temple in exchange for wheat and olive oil. Solomon also had many people cutting rocks for the walls of the temple.

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 05:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Kings 5:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Hiram, the king of the city of Tyre, had always been a close friend of King David. When he heard that Solomon had been appointed to become the king after his father was no longer king, he sent messengers to Solomon. <sup>2</sup> Solomon gave those messengers this message to take back to Hiram:

<sup>3</sup> "You know that my father David led his soldiers to fight many wars against his enemies in the nearby countries. So he could not try to build a temple in which we could worship Yahweh our God, until after Yahweh enabled the Israelite army to defeat all his enemies.

### ULB:

5 <sup>1</sup> Hiram king of Tyre sent his servants to Solomon for he had heard that they had anointed him king in place of his father; for Hiram had always loved David. <sup>2</sup> Solomon sent word to Hiram, saying, <sup>3</sup> "You know that David my father could not build a house for the name of Yahweh his God because of the wars that surrounded him, for during his lifetime Yahweh was putting his enemies under the soles of his feet.

### translationWords:

- king
- Tyre, Tyrians
- send, send out, sent
- servant, slave, slavery
- Solomon
- anoint, anointed
- love
- David
- know, knowledge, make known
- name
- Yahweh
- God

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Solomon talks with King Hiram about building the Temple.
- **Hiram had always loved David** - "Hiram had always been a close friend of King David" (UDB)

- **Yahweh was putting his enemies under the soles of his feet** - To put an enemy under someone's foot means to conquer them. AT: "Yahweh was helping David to defeat his enemies" or "David was busy since Yahweh was giving him victory over his enemies" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **for the name of Yahweh** - The word "name" is a metonym for the person, and "for the name" refers to worshiping the person. Translate as in [3:2](#). AT: "in which people would worship Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **because of the wars that surrounded him** - Another possible meaning is "because of the wars with which his enemies surrounded him" or "because he was fighting enemies on all sides"
- **Yahweh was putting his enemies under the soles of his feet** - The soles of the feet are a metonym for complete control over a person. AT: "Yahweh was enabling David to completely defeat his enemies" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 05 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 5:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> But now Yahweh our God has enabled us to have peace with all the surrounding countries. There is no danger that we will be attacked. <sup>5</sup> Yahweh promised my father David, ‘Your son, whom I will enable to be king after you are no longer king, will build a temple for me, Yahweh your God.’

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> But now, Yahweh my God has given me rest on every side. There is neither adversary nor disaster. <sup>5</sup> So I intend to build a temple for the name of Yahweh my God, as Yahweh spoke to David my father, saying, ‘Your son, whom I will set on your throne in your place, will build the temple for my name.’

### translationWords:

- rest
- adversary, enemy
- temple
- ancestor, father, forefather
- throne
- name

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Solomon continues to talk with King Hiram about building the Temple.
- **has given me rest on every side** - Before Solomon became king, King David and the people of Israel had been at war, but now King Solomon and the people were at rest and in a time of peace.
- **There is neither adversary nor disaster** - neither humans who cause harm nor natural events that cause harm. This can be stated positively. AT: “We are safe from our enemies and from natural disasters” (See: [Merism](#))
- **adversary** - enemy
- **disaster** - event that causes harm to people and their property
- **So** - This is to emphasize the words that follow. “Listen! This is what I am going to do:” or “Because of what Yahweh has done for me, this is what I am going to do:”
- **for the name of Yahweh my God ... for my name** - The word “name” is a metonym for the person. AT: “where Yahweh my God will live ... where I will live” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **set on your throne in your place** - Here “throne” refers to ruling as king. AT: “make to be the king after you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 05 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 5:6

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> So I am requesting that you command your workers to cut cedar trees for me. My men will work with them, and I will pay your workers whatever you decide. But my men cannot do the work alone, because they do not know how to cut down trees like your workers from the city of Sidon do.”

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> Now therefore command that they cut cedars from Lebanon for me. My servants will join your servants, and I will pay you for your servants so that you are paid fairly for everything you agreed to do. For you know there is no one among us who knows how to cut timber like the Sidonians.”

### translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [Sidon, Sidonians](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Solomon continues to talk with King Hiram about building the temple.
- **there is no one among us who knows how to cut timber like the Sidonians** - “your workers know how to cut timber better than my men”
- **Sidonians** - “people of Sidon”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 05 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 5:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> When Hiram heard the message from Solomon, he was very happy and said, “I praise Yahweh today for giving David a very wise son to rule that great nation!”

<sup>8</sup> He sent this message back to Solomon, “I have heard the message that you sent to me, and I am ready to do what you ask. I will provide cedar and cypress logs.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> When Hiram heard the words of Solomon, he rejoiced greatly and said, “May Yahweh be blessed today, who has given to David a wise son over this great people.” <sup>8</sup> Hiram sent word to Solomon, saying, “I have heard the message that you have sent to me. I will provide all the wood of cedar and cypress that you desire.

### translationWords:

- [word](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [cypress](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King Hiram answers Solomon.
- **the words of Solomon** - “what Solomon said”
- **May Yahweh be blessed today** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “I praise Yahweh today” (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **cypress** - Cypress is another kind of valuable wood that would be used for building the temple.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 05 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 5:9

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> My workers will bring the logs down from the Lebanon mountains to the Mediterranean Sea. Then they will tie them together to make rafts to float them in the water along the coast to the place that you indicate. Then my workers will untie the logs, and your workers will take them from there. What I want you to do is to supply food for my men.”

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> My servants will bring the trees down from Lebanon to the sea, and I will make them into rafts to go by sea to the place that you direct me. I will have them broken up there, and you will take them away. You will do what I desire by giving food for my household.”

### translationWords:

- [household](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - King Hiram continues to answer Solomon.
- **make them into rafts** - “tie them together so they will float in groups”
- **them broken up there** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “my workers untie the logs from each other” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **You will do what I desire** - “You can do what I want” or “You can pay me”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 05 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 5:10-12

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> So Hiram arranged for his workers to supply all the cedar and cypress logs that Solomon wanted. <sup>11</sup> Each year Solomon gave Hiram 3,520 cubic meters of wheat and 416,350 liters of pure olive oil to feed his workers. <sup>12</sup> Yahweh enabled Solomon to be wise, just like he had promised. Solomon and Hiram made a treaty.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> So Hiram gave Solomon all the timber of cedar and fir that he desired. <sup>11</sup> Solomon gave Hiram twenty thousand measures of wheat for food to his household and twenty measures of pure oil. Solomon gave this to Hiram year by year. <sup>12</sup> Yahweh gave Solomon wisdom, as he promised him. There was peace between Hiram and Solomon, and the two of them made a covenant.

### translationWords:

- pure, purify, purification
- oil
- biblical time: year
- peace, peaceful
- covenant

### translationNotes:

- **fir** - The word “fir” refers to many kinds of trees, including cypress trees.
- **measures of wheat** - This was a dry measurement whereas the oil was a liquid measurement. It was not clear which measure was intended. The UDB takes an educated guess. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))
- **year by year** - “every year”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 05 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 5:13-14

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> King Solomon forced thirty thousand men from all over Israel to become his workers. <sup>14</sup> Adoniram was their boss. Solomon divided the men into three groups. Each month ten thousand of them went to Lebanon and worked for a month there, and then they came back home for two months.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> King Solomon conscripted labor out of all Israel. The forced laborers numbered thirty thousand men. <sup>14</sup> He sent them to Lebanon, ten thousand a month in shifts. One month they were in Lebanon and two months at home. Adoniram was over the men who were subjected to forced labor.

### translationWords:

- [labor, laborer](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Solomon forces men to build the Temple.
- **conscripted labor out of all Israel** - “forced men from all over Israel to work”
- **in shifts** - That is, there were three groups that took turns spending one month in Lebanon and two months at home.
- **One month they were in Lebanon and two months at home** - Each of the three groups spent one month working in Lebanon and then two months at home in Israel.
- **the men who were subjected to forced labor** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “the men whom Solomon was forcing to work for him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 05 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 5:15-16****UDB:**

<sup>15</sup> Solomon also forced eighty thousand men to cut stones in the hill country and seventy thousand men to haul the stones to Jerusalem. <sup>16</sup> He also assigned 3,300 men to supervise their work.

**ULB:**

<sup>15</sup> Solomon had seventy thousand who carried burdens and eighty thousand who were stonecutters in the mountains, <sup>16</sup> besides Solomon's 3,300 chief officers who were over the work and who supervised the workers.

**translationWords:**

- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - Solomon continues to force men to build the Temple.
- **burdens** - "heavy things"
- **stonecutters** - "men who dug stones out of the ground and cut them"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 05 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 5:17-18

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> The king also commanded his workers to cut huge blocks of stones from the quarries and to smooth the sides of the stones. These huge stones were for the foundation of the temple. <sup>18</sup> Solomon's workers and Hiram's workers and men from the city of Gebal shaped the stones and prepared the timber to build the temple.

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> At the king's command they quarried large stones of high quality with which to lay the foundation of the temple. <sup>18</sup> So Solomon's builders and Hiram's builders and the Gebalites did the cutting and prepared the timber and the stones to build the temple.

### translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Solomon continues to force men to build the temple.
- **quarried large stones of high quality** - "dug large, good stones out of the mountain and cut them to be the right shape"
- **Gebalites** - men from the city of Gebal (UDB) (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 05 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The building of the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Building the temple

Solomon built the temple in seven years. The outside walls were made of rock. Solomon shaped the rocks for the wall in the quarry and then assembled them at the temple sight. The inside was covered with wood. Inside the temple was a room covered by gold, which was the Most Holy Place where the ark was housed under statues of angels. It represented the presence of God.

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 06:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Kings 6:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> 480 years after the Israelite people left Egypt, during the fourth year that Solomon ruled Israel, in the second month, that of Ziv, Solomon's workers began to build the temple.

<sup>2</sup> Inside, the main part of the temple was twenty-seven meters long, nine meters wide, and thirteen and one-half meters high.

### ULB:

6 <sup>1</sup> So Solomon began to build the temple of Yahweh. This happened in the 480th year after the people of Israel came out of the land of Egypt, in the fourth year of Solomon's reign over Israel, in the month of Ziv, which is the second month. <sup>2</sup> The temple that King Solomon built for Yahweh was sixty cubits long, twenty cubits wide, and thirty cubits high.

### translationWords:

- Solomon
- temple
- Yahweh
- biblical time: year
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Egypt, Egyptian
- reign
- king

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The narrator lists the dimensions of the temple.
- **Solomon began to build** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **480th ... fourth** - These are the ordinal forms of 480 and 4. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **in the month of Ziv, which is the second month** - "Ziv" is the name of the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))
- **sixty cubits long, twenty cubits wide, and thirty cubits high** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "27.6 meters long, 9.2 meters wide, and 13.8 meters high" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> The front portico was four and one-half meters deep and nine meters wide, just as wide as the main part of the temple. <sup>4</sup> There were openings like windows in the temple walls. The openings were narrower on the outside than on the inside.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> The portico in front of the temple's main hall was twenty cubits in length, equal to the width of the temple, and ten cubits deep in front of the temple. <sup>4</sup> For the house he made windows with frames that made them more narrow at the outside than on the inside.

### translationWords:

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The narrator continues to list the dimensions of the temple.
- **portico** - an area of a building made of columns and a roof that leads to and connects with the building's entrance door. This portico was probably attached to the front part of the wall that surrounded the temple.
- **twenty cubits ... ten cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "9.2 meters ... 4.6 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 6:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Against the two sides and the back of the temple walls, they built a structure that had rooms in it. This structure had three levels; each level was two and one-third meters high. <sup>6</sup> Each room in the lowest level was two and one-third meters wide. Each room in the middle level was two and four-fifth meters wide. The rooms in the top level were three and one-tenth meters wide. The wall of the temple at the top level was thinner than the wall at the middle level, and the wall of the middle level was thinner than the wall at the bottom level. In this way, the rooms could rest on the wall underneath them; the rooms did not need wooden beams underneath to support them.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Against the walls of the main chamber he built rooms around it, around both the outer room and the inner room. He built rooms all around the sides. <sup>6</sup> The lowest story was five cubits wide, the middle was six cubits wide, and the third was seven cubits wide. For on the outside he made offsets in the wall of the house all around so that the beams would not be inserted in the walls of the house.

### translationWords:

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The narrator continues to list the dimensions of the temple.
- **he built rooms around it** - He built rooms on the outside of the outside wall around the main chamber.
- **The lowest story ... the middle ... the third** - This refers to the rooms in each story of the building.
- **five cubits ... six cubits ... seven cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “about 2.3 meters ... about 2.8 meters ... about 3.2 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **he made offsets in the wall of the house** - They made ledges all around the main building to support the beams of the small rooms.
- **beams** - A beam is a long heavy piece of wood used to support a building.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> The huge stones for the foundation of the temple were cut and shaped at the quarry to become very smooth. The result was that while the workers were building the temple there was no noise, because they did not use hammers or chisels or any other iron tools there.

<sup>8</sup> The entrance to the bottom level of this attached structure was on the south side of the temple. There were stairs from the bottom level to the middle and top levels.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> The house was built of stones prepared at the quarry. No hammer, ax, or any iron tool was heard in the house while it was being built. <sup>8</sup> On the south side of the temple there was an entrance at the ground level, then one went up by stairs to the middle level, and from the middle to the third level.

### translationWords:

- [ax](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the house** - Here “house” refers to God’s house, the temple.
- **stones prepared at the quarry** - A quarry is where people cut large stones from a mountain and shape them with tools so they are smooth. After they prepared the stones at the quarry, they brought them to the temple.
- **ground level ... middle level ... third level** - There were a total of three floors. Some languages call these “ground floor,” “first floor,” and “second floor.”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6:9-10

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> So Solomon's workers finished building the framework of the temple. They made the ceiling from cedar beams and boards. <sup>10</sup> They built the rooms alongside the main chambers with three levels, each two and one-third meters high, and joined them to the temple with cedar beams.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> So Solomon built the temple and finished it; he covered the house with beams and planks of cedar. <sup>10</sup> He built the side rooms against the inner chambers of the temple, each side five cubits high; they were joined to the house with timbers of cedar.

### translationWords:

- cedar

### translationNotes:

- **Solomon built the temple and finished it** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **beams ... of cedar** - A beam is a long heavy piece of wood used to support a building. Translate as in [6:6](#).
- **planks ... of cedar** - A plank is a flat wooden board used for floors and walls.
- **He built the side rooms** - These are the same rooms that are referred to in [6:5](#).
- **inner chambers** - This phrase is a metonym for the walls that enclosed the chambers. AT: "exterior walls that enclosed the inner chambers" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **five cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "2.3 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **timbers of cedar** - The word "timbers" is a general term that refers to wood used for building, such as beams and planks.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6:11-13

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> Then Yahweh said this to Solomon, <sup>12</sup> "I want to tell you about this temple that you are building. If you continually obey all my statutes and decrees and commands, I will do for you what I promised to your father David. <sup>13</sup> I will live among the Israelite people, in this temple, and I will never abandon them."

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> The word of Yahweh came to Solomon, saying, <sup>12</sup> "Concerning this temple which you are building, if you walk in my statutes and do justice, keep all my commandments and walk in them, then I will confirm my promise with you that I had made to David your father. <sup>13</sup> I will live among the people of Israel and will not forsake them."

### translationWords:

- word
- Yahweh
- walk
- statute, statutes
- just, justice, justly
- command, to command, commandment
- confirm, confirmation
- promise
- David
- ancestor, father, forefather
- life, live, living, alive
- forsake, forsaken, forsook

### translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came** - This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: **Idiom**)
- **walk in my statutes** - The word "walk" is a metaphor for "live" or "obey." AT: "continually obey all my statutes" (UDB) (See: **Metaphor**)
- **do justice** - Possible meanings are 1) "carry out all of my laws" or 2) "treat the people whom you are ruling justly."
- **keep all my commandments and walk in them** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the importance of obeying God's commandments. AT "carefully obey all I tell you to do" (See **Parallelism**)

- **I will confirm my promise with you that I had made to David your father** - “I will do everything I promised David your father that I would do for you”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6:14-15

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> Solomon's workers worked to finish building the temple. <sup>15</sup> On the inside, they lined the rooms from the floor to the ceiling. They made the floor from cypress boards.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> So Solomon built the house and finished it. <sup>15</sup> Then he built the interior walls of the house with boards of cedar. From the floor of the house to the ceiling, he covered them on the inside with wood, and he covered the floor of the house with cypress boards.

### translationWords:

- cedar
- cypress

### translationNotes:

- **Solomon ... he built ... he covered ... he covered** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do these things. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **interior** - "inside"
- **cypress** - Cypress is a kind of wood that was used for building the temple. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6:16-18

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> Inside the back part of the temple they built an inner room, called the very holy place. It was nine meters long. All the walls of this room were lined with cedar boards. <sup>17</sup> In front of the very holy place was a room that was eighteen meters long. <sup>18</sup> The cedar boards on the walls inside the temple were decorated with carvings of gourds and flowers. The walls were completely covered with cedar boards, with the result that the stones of the walls behind them could not be seen.

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> He built twenty cubits onto the rear of the house with boards of cedar from the floor to the ceiling. He built this room to be the inner room, the most holy place. <sup>17</sup> The main hall, that is, the holy place that was in front of the most holy place, was forty cubits long. <sup>18</sup> There was cedar inside the house, carved in the shape of gourds and open flowers. All was cedar inside. No stonework was visible on the inside.

### translationWords:

- [holy place, most holy place](#)

### translationNotes:

- **He built twenty cubits** - “He built a room twenty cubits long”
- **twenty cubits ... forty cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “9.2 meters ... 18.4 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **main hall** - “main room”
- **gourds** - a type of hard, round vegetable that grows on a vine on the ground
- **open flowers** - “blooming flowers” or “flowers that were open”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6:19-20

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> At the back of the temple they made the very holy place, in order to put the sacred chest there. <sup>20</sup> That room was nine meters long, nine meters wide, and nine meters high. They covered the walls with very thin sheets of pure gold. For burning incense they also made an altar of cedar boards.

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> Solomon prepared the inner room inside the house in order to place the ark of the covenant of Yahweh there. <sup>20</sup> The inner room was twenty cubits in length, twenty cubits in width, and twenty cubits in height. Solomon overlaid the walls with pure gold and covered the altar with cedar wood.

### translationWords:

- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)
- [altar](#)

### translationNotes:

- **twenty cubits** - "9.2 meters"
- **covered the altar with cedar wood** - This altar would be used for burning incense.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 6:21-22

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> Solomon told them to cover the other walls inside the temple with very thin sheets of pure gold and to fasten gold chains across the entrance to the very holy place. <sup>22</sup> They covered all the walls of the temple and the altar that was outside the very holy place with very thin sheets of gold.

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> Solomon overlaid the inside of the temple with pure gold, and he placed chains of gold across the front of the inner room, and overlaid the front with gold. <sup>22</sup> He overlaid the entire interior with gold until all the temple was finished. He also overlaid with gold the whole altar that belonged to the inner room.

### translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)
- [temple](#)
- [altar](#)

### translationNotes:

- **overlaid** - “covered” (UDB)
- **altar that belonged to the inner room** - “altar of incense at the entrance to the inner room”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6:23-26

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> Inside the very holy place they made from olive tree wood large statues of two creatures with wings. Each one was four and one-half meters tall. **24-26** They each were the same size and had the same shape. They each had two wings which were spread out. Each wing was two and one-third meters long, with the result that the distance between the outer ends of the two wings was four and one-half meters across. The height of each cherub was four and one-half meters.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> Solomon made two cherubim of olivewood, each ten cubits high, for the inner room. <sup>24</sup> One wing of the first cherub was five cubits long and its other wing was also five cubits long. So from the tip of one wing to the tip of the other there was a distance of ten cubits. <sup>25</sup> The other cherub also had a wingspan ten cubits. Both the cherubim were of the same dimensions and shape. <sup>26</sup> The height of one cherub was ten cubits and the other cherub was the same.

### translationWords:

- [cherubim, cherub](#)

### translationNotes:

- **olivewood** - “wood from an olive tree”
- **ten cubits ... five cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “4.6 meters ... 2.3 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **wingspan** - the distance from the tip of one wing to the tip of the other wing
- **dimensions** - “size”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 6:27-28****UDB:**

<sup>27</sup> They put these statues next to each other in the very holy place so that the wing of the one touched the one wing of the other in the center of the room, and the outer wings touched the walls.

<sup>28</sup> They covered the statues with very thin sheets of gold.

**ULB:**

<sup>27</sup> Solomon placed the cherubim in the innermost room. The wings of the cherubim were stretched out so that the wing of one touched one wall and the wing of the other cherub touched the other wall. Their wings touched one another in the middle of the most holy place. <sup>28</sup> Solomon overlaid the cherubim with gold.

**translationWords:**

- [Solomon](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [holy place, most holy place](#)
- [gold](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Solomon placed ... Solomon overlaid** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **innermost room** - another name for the most holy place
- **overlaid** - “covered” (UDB)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6:29-30

### UDB:

<sup>29</sup> Solomon told them to decorate the walls of the main room and the very holy place by carving representations of winged creatures and palm trees and flowers. <sup>30</sup> They also covered the floor of both rooms with very thin sheets of gold.

### ULB:

<sup>29</sup> He carved all the walls of the house around about with figures of cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers, in the outer and inner rooms. <sup>30</sup> Solomon overlaid the floor of the house with gold, in both the outer and inner rooms.

### translationWords:

- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [palm](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [gold](#)

### translationNotes:

- **He ... Solomon** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **figures** - shapes
- **overlaid** - covered

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6:31-32

### UDB:

<sup>31</sup> They made a set of doors from olive tree wood, and placed them at the entrance to the very holy place. The lintel and doorposts had five indented sections. <sup>32</sup> The doors were decorated by carving on them representations of winged creatures, palm trees, and flowers. All of these things were covered with very thin sheets of gold.

### ULB:

<sup>31</sup> Solomon made doors of olivewood for the entrance to the inner room. The lintel and doorposts had five indented sections. <sup>32</sup> So he made two doors of olivewood, and he made on them carvings of cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers. He overlaid them with gold and he spread the gold on the cherubim and palm trees.

### translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [doorpost](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [palm](#)
- [gold](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Solomon made ... he made ... he made ... He overlaid ... he spread** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do these things. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **lintel** - beam across the top of a door frame
- **indented sections** - toothlike notches on each of five sections
- **overlaid** - “covered” (UDB)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6:33-35

### UDB:

<sup>33</sup> They made a rectangular doorframe from olive tree wood, with four indented sections, and put it between the entrance room and the main room. <sup>34</sup> They made two folding doors from cypress wood and fastened them to the doorframe. <sup>35</sup> The doors were also decorated with wood carvings of winged creatures, palm trees, and flowers, and they were also covered evenly with very thin sheets of gold.

### ULB:

<sup>33</sup> In this way, Solomon also made for the temple entrance doorposts of olive wood having four indented sections <sup>34</sup> and two doors of cypress wood. The two leaves of the one door were folding and the two leaves of the other door were folding. <sup>35</sup> He carved on them cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers, and he evenly overlaid gold on the carved work.

### translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [doorpost](#)
- [olive](#)
- [cypress](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [palm](#)

### translationNotes:

- **In this way, Solomon also made for the temple entrance doorposts of olive wood having four indented sections and two doors of cypress wood** - “Solomon also made doorposts of olive wood for the temple entrance, with four indented sections and two doors of cypress wood, in the same way”
- **indented sections** - tooth-like notches
- **The two leaves of the one door** - This means each door had two sections connected by hinges so they could fold together.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6:36

### UDB:

<sup>36</sup> They built a courtyard in front of the temple. The walls around the courtyard were made of cedar and stone. To make the walls, between each layer of cedar beams they put down two layers of stone.

### ULB:

<sup>36</sup> He built the inner court with three rows of cut stone and a row of cedar beams.

### translationWords:

- cedar

### translationNotes:

- **He built the inner court** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **cedar beams** - A beam is a long heavy piece of wood used to support a building. Translate as in [6:6](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 6:37-38

### UDB:

<sup>37</sup> They laid the foundation of the temple of Yahweh in the month of Ziv, in the fourth year that Solomon ruled. <sup>38</sup> In the eleventh year that he ruled, in the month of Bul, they finished building the temple and all of its parts, doing exactly what Solomon's told them to do. It required seven years to build it.

### ULB:

<sup>37</sup> The foundation of the house of Yahweh was laid in the fourth year, in the month of Ziv. <sup>38</sup> In the eleventh year, in the month of Bul, which is the eighth month, the house was finished in all its parts and conforming to all its specifications. Solomon took seven years to build the temple.

### translationWords:

- foundation, founded
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- biblical time: year
- temple

### translationNotes:

- **the fourth year ... the eleventh year** - The words "fourth" and "eleventh" are the ordinal forms of "four" and "eleven." You may need to make explicit the event from which the writer counts the years. AT: "the fourth year after Solomon became king ... the eleventh year after Solomon became king" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **house of Yahweh** - "the temple" (UDB)
- **in the month of Ziv** - "Ziv" is the name of the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. Translate as in [6:1](#). (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))
- **in the month of Bul, which is the eighth month** - "Bul" is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the house was finished in all its parts and conforming to all its specifications** - This can be translated in active form. AT: "they finished building every part of the house. They built it exactly the way Solomon had told them to build it"
- **Solomon took** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Metonymy](#))



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 06 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter has a description of the palace Solomon built and the materials used in the temple courtyard. It is the last chapter about the building of the temple. (See: [temple](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Bronze

Solomon hired a man from Tyre who was good at casting things out of bronze. The bronze objects were made by hollowing out the shape of the object in clay and then pouring in the hot melted liquid bronze and letting it cool. He made two large pillars and a large water reservoir set on the backs of 12 bronze cows. He made all the instruments for use in the sacrifices outside the temple. He made the furnishing inside the temple out of gold.

#### The temple and the palace

Solomon spent 13 years building a palace for himself that was much bigger than the temple. It is significant that the house of Solomon was much larger than the house of God. (See: [house of God, Yahweh's house](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 07:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Kings 7:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> They also built a palace for Solomon, but it required thirteen years to build it. <sup>2</sup> One of the buildings they built was a large ceremonial hall. It was called the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon. It was forty-six meters long, twenty-three meters wide, and fourteen meters high. It was supported by four rows of cedar pillars. There were cedar beams across each row.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> <sup>1</sup> Solomon took thirteen years to build his own palace. <sup>2</sup> He built the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon. Its length was one hundred cubits, its width was fifty cubits, and its height was thirty cubits. The palace was built with four rows of cedar pillars with cedar beams on the pillars.

### translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [biblical time: year](#)
- [Lebanon](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [pillar, column](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The author is writing about Solomon's palace.
- **Solomon took thirteen years to build his own palace** - Because Solomon was the king, others did the work for him. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **his own palace** - If your language does not have a word for "palace," you may translate this as "house" or "big house."
- **the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon** - "the house called the House of the Lebanon Forest"
- **one hundred cubits ... fifty cubits ... thirty cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "46 meters ... 23 meters ... 13.8 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **beams** - A beam is a long piece of strong wood used to support walls and roofs.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:3-5

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> The carpenters build a roof from cedar planks that were attached to beams. The carpenters made pillars to support the cedar beams. There were a total of forty-five pillars put in place, making fifteen pillars in each row to support the roof. <sup>4</sup> On each of the two side walls there were three sets of windows facing each other. <sup>5</sup> All the windows and doorways had rectangular frames. The windows along the long wall on one side faced the windows on the other side.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> The house was roofed with cedar that rested on beams. Those beams were supported by pillars. There were forty-five beams, fifteen in a row. <sup>4</sup> There were beams in three rows, and each window was opposite another window in three sets. <sup>5</sup> All the doors and posts were made square with beams, and window was opposite window in three sets.

### translationWords:

- [pillar, column](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Some details are given about the structure of the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon.
- **The house was roofed with cedar that rested on beams** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "The carpenters built a roof from cedar planks and attached them to beams" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **beams** - long pieces of strong wood usually used to support a roof
- **were made square** - "had rectangular frames" (UDB)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:6

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> They also built a long room with pillars; it was twenty-three meters long and fourteen meters wide. In front of it was a covered porch whose roof was supported by pillars.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> There was a colonnade fifty cubits long and thirty cubits wide, with a portico in front and pillars and a roof.

### translationWords:

- [pillar, column](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The author writes about the structure of the Hall of Pillars.
- **colonnade** - a series of columns, all the same distance apart
- **fifty cubits ... thirty cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “23 meters ... 13.8 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **portico** - an area of a building made of columns and a roof that leads to and connects with the building’s entrance door. See how you translated this in [6:3](#)

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:7

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> Then they made a building called the Hall of the Throne. It was also called the Hall of Justice. That was where Solomon decided about people's disputes. The entire floor was covered with cedar wood.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> Solomon built the hall of the throne where he was to judge, the hall of justice. It was covered with cedar from floor to floor.[1]Some versions have, *It was covered with cedar from the floor to the rafters.*

### translationWords:

- [throne](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The author writes about the hall of the throne.
- **Solomon built the hall of the throne** - Possible meanings are 1) "Solomon built the house in which he was going to place his throne" or 2) "Solomon had his workers build a house named The King's Chair House."
- **It was covered with cedar** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "The workers covered the floor with cedar wood" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **from floor to floor** - This refers to the entire floor. AT: "from one wall to the other"

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:8

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> In the courtyard behind the Hall of Judgment they built a house for Solomon to live in that was made like the other buildings. They also built the same kind of house for his wife, who was the daughter of the king of Egypt.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> Solomon's house in which he was to live, in another courtyard within the palace grounds, was similarly designed. He also built a house like this for Pharaoh's daughter, whom he had taken as a wife.

### translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The author continues to write about the palace area.
- **Solomon's house in which he was to live, in another courtyard within the palace grounds, was similarly designed** - This can be translated in active form. AT: "Solomon had someone design the house in which he was to live, in another courtyard within the palace grounds, in the same way" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:9-10

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> All of these buildings and the walls around the palace courtyard were made from stones, from the foundations up to the eaves. The stones had been expensive for the workers to cut at the quarry, according to the sizes that were needed, and the sides of the stones were shaped and smoothed by cutting them with saws. <sup>10</sup> The foundations were also made from huge blocks of expensive stones that had been prepared at the quarry. Some of them were about three and three-quarter meters long and others were about four and four-fifth meters long.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> These buildings were adorned with costly hewn stones, precisely measured and cut with a saw and smoothed on all sides. These stones were used from the foundation to the stones on top, and also on the outside to the great court. <sup>10</sup> The foundation was constructed with very large, costly stones of eight and ten cubits in length.

### translationWords:

- foundation, founded

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The writer is writing about the stones used for the buildings.
- **These buildings were adorned with costly hewn stones** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The workers adorned the buildings with costly, hewn stones” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **hewn stones, precisely measured and cut with a saw and smoothed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “hewn stones, that workers had precisely measured and cut with a saw and smoothed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **These stones were used** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The workers used these stones” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **from the foundation to the stones on top, and also on the outside to the great court** - The author is emphasizing that the workers used expensive stones for the foundations and all the buildings.
- **The foundation was constructed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The workers constructed the foundation” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **eight and ten cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “about 3.7 meters and 4.6 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> On top of the foundation stones were other expensive stones that had been cut according to the sizes they needed, as well as cedar beams. <sup>12</sup> The palace courtyard, the inner courtyard in front of the temple, and the portico in front of the temple had walls made by putting down three layers of cut stones between each layer of cedar beams.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> Above were costly hewn stones precisely cut to size, and cedar beams. <sup>12</sup> The great courtyard surrounding the palace had three rows of cut stone and a row of cedar beams like the inner court of the temple of Yahweh and the temple portico.

### translationWords:

- cedar
- courtyard, court
- palace
- temple
- Yahweh

### translationNotes:

- **cedar beams** - A beam is a long piece of wood used for structural support.
- **three rows of cut stone and a row of cedar beams** - Translate as in [6:36](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 7:13-14****UDB:**

**13-14** There was a man who lived in the city of Tyre whose name was Hiram. He was a craftsman. His father had also lived in Tyre and had also been very skilled at making things from bronze, but Hiram's father was no longer living. His mother was from the tribe of Naphtali. Hiram was very wise and intelligent and was very skilled at making things from bronze. Solomon invited him to come to Jerusalem and supervise all the work of making things from bronze, and Hiram agreed.

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> King Solomon sent for Hiram and brought him from Tyre. <sup>14</sup> Hiram was the son of a widow of the tribe of Naphtali; his father was a man of Tyre, a craftsman in bronze. Hiram was filled with wisdom and understanding and skill to do great work with bronze. He came to King Solomon to work with bronze for the king.

**translationWords:**

- king
- Tyre, Tyrians
- tribe
- Naphtali
- bronze
- wise, wisdom

**translationNotes:**

- **brought him from Tyre** - Hiram accepted Solomon's invitation to come to Jerusalem. (See: *Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information*)
- **the son of a widow ... his father was a man of Tyre** - A widow is a woman whose husband has died, so we know that the father is dead. (See: *Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information*)
- **Hiram was filled with wisdom and understanding and skill** - This can be stated in active form. The words "wisdom and understanding" mean basically the same thing and are used together for emphasis. Yahweh giving such things as wisdom is spoken of as if they were liquids that Yahweh had poured into a container, and Hiram is spoken of as if he were that container. AT: "Yahweh had given Hiram wisdom, understanding, and skill" (See: *Active or Passive* and *Doublet* and *Metaphor*)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:15-17

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> He made two bronze pillars. Each one was eight and one-third meters tall and eight and one-half around. <sup>16</sup> He also made two gleaming bronze tops to be put on top of the pillars. Each top was two and one-third meters tall. <sup>17</sup> Then he made bronze networks of chains like wreaths to decorate the top of each pillar. There were seven of these networks at the top of each pillar.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> Hiram fashioned the two pillars of bronze, each eighteen cubits high and twelve cubits in circumference. <sup>16</sup> He made two capitals of polished bronze to set on the tops of the pillars. The height of each capital was five cubits. <sup>17</sup> Checker latticework and wreaths of chain work for the capitals decorated the top of the pillars, seven for each capital.

### translationWords:

- [pillar, column](#)
- [bronze](#)

### translationNotes:

- **eighteen cubits ... twelve cubits ... five cubits** - A cubit is about 46 centimeters. AT: “about 8.3 meters ... 5.5 meters ... 2.3 cubits” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **in circumference** - Circumference is the distance or measurement around a circular object or area.
- **two capitals** - decorations on top of each of the two pillars
- **polished bronze** - They polished the bronze so that it would reflect sunlight. “gleaming bronze” (UDB)
- **Checker latticework and wreaths of chain work** - “Crossed metal strips woven together and metal chains twisted together”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:18-19

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> Hiram also made bronze figures that resembled pomegranates. He put two rows of pomegranates over the top of each pillar. <sup>19</sup> The top over each pillar was shaped like a lily. Each lily leaf was one and four-fifth meters tall.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> So Hiram made two rows of pomegranates around the top of each pillar to decorate their capitals. <sup>19</sup> The capitals on the tops of the portico pillars were decorated with lilies, four cubits high.

### translationWords:

- [pillar, column](#)

### translationNotes:

- **two rows of pomegranates** - A pomegranate is a fruit with a hard, red rind and many juicy seeds inside. Hiram did not use real pomegranates to decorate the pillars. He made them out of bronze.
- **The capitals ... were decorated with lilies, four cubits high** - Lilies are plants whose flowers are wide at one end and very narrow at the other end. These words can be stated in active form. AT: "Hiram decorated the capitals ... with bronze lilies, four cubits high" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the tops of the portico** - Translate "portico" as in [7:6](#).
- **four cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "about 1.8 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:20-22

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> These tops were placed on a bowl shaped section around which were two rows of two hundred figures of pomegranates around the top of each pillar. <sup>21</sup> His helpers set up the pillars in front of the entrance of the temple. The pillar on the south side was named Jakin, and the pillar on the north side was named Boaz. <sup>22</sup> The bronze tops that were shaped like lilies were placed on top of the pillars.

So Hiram and his helpers completed the work of making the bronze pillars.

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> The capitals on these two pillars also included, close to their very top, two hundred pomegranates in rows all around. <sup>21</sup> He raised up the pillars at the temple portico. The pillar on the right was named Jakin, and the pillar on the left was named Boaz. <sup>22</sup> On the top of the pillars were decorations like lilies. The fashioning of the pillars was done in this way.

### translationWords:

- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [temple](#)

### translationNotes:

- **two hundred pomegranates** - “200 pomegranates.” A pomegranate is a fruit with a hard, red rind and many juicy seeds inside. Translate as in [7:18](#) (See: [Numbers](#))
- **He raised up the pillars** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Hiram do this. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **The pillar on the right was named Jakin** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The name of the pillar on the right side was Jakin” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **the pillar on the left was named Boaz** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The name of the pillar on the left side was Boaz” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **The fashioning of the pillars was done** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Hiram fashioned the pillars” or “Hiram’s men fashioned the pillars” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:23-24

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> Hiram also made a very large round bronze tank that was made of metal and cast in a clay mold. It was two and one-third meters tall, four and three-fifth meters across, and thirteen and three-quarter meters around. <sup>24</sup> Around the outer edge of the rim of the tank were two rows of figures that resembled gourds that were made of bronze. But the gourds were not cast separately. They were cast in the same mold as the rest of the tank. For each meter of length around the rim of the tank there were about eighteen gourds.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> Hiram made the round sea of cast metal, ten cubits from brim to brim. Its height was five cubits, and the sea was thirty cubits in circumference. <sup>24</sup> Under the brim encircling the sea were gourds, ten in each cubit, cast in one piece with the sea when the sea itself was cast.

### translationWords:

### translationNotes:

- **the round sea** - This refers to a bronze tank or basin that would hold water.
- **cast metal** - Hiram melted the bronze and formed it in a mold.
- **ten cubits ... five cubits ... thirty cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “4.6 meters ... 2.3 meters ... 13.8 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **from brim to brim** - “from one edge to the other”
- **in circumference** - Circumference is the distance or measurement around a circular object or area.
- **encircling the sea were gourds** - A gourd is a type of hard, round vegetable that grows on a vine on the ground.
- **when the sea itself was cast** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “when Hiram cast the sea itself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 7:25-26

### UDB:

<sup>25</sup> Hiram also cast twelve bronze statues of oxen. He placed them to face outward. He placed three of them to face north, three to face west, three to face south, and three to face east. His helpers put the bronze tank on the backs of the statues of the oxen. <sup>26</sup> The sides of the tank were eight centimeters thick. The rim was like the rim of a cup. It curved outward, like the petals of a lily. When the tank was full, it held about forty-four cubic meters of water.

### ULB:

<sup>25</sup> The sea stood on twelve oxen, three looking toward the north, three looking toward the west, three looking toward the south, and three looking toward the east. The sea was set on top of them, and all their hindquarters were toward the inside. <sup>26</sup> The sea was as thick as the width of a hand, and its brim was forged like the brim of a cup, like a lily blossom. The sea held two thousand baths of water.

### translationWords:

- [ox, oxen](#)

### translationNotes:

- **The sea** - This refers to a bronze tank or basin that would hold water.
- **stood on** - “was on top of”
- **The sea was set on top of them** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Hiram’s workers set the sea on top of the bronze oxen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **hindquarters** - This is the back quarter of the body of an animal with four feet.
- **its brim was forged like the brim of a cup, like a lily blossom** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Hiram forged the brim to look like the brim of a cup, to curve outward like a lily” (See: [Simile](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **two thousand baths** - A bath is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. AT: “2,000 baths” or “44,000 liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:27-29

### UDB:

<sup>27</sup> Hiram also made ten bronze carts. Each was one and four-fifth meters long, one and four-fifth meters wide, and one and one-third meters tall. <sup>28</sup> On the sides of the carts there were panels set in frames. <sup>29</sup> On those panels were bronze figures of lions, oxen, and winged creatures. Below and above the lions and oxen there were decorations of bronze wreaths.

### ULB:

<sup>27</sup> Hiram made the ten stands of bronze. Each stand was four cubits long and four cubits wide, and the height was three cubits. <sup>28</sup> The work of the stands was like this. They had panels that stood between frames, <sup>29</sup> and on the panels and on the frames were lions, oxen, and cherubim. Above and below the lions and oxen were wreaths of hammered work.

### translationWords:

- bronze
- lion
- cherubim, cherub

### translationNotes:

- **four cubits ... three cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “about 1.8 meters ... about 1.4 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **The work of the stands was like this** - This means the author will describe the stands in the words that follow.
- **on the panels and on the frames were lions, oxen, and cherubim** - There were decorative pieces in the shapes of lions, oxen, and cherubim fastened to the sides of the stands.
- **wreaths of hammered work** - Here the word “wreaths” refers to spiral-shaped pieces of bronze.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:30-31

### UDB:

<sup>30</sup> Each cart had four bronze wheels and two axles made of bronze. At the top corners of each cart were bronze supports to hold up a basin. On these supports were also decorations of bronze wreaths. <sup>31</sup> On top of each cart, under each basin, was a frame that resembled a circular collar. The top of each circular frame was forty-six centimeters above the top of the cart, and the bottom of it was twenty-three centimeters below the top of the cart. There were also engravings within square panels.

### ULB:

<sup>30</sup> Every stand had four bronze wheels and axles, and its four corners had supports beneath for the basin. The supports were cast with wreaths on the side of each one. <sup>31</sup> The opening was round like a pedestal, a cubit and a half wide, and was within a crown that rose up a cubit. On the opening were engravings, and their panels were square, not round.

### translationWords:

### translationNotes:

- **four bronze wheels and axles** - There was one axle for each pair of wheels. AT: “four bronze wheels and two axles” (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **its four corners** - “the four corners of each stand”
- **The supports were cast with wreaths** - Each support was cast as one piece with the wreaths. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Hiram cast the supports with spiral-shaped pieces” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a cubit and a half ... a cubit** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “about 70 centimeters ... about 50 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **a crown that rose up** - Here the word “crown” refers to the circular piece at the top of the stand’s opening that held the basin.
- **their panels were square** - “the panels of the stands were square.” This phrase returns to the description of the panels that began in [7:28-29](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:32-33

### UDB:

<sup>32</sup> The wheels were sixty-nine centimeters high. They were below the panels. The wheels were connected to axles that had been cast in the same mold as the rest of the cart. <sup>33</sup> The wheels of the carts were like the wheels of chariots. The axles, the rims, the spokes, and the hubs were all cast from bronze.

### ULB:

<sup>32</sup> The four wheels were underneath the panels, and the axles of the wheels and their housings were in the stand. The height of a wheel was a cubit and a half. <sup>33</sup> The wheels were forged like chariot wheels. Their housings, rims, spokes, and hubs were all cast metal.

### translationWords:

- [chariot](#)

### translationNotes:

- **their housings** - Here the word “their” refers to the axles. The word “housings” refers to the casings into which the axles were inserted.
- **a cubit and a half** - A cubit was 46 centimeters. AT: “about 70 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **The wheels were forged like chariot wheels** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Hiram made the wheels like small chariot wheels” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Their housings, rims, spokes, and hubs** - Here the word “Their” refers to the wheels.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:34-35

### UDB:

<sup>34</sup> At the top corners of each cart there were handles. These were molded into the cart itself. <sup>35</sup> There was a bronze band of twenty-three centimeters around the top of each cart. There were braces attached to the corners of each cart. The bands and the braces were cast in the same mold as the rest of the cart.

### ULB:

<sup>34</sup> There were four handles at the four corners of each stand, forged into the stand itself. <sup>35</sup> In the top of the stands there was a round band half a cubit deep, and on the top of the stand its supports and panels were attached.

### translationWords:

### translationNotes:

- **There were four handles at the four corners of each stand** - “There was a handle at each of the four corners of each stand”
- **half a cubit deep** - A cubit was 46 centimeters. AT: “twenty-three centimeters wide” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **on the top of the stand its supports and panels were attached** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Hiram attached the supports and panels to the top of each stand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:36-37

### UDB:

<sup>36</sup> The braces and the panels on the sides of the carts were also decorated with figures of winged creatures, lions, and palm trees, whenever there was space for them, and there were bronze wreaths all around them. <sup>37</sup> That is how Hiram made the ten carts. They were all cast in the same mold, so they were all alike. They all were the same size and had the same shape.

### ULB:

<sup>36</sup> On the surfaces of the supports and on the panels Hiram engraved cherubim, lions, and palm trees that covered the space available, and they were surrounded by wreaths. <sup>37</sup> He made the ten stands in this manner. All of them were cast in the same molds, and they had one size, and the same shape.

### translationWords:

- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [lion](#)
- [palm](#)

### translationNotes:

- **they were surrounded** - Here the word “they” refers to the cherubim, lions, and palm trees.
- **they were surrounded by wreaths** - The word “wreaths” refers to spiral-shaped pieces of bronze. This can be stated in active form. AT: “there were wreaths all around them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **All of them were cast in the same molds** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Hiram cast all of the stands in the same mold” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **they had one size, and the same shape** - “all of the stands were the same size and shape”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:38-39

### UDB:

<sup>38</sup> Hiram also made ten bronze basins, one basin for each of the ten stands. Each basin was one and four-fifth meters across and held 880 liters of water. <sup>39</sup> Hiram placed five of the carts on the right side of the temple and five on the left side of the temple. He put the big tank on the corner that was toward the east and in the direction of the south.

### ULB:

<sup>38</sup> Hiram made ten basins of bronze. One basin could hold forty baths of water. Each basin was four cubits across and there was one basin on each of ten stands. <sup>39</sup> He made five stands on the south-facing side of the temple and five on the north-facing side of the temple. He set the sea on the east corner, facing toward the south of the temple.

### translationWords:

- [bronze](#)
- [temple](#)

### translationNotes:

- **forty baths** - A bath is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. AT: “about 88 liters” or “about 90 liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))
- **four cubits** - A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “about 1.8 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **on the east corner, facing toward the south of the temple** - “on the southeast corner of the temple”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:40-41

### UDB:

<sup>40</sup> Hiram also made pots, shovels for carrying ashes, and bowls for carrying the blood of the animals that would be sacrificed. He completed all the work that King Solomon requested him to do for the temple. This is a list of the bronze things he made:

- <sup>41</sup> the two pillars,
- the two tops to be put on top of the pillars,
- the two wreaths of chains to decorate the tops of the pillars,
- 

### ULB:

<sup>40</sup> Hiram made the basins and the shovels and the sprinkling bowls. Then he finished all the work that he did for King Solomon in the temple of Yahweh: <sup>41</sup> the two pillars, and the bowl-like capitals that were on top of the two pillars, and the two sets of decorative latticework to cover the two bowl like capitals that were on top of the pillars.

### translationWords:

- king
- Solomon
- temple
- Yahweh
- pillar, column

### translationNotes:

- **the bowl-like capitals** - The capitals were shaped like bowls. (See: [Simile](#))
- **decorative latticework** - “crossed metal strips woven together”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 7:42-43****UDB:**

<sup>42</sup> the four hundred figures of pomegranates in four rows, with one hundred in each row; two of these rows were placed over the head of each pillar,

- <sup>43</sup> the ten carts,
- the ten basins,
- 

**ULB:**

<sup>42</sup> He made the four hundred pomegranates for the two sets of decorative latticework: two rows of pomegranates for each set of latticework to cover the two bowl-like capitals that were on the pillars, <sup>43</sup> the ten stands, and the ten basins on the stands.

**translationWords:****translationNotes:**

- **four hundred pomegranates** - “400 pomegranates.” A pomegranate is a fruit with a hard, red rind and many juicy seeds inside. Translate as in [7:18](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:44-45

### UDB:

<sup>44</sup> the big tank,

- the twelve statues of oxen on whose backs the tank was placed,
- <sup>45</sup> the pots, shovels for the ashes of the altar, and bowls.

Huram and his workers made all these things for King Solomon and put them outside the temple. They were all made of bronze that the workmen polished for it to gleam brightly.

### ULB:

<sup>44</sup> He made the sea and the twelve oxen under it; <sup>45</sup> also the pots, shovels, basins, and all the other implements. Hiram made them out of polished bronze, for King Solomon, for the temple of Yahweh.

### translationWords:

- ox, oxen
- bronze
- king
- Solomon
- temple
- Yahweh

### translationNotes:

- **He made** - Here the word “He” refers to Hiram and his helpers. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **all the other implements** - “all the other tools”
- **polished bronze** - bronze that was polished so that it would reflect light

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 7:46-47****UDB:**

<sup>46</sup> They made them by pouring melted bronze into the clay molds that Hiram had set up near the Jordan River valley, between the cities of Succoth and Zarethan.

<sup>47</sup> Solomon did not tell his workers to weigh those bronze objects, because there were many items. So no one ever knew what they weighed.

**ULB:**

<sup>46</sup> The king had cast them in the plain of the Jordan, in the clay ground between Succoth and Zarethan. <sup>47</sup> Solomon did not weigh all the utensils because there were too many to weigh, because the weight of the bronze could not be measured.

**translationWords:**

- [king](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [Succoth](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **The king had cast them** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped the king do this. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **plain of the Jordan** - “flat land near the Jordan River”
- **Succoth ... Zarethan** - names of cities (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Solomon did not weigh all the utensils** - Solomon would not have done the work himself anyway. AT: “Solomon did not have Hiram and his workers weigh all the utensils” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the weight of the bronze could not be measured** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “no one could measure the weight of the bronze” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:48-49

### UDB:

<sup>48</sup> Solomon's workers also made all the gold items for the temple of Yahweh:

- the altar,
- the table where the bread of the presence was kept before God,
- <sup>49</sup> the ten lampstands that were put in front of the very holy place, five on the south side and five on the north side,
- the decorations that resembled flowers,
- the lamps,
- the tongs to grasp the hot coals,
- 

### ULB:

<sup>48</sup> Solomon made all the furnishings that were in the temple of Yahweh out of gold: the golden altar and the table on which the bread of the presence was to be placed. <sup>49</sup> The lampstands, five on the right side and five on the left, in front of the inner room, were of pure gold, and the flowers, the lamps, and the tongs were of gold.

### translationWords:

- Solomon
- temple
- Yahweh
- gold
- altar
- bread
- lampstand
- pure, purify, purification

### translationNotes:

- **Solomon made** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **on which the bread of the presence was to be placed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "on which the priests were to place the bread of the presence" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the flowers, the lamps** - The "flowers" and "lamps" were part of the lampstands.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:50

### UDB:

<sup>50</sup> the cups, the gold lamp wick snuffers, the small lamp bowls, the dishes for incense, the pans for carrying the hot coals, and the sockets for the doors at the entrance to the very holy place and for the doors at the entrance to the main room of the temple.

- Those things were all made of gold.

### ULB:

<sup>50</sup> The cups, lamp trimmers, basins, spoons, and incense burners were all made of pure gold. Also the sockets of the doors of the inner room, which was the most holy place, and of the doors of the main hall of the temple, were all made of gold.

### translationWords:

- [incense](#)
- [holy place, most holy place](#)
- [temple](#)

### translationNotes:

- **The cups ... were all made of pure gold** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The workers made the cups ... out of pure gold” (See [Active or Passive](#))
- **Also the sockets ... were all made of gold** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “They also made the sockets ... out of gold” (See [Active or Passive](#))
- **the sockets of the doors** - Here “sockets” may refer to either 1) the sockets in which the door pegs turned, or 2) the hinges on which the doors hung.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 7:51

### UDB:

<sup>51</sup> So Solomon's workers finished all the work for the temple. Then they placed in the temple storerooms all the things that his father David had dedicated to Yahweh—all the silver and gold, and the other valuable items.

### ULB:

<sup>51</sup> In this way, all the work that King Solomon did for the house of Yahweh was finished. So Solomon brought in the things that were set apart by David, his father, and the silver, the gold, and the furnishings, and put them into the storerooms of the house of Yahweh.

### translationWords:

- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [house](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [David](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the work that King Solomon did for the house of Yahweh was finished** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "the workers finished the work that King Solomon had them do for the house of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 07 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The ark is placed in the new temple. This is very significant event in the history of the Israelites. (See: [temple](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Celebration of the temple's completion

When the temple was finished, Solomon told all of the people to come to Jerusalem. They took the ark out of the tent and brought it to the temple. Then Solomon prayed that God would hear and answer prayers made to him when they faced towards the temple.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Idiom

Solomon prayed that God would respond to people's prayers using an idiom: "that your eyes may be open to the request of your servant." (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 08:01 Notes](#)



## 1 Kings 8:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Solomon then summoned to Jerusalem all the elders of Israel, all the leaders of the tribes and the leaders of the clans. He arranged for them to join in bringing to the temple Yahweh's sacred chest from Mount Zion, where it was in the part of the city called the city of David. <sup>2</sup> So all the Israelite leaders came to King Solomon during the Festival of Shelters, in the month of Ethanim.

### ULB:

**8** <sup>1</sup> Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel, all the heads of the tribes, and the leaders of the families of the people of Israel, before himself in Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh from the city of David, that is, Zion. <sup>2</sup> All the men of Israel assembled before King Solomon at the feast, in the month of Ethanim, which is the seventh month.

### translationWords:

- Solomon
- elder
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- head
- tribe
- family
- Jerusalem
- ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- city of David
- Zion, Mount Zion
- king
- feast

### translationNotes:

- **assembled the elders of Israel** - “called together the leaders of Israel”
- **All the men of Israel** - This may refer either 1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in 8:1 or 2) generally to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every male person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **at the feast** - This is a reference to the Feast of Succoth, also known as the Feast of Tabernacles or Feast of Shelters (UDB).
- **in the month of Ethanim, which is the seventh month** - “Ethanim” is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October

on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8:3-5

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> When they had all arrived, the priests lifted up the sacred chest <sup>4</sup> and brought it to the temple. Then the descendants of Levi who assisted the priests helped them to carry to the temple the sacred tent and all the sacred things that had been in the tent. <sup>5</sup> Then King Solomon and many of the Israelite people gathered in front of Yahweh's sacred chest. And they sacrificed a huge amount of sheep and oxen. No one was able to count the sacrifices because there were very many.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> All the elders of Israel came, and the priests took up the ark. <sup>4</sup> They brought up the ark of Yahweh, the tent of meeting, and all the holy furnishings that were in the tent. The priests and the Levites brought these things up. <sup>5</sup> King Solomon and all the assembly of Israel came together before the ark, sacrificing sheep and oxen that could not be counted.

### translationWords:

- [elder](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [ark](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)

### translationNotes:

- **all the assembly of Israel** - This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **sheep and oxen that could not be counted** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "more sheep and oxen than anyone would ever be able to count" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)

- 1 Kings 08 Translation Questions

## 1 Kings 8:6-8

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> Then the priests brought the sacred chest into the very holy place in the temple, and they placed it under the wings of the statues of the winged creatures. <sup>7</sup> The wings of those statues spread out over the sacred chest and over the poles by which it was carried. <sup>8</sup> The poles were very long, with the result that the ends of the poles could be seen by people who were standing at the entrance to the very holy place, but they could not be seen by people standing outside the temple. Those poles are still there.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> The priests brought in the ark of the covenant of Yahweh to its place, into the inner room of the house, to the most holy place, under the wings of the cherubim. <sup>7</sup> For the cherubim spread out their wings to the place of the ark, and they covered the ark and the poles by which it was carried. <sup>8</sup> The poles were so long that their ends were seen from the holy place in front of the inner room, but they could not be seen from outside. They are there to this day.

### translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [holy place, most holy place](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)

### translationNotes:

- **into the inner room of the house, to the most holy place, under** - “into the inner room of the house—that is, to the most holy place—under”
- **poles by which it was carried** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “poles by which the priests carried it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **they could not be seen** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “no one could see them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **this day** - This means the day on which the writer wrote.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8:9-11

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> The only things that were in the sacred chest were the two stone tablets that Moses had put there at Mount Sinai, where Yahweh made a covenant with the people after they left Egypt.

<sup>10</sup> The priests put the sacred chest in the temple. When they came out of the holy place, suddenly it was filled with a cloud. <sup>11</sup> The glory of Yahweh filled the temple, with the result that the priests were not able to continue their work.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> There was nothing in the ark except the two tablets of stone that Moses had put there at Horeb, when Yahweh made a covenant with the people of Israel when they came out of the land of Egypt.

<sup>10</sup> It came about that when the priests came out of the holy place, the cloud filled the temple of Yahweh. <sup>11</sup> The priests could not stand to serve because of the cloud, for the glory of Yahweh filled his house.

### translationWords:

- ark
- Moses
- Horeb
- Yahweh
- covenant
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Egypt, Egyptian
- priest, priesthood
- holy place, most holy place
- temple
- serve, service
- glory, glorious
- house

### translationNotes:

- **It came about that** - This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 08 General Notes
- 1 Kings 08 Translation Questions

## 1 Kings 8:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> Then Solomon prayed this:

”Yahweh, you have placed the sun in the sky,  
but you have decided that you would live in very dark clouds.

<sup>13</sup> I have built for you a splendid temple,  
a place for you to live in forever.”

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> Then Solomon said,

”Yahweh has said that  
he would live in thick darkness,

<sup>13</sup> But I have built you  
a lofty residence,  
a place for you to live in forever.”

### translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [forever](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Yahweh has said ... darkness** - Solomon speaks to Yahweh as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects Yahweh. (See: [Pronouns](#))
- **lofty residence** - beautiful building in which someone very important lives

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 8:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Then, while all the people stood there, the king turned around and faced them, and he asked God to bless them. <sup>15</sup> He said, "Praise Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong! By his own power he has done what he promised to my father David. What he promised was this:

<sup>16</sup> From the time that I brought my people out of Egypt, I have never chosen any city in Israel in which a temple should be built for my people to worship me there. But I chose you, David, to rule my people."

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Then the king turned around and blessed all the assembly of Israel, while all the assembly of Israel was standing. <sup>15</sup> He said, "May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be praised, who spoke to David my father, and has fulfilled it with his own hands, saying, <sup>16</sup> 'Since the day that I brought my people Israel out of Egypt, I chose no city out of all the tribes of Israel in which to build a house, in order for my name to be there. However, I chose David to rule over my people Israel.'

**translationWords:**

- king
- bless, blessed, blessing
- assembly, assemble
- God
- praise
- David
- ancestor, father, forefather
- fulfill
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- people of God, my people
- Egypt, Egyptian
- tribe
- house
- name
- ruler, rulers, rule

**translationNotes:**

- **all the assembly of Israel** - This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be praised** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Praise Yahweh, the God of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#)).

- **with his own hands** - The hand is a metonym for the power in the hand. AT: “by his own power” (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **in order for my name to be** - The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for ... name” refers to worshiping the person. Similar words appear in [3:2](#). AT: “so that people would worship me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 8:17-19****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Then Solomon said, "My father David wanted to build a temple in order that we Israelite people could worship Yahweh our God there. <sup>18</sup> But Yahweh said to him, 'You have wanted to build a temple for me, and what you wanted to do was good. <sup>19</sup> However, you are not the one who I want to build it. It is one of your sons who I want to build a temple for me.'

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> Now it was in the heart of David my father to build a house for the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel. <sup>18</sup> But Yahweh said to David my father, 'In that it was in your heart to build a house for my name, you did well for it to be in your heart. <sup>19</sup> Nevertheless you will not build the house; instead, your son, one who will be born from your loins, will build the house for my name.'

**translationWords:**

- heart
- David
- house
- name
- Yahweh
- God
- son, son of

**translationNotes:**

- **it was in the heart of David my father ... it was in your heart ... for it to be in your heart** - What David desired is spoken of as if it were an item in a container and the heart as if it were a container. AT: "David my father desired ... you desired ... to desire to do that" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **for the name of Yahweh ... for my name** - The word "name" is a metonym for the person, and "for ... name" refers to worshipping the person. Similar words appear in [3:2](#). AT: "in which people would worship Yahweh ... in which people will worship me" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **In that it was in your heart** - "Because you desired"
- **for it to be in your heart** - "by wanting to do that"
- **one who will be born from your loins** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "one who will be your own offspring" or "one whom you yourself will father" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 8:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> And now Yahweh has done what he promised to do. I have become the king of Israel to succeed my father, and I am ruling my people, as Yahweh promised. I have arranged for this temple to be built for us Israelites to worship Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong. <sup>21</sup> I have also provided a place in the temple for the sacred chest in which are the two stone tablets of the covenant that Yahweh made with our ancestors when he brought them out of Egypt.”

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> Yahweh has carried out the word that he had said, for I have arisen in the place of David my father, and I sit on the throne of Israel, as Yahweh promised. I have built the house for the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel. <sup>21</sup> I have made a place for the ark there, in which is Yahweh’s covenant, which he made with our fathers when he brought them out of the land of Egypt.”

**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- word
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- David
- ancestor, father, forefather
- throne
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- promise
- house
- ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh
- covenant
- Egypt, Egyptian

**translationNotes:**

- **has carried out the word that he had said** - This is an idiom. AT: “has done exactly what he said he would do” (See: **Idiom**)
- **I have arisen in the place of David my father** - Height is a metaphor for power. AT: “I have gained the power that David my father had” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **I sit on the throne of Israel** - The throne is a metonym for the activity of the one who sits on the throne. AT: “I rule over Israel” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **for the name of Yahweh** - The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for ... name” refers to worshipping the person. Translate as in **3:2**. AT: “in which people will worship Yahweh” (See: **Metonymy**)

- **is Yahweh's covenant, which** - The stone tablets on which Yahweh had written the terms of the covenant are spoken of as if they were the covenant itself. AT: "are the tablets on which Yahweh wrote the terms of the covenant that" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 8:22-24****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> Then Solomon stood in front of the altar which was in front of the Israelite people who had gathered there. He spread out his arms toward heaven, <sup>23</sup> and he prayed,

”Yahweh, the God whom we Israelite people worship, there is no god like you up in heaven or down here on the earth. You solemnly promised that you would faithfully love us. And that is what you have done for us who earnestly do what you want us to do.

<sup>24</sup> You have done the things that you promised my father David, who served you very well, that you would do. Truly, you promised to do these things for him, and today we see that by your power you have done them.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Solomon stood before the altar of Yahweh, before all the assembly of Israel, and spread out his hands toward the heavens. <sup>23</sup> He said, ”Yahweh, God of Israel, there is no God like you in the heavens above or on the earth below, who keeps his covenant faithfulness with your servants who walk before you with all their heart; <sup>24</sup> you who have kept with your servant David my father, what you promised him. Yes, you spoke with your mouth and have fulfilled it with your hand, as it is today.

**translationWords:**

- Solomon
- altar
- assembly, assemble
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- earth, earthly
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- servant, slave, slavery
- heart
- promise
- fulfill
- hand, right hand, to hand over

**translationNotes:**

- **all the assembly of Israel** - This is a generalization. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

- **walk before you with all their heart** - The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. AT: “live wholeheartedly the way that you want them to” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **fulfilled it with your hand** - The hand is a metonym for the power of the hand. AT: “by your power fulfilled what you said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 8:25-26

### UDB:

<sup>25</sup> So now, Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, I am requesting that you do the other things that you promised my father that you would do. You told him that there would always be some of his descendants who would be kings in Israel, if they would conduct their lives as he did.  
<sup>26</sup> So now, God of us Israelite people, cause what you promised to do for my father David, who served you well, to happen.

### ULB:

<sup>25</sup> Now then, Yahweh, God of Israel, carry out what you have promised to your servant David my father, when you said, 'You will not fail to have a man in my sight to sit on the throne of Israel, if only your descendants are careful to walk before me, as you have walked before me.' <sup>26</sup> Now then, God of Israel, I pray that the promise you made to your servant David my father, will come true.

### translationWords:

- [throne](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [walk](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)

### translationNotes:

- **to sit on the throne of Israel** - The throne is a metonym for the activity of the one who sits on the throne. AT: "to rule over Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **walk before me ... have walked before me** - The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. AT: "live as I want you to ... have lived as I want you to" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8:27-28

### UDB:

<sup>27</sup> But God, will you really live on the earth among people? There is not enough space in heaven for you to have enough space to live there. So this temple that I have commanded my workers to build is certainly too small for you to live in. <sup>28</sup> But Yahweh, my God, please listen to me while I am praying to you this day.

### ULB:

<sup>27</sup> But will God actually live on the earth? Look, the entire universe and heaven itself cannot contain you—how much less can this temple that I have built! <sup>28</sup> Yet please respect this prayer of your servant and his request, Yahweh my God; listen to the cry and prayer that your servant prays before you today.

### translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- temple
- servant, slave, slavery
- Yahweh

### translationNotes:

- **But will God actually live on the earth?** - Possible meanings of this question are 1) Solomon is asking a real question and expecting an answer or 2) the question is rhetorical and Solomon is emphasizing that God is too big and mighty to live on earth. AT: "But it surely cannot be that God will actually live on the earth!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **But will God** - Here Solomon speaks about God in the third person. It can be stated in the second person. AT: "But will you" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **Look** - "What I am about to say is important" or "The truth is that"
- **you—how much less can this temple that I have built** - "you, so this temple that I have built certainly cannot"
- **respect this prayer of your servant and his request** - The words "prayer" and "request" mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he is sincere as he makes his request. Solomon refers to himself as "your servant" to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. AT: "respect me, your servant, as I make this request" (See: [Doublet](#) and [Pronouns](#))
- **listen to the cry and prayer that your servant prays before you today** - The words "cry" and "prayer" mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he is sincere as he asks

Yahweh to help him. Solomon refers to himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. AT: “listen to me, your servant, as I call today for you to help me” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Pronouns](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8:29-30

### UDB:

<sup>29</sup> I pray that you would protect this temple night and day. This is the place about which you have said, ‘I will always be there.’ I request that you listen to me whenever I turn my face toward this temple and pray. <sup>30</sup> I request that when I pray to you and your people pray to you while they turn their faces toward this place, that in your home in heaven you will hear us and forgive us for the sins that we have committed.

### ULB:

<sup>29</sup> May your eyes be open toward this temple night and day, to the place about which you have said, ‘My name and my presence will be there’—in order to listen to the prayers that your servant will pray toward this place. <sup>30</sup> So listen to the request of your servant and of your people Israel when we pray toward this place. Yes, listen from the place where you live, from the heavens; and when you listen, forgive.

### translationWords:

- temple
- name
- pray, prayer
- servant, slave, slavery
- forgive, forgiveness

### translationNotes:

- **May your eyes be open toward** - The eye is a metonym for what the eye does. AT: “May you watch over” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **night and day** - This is a merism. AT: “all the time” or “continually” (See: [Merism](#))
- **My name and my presence** - These two words together emphasize that Yahweh will dwell in the temple. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **that your servant will pray** - Solomon speaks of himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. AT: “that I, your servant, will pray” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **listen to the request of your servant and of your people Israel** - Solomon speaks of himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. AT: “listen to my request and the request of your people Israel” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8:31-32

### UDB:

<sup>31</sup> Suppose that people accuse someone of doing something wrong to another person, and they bring him to your altar outside this holy temple. And suppose that he says, 'I did not do that; may God punish me if I am not telling the truth.' <sup>32</sup> In that case, listen from heaven and decide who is telling the truth. Then punish the person who is guilty as he deserves to be punished, and declare that the other person is innocent.

### ULB:

<sup>31</sup> If a man sins against his neighbor and is required to swear an oath, and if he comes and swears an oath before your altar in this house, <sup>32</sup> listen from the heavens and act; judge your servants, condemning the guilty and bring what he has done upon his own head, and to declare the righteous one to be innocent, and to reward him for his righteousness.

### translationWords:

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- neighbor
- oath, swear, swear by
- altar
- judge, judgment
- condemn, condemnation
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- head
- righteous, righteousness
- innocent
- reward

### translationNotes:

- **is required to swear** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "someone requires him to swear" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **upon his own head** - Here "head" refers to the whole person. AT: "on him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **to reward him for his righteousness** - "to give him what he deserves because he is innocent"

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 08 General Notes
- 1 Kings 08 Translation Questions

## 1 Kings 8:33-34

### UDB:

<sup>33</sup> And suppose that your Israelite people are defeated by their enemies in a battle because they have sinned against you. Suppose also that they are forced to go to some distant country. Then suppose that they turn away from their sinful behavior and turn toward this temple and acknowledge you have justly punished them. And suppose that they plead that you will forgive them. <sup>34</sup> In that case, listen to them from heaven, forgive your Israelite people for the sins that they have committed, and bring them back to this land that you gave to our ancestors.

### ULB:

<sup>33</sup> When your people Israel are defeated by an enemy because they have sinned against you, if they turn back to you, confess your name, pray, and request forgiveness from you in this temple— <sup>34</sup> then please listen in the heavens and forgive the sin of your people Israel; bring them back to the land that you gave to their ancestors.

### translationWords:

- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- adversary, enemy
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- turn, turn away, turn back
- confess, confession
- name
- pray, prayer
- forgive, forgiveness
- temple
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### translationNotes:

- **your people Israel are defeated by an enemy** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “an enemy defeats your people Israel” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **confess your name** - Possible meanings are 1) “confess that they have sinned against you” or 2) “praise you” or 3) “say that they will obey you from now on.”
- **request forgiveness from you** - The abstract noun “forgiveness” can be translated as a verb. AT: “ask you to forgive them” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8:35-36

### UDB:

<sup>35</sup> Or suppose that you do not allow any rain to fall because your people have sinned against you. Suppose that they turn their faces toward this place and admit that you have justly punished them. Suppose also that they turn away from their sinful behavior and humbly pray to you. <sup>36</sup> In that case, listen to them in heaven and forgive your Israelite people for the sins that they have committed. Teach them the right way to conduct their lives, and then send rain on this land that you have given to your people to belong to them permanently.

### ULB:

<sup>35</sup> When the skies are shut up and there is no rain because the people have sinned against you—if they pray toward this place, confess your name, and turn from their sin when you have afflicted them—<sup>36</sup> then listen in heaven and forgive the sin of your servants and of your people Israel, when you teach them the good way in which they should walk. Send rain on your land, which you have given to your people as an inheritance.

### translationWords:

- afflict, affliction
- servant, slave, slavery
- good, goodness
- walk
- send, send out, sent
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

### translationNotes:

- **the skies are shut up and there is no rain** - The sky is spoken of as if it were a building in which God stores the rain. AT: “you do not allow rain to fall” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **confess your name** - Possible meanings are 1) “confess that they have sinned against you” or 2) “praise you” or 3) “say that they will obey you from now on.” Translate as in [8:33](#).
- **in which they should walk** - The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. AT: “that they should live” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 08 General Notes
- 1 Kings 08 Translation Questions

**1 Kings 8:37-38****UDB:**

<sup>37</sup> Suppose that the people of this land experience famine, or suppose that there is a plague by mildew or by locusts or grasshoppers. Or suppose that their enemies surround any of their cities in order to attack them. Suppose that any of those bad things happen to them. <sup>38</sup> And suppose that your Israelite people earnestly plead with you, because they know in their inner beings that they are suffering because they have sinned. Suppose that they stretch out their arms toward this temple and pray.

**ULB:**

<sup>37</sup> Suppose there is famine in the land, or suppose that there is disease, blight or mildew, locusts or caterpillars; or suppose that an enemy attacks the city gates in their land, or that there is any plague or sickness—<sup>38</sup> and suppose then that prayers and requests are made by a person or by all your people Israel—each knowing the plague in his own heart as he spreads out his hands toward this temple.

**translationWords:**

- **famine**
- **adversary, enemy**
- **gate, gate bar**
- **plague**
- **pray, prayer**
- **heart**

**translationNotes:**

- **blight or mildew** - These are agricultural terms that refer to the death of crops from either too little or too much rain, respectively.
- **locusts or caterpillars** - A “locust” is a type of grasshopper that causes destruction by eating crops. The word “caterpillar” refers to an early growth stage of the locust.
- **prayers and requests are made by a person or by all your people Israel** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “a person, or all your people Israel, prays and makes a request” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **prayers and requests** - The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the person is sincere as he makes his request. Similar words appear in **8:28**. AT: “requests” (See: **Doublet**)
- **knowing the plague in his own heart** - Possible meanings are 1) “knowing the sin in his own heart” or 2) “knowing in his heart that the plague is the result of his own sin.” (See: **Metonymy**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 8:39-40****UDB:**

<sup>39</sup> In that case, listen to them from your home in heaven, and forgive them, and help them. You are the only one who knows what people are thinking, so act toward each person as he needs, <sup>40</sup> in order that your people may then have an awesome respect for you all the years that they live in this land that you gave to our ancestors.

**ULB:**

<sup>39</sup> Then listen from heaven, the place where you live, forgive and act, and reward every person for all he does; you know his heart, because you and you only know the hearts of all human beings. <sup>40</sup> Do this so that they may fear you all the days that they live on the land that you gave to our ancestors.

**translationWords:**

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [forgive, forgiveness](#)
- [reward](#)
- [heart](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)

**translationNotes:****Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 8:41-43****UDB:**

**41-42** There will be some foreigners who do not belong to your Israelite people who will have come here from countries far away because they have heard that you are very great, and because they have heard about the great things that you have done for your people. Suppose that people like that come here to this temple to worship you and pray. <sup>43</sup> In that case, in your home in heaven listen to their prayer, and do for them what they request you to do. Do that in order that all the people groups in the world will know about you and revere you, as we your Israelite people do. Then they will know that this temple that I have caused to be built to honor you belongs to you and is where you should be worshiped.

**ULB:**

<sup>41</sup> In addition, concerning the foreigner who does not belong to your people Israel: when he comes from a distant country because of your name— <sup>42</sup> for they will hear of your great name, your mighty hand, and your raised arm—when he comes and prays toward this temple, <sup>43</sup> then please listen from heaven, the place where you live, and do whatever the foreigner asks of you. Do this so that all the people groups on earth may know your name and fear you, as do your own people Israel. Do this so they might know that this house I have built is called by your name.

**translationWords:**

- foreigner, foreign, alien
- name
- mighty, might
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- temple
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- house
- call, calling, called, call out

**translationNotes:**

- **your mighty hand, and your raised arm** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and refer to God's power. (See: **Doublet** and **Metonymy**)
- **this house I have built is called by your name** - This can be stated in active form. The phrase "called by your name" indicates that the person possesses and owns the house. AT: "you own this house that I have built" (See: **Active or Passive**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 8:44-45****UDB:**

<sup>44</sup> Suppose that you send your people to go to fight against their enemies. And suppose that your people pray to you, wherever they are, and that they turn toward this city that you have chosen and toward this temple that I have caused to be built for you. <sup>45</sup> In that case, listen in heaven to their prayers. Listen to what they plead for you to do, and assist them.

**ULB:**

<sup>44</sup> Suppose that your people go out to battle against an enemy, by whatever way you may send them, and suppose that they pray to you, Yahweh, toward the city that you have chosen, and toward the house that I have built for your name. <sup>45</sup> Then listen in the heavens to their prayer and their request, and help their cause.

**translationWords:**

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Suppose that your people go out ... suppose that they pray** - When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))
- **for your name** - The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for ... name” refers to worshiping the person. Similar words appear in [3:2](#). AT: “in which people will worship you” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **their prayer and their request** - The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the people are sincere as they make their request. Similar words appear in [8:28](#). AT: “their request” (See: [Doublet](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 8:46-47****UDB:**

<sup>46</sup> It is true that everyone sins. So, suppose that your people sin against you and that you become angry with them. You might allow their enemies to defeat them, capture them, and take them away to their own countries, even to countries that are far away. <sup>47</sup> And suppose that, while your people are in those countries to which they had to go, they sincerely repent and plead with you there saying, ‘We have sinned and have done things that are very wicked.’

**ULB:**

<sup>46</sup> Suppose that they sin against you, since there is no one who does not sin, and suppose that you are angry with them and deliver them to the enemy, so that the enemy takes them away captive to their land, whether distant or near. <sup>47</sup> Then suppose that they realize they are in the land where they have been exiled, and suppose that they repent and seek favor from you from the land of their captors. Suppose that they say, ‘We have acted perversely and sinned. We have behaved wickedly.’

**translationWords:**

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- angry, anger
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- adversary, enemy
- captive, captivity
- exile, the Exile
- repent, repentance
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- perverse, perversely, pervert
- evil, wicked, wickedness

**translationNotes:**

- **Suppose that they sin ... suppose that you are ... suppose that they realize ... suppose that they repent ... Suppose that they say** - When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))
- **where they have been exiled** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “where their enemies have taken them as exiles” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **captors** - people who keep others as prisoners

- **We have acted perversely and sinned. We have behaved wickedly** - These two sentences mean the same thing. Together they emphasize how bad the people's actions were. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **acted perversely and sinned** - The words mean basically the same thing and emphasize how badly the people sinned. (See: [Doublet](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8:48

### UDB:

<sup>48</sup> Suppose that they very truly and sincerely repent, and turn toward this land that you gave to our ancestors. Suppose that they turn toward this city that you have chosen to be the place where we should worship you, and toward this temple that I have caused to be built for you. Suppose that they then pray to you.

### ULB:

<sup>48</sup> Suppose that they return to you with all their heart and with all their soul in the land of their enemies who captured them, and suppose that they pray to you toward their land, which you gave to their ancestors, and toward the city that you chose, and toward the house that I have built for your name.

### translationWords:

- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [heart](#)
- [soul](#)

### translationNotes:

- **with all their heart and with all their soul** - The idiom “with all ... heart” means “completely” and “with all ... soul” means “with all ... being.” These two phrases have similar meanings. Translate as in [2:4](#). AT: “with all their being” or “with all their energy” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))
- **in the land** - “while they are living in the land”
- **toward their land** - “toward the land in which they belong.” This refers to Israel.
- **for your name** - The word “name” is a metonym for the person, and “for ... name” refers to worshiping the person. Similar words appear in [3:2](#). AT: “in which people will worship you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8:49-50

### UDB:

<sup>49</sup> In that case, from your home in heaven listen to them while they plead for your help, and help them. <sup>50</sup> Forgive them for all the sins that they have committed against you and cause their enemies to act kindly toward them.

### ULB:

<sup>49</sup> Then from heaven, the place where you live, listen to their prayer and their request for help, and you will make matters right for them. <sup>50</sup> Forgive your people, who have sinned against you, and all their sins with which they have transgressed against your commands. Have compassion on them before their enemies who carried them captive, so that their enemies may also have compassion on your people.

### translationWords:

- pray, prayer
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- forgive, forgiveness
- transgress, transgression
- command, to command, commandment
- compassion, compassionate

### translationNotes:

- **their prayer and their request** - The two words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize that the people were sincere as they made their request to Yahweh. Similar words appear in [8:28](#). (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Forgive your people, who have sinned against you, and all their sins with which they have transgressed against your commands** - Solomon twice requests Yahweh to forgive the people. This emphasizes the earnestness of his request. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8:51-53

### UDB:

<sup>51</sup> Do not forget that the Israelites are your people. They are your special possession. You brought our ancestors out of Egypt where they were greatly suffering as though they were in a blazing furnace.

<sup>52</sup> I request that you always listen to your Israelite people and to their king, and heed their prayers whenever they call out to you to help them. <sup>53</sup> You chose them from all the other people groups in the world to belong to you, which is what you told Moses to tell them when you brought our ancestors out of Egypt.”

### ULB:

<sup>51</sup> They are your people whom you have chosen, whom you rescued out of Egypt as if from the middle of a furnace where iron is forged. <sup>52</sup> I pray that your eyes may be open to the request of your servant and to the requests of your people Israel, to listen to them whenever they cry to you. <sup>53</sup> For you separated them from among all the peoples of the earth to belong to you and receive your promises, just as you explained by Moses your servant, when you brought our fathers out of Egypt, Lord Yahweh.”

### translationWords:

- Egypt, Egyptian
- furnace
- servant, slave, slavery
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- receive
- promise
- Moses
- ancestor, father, forefather
- Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

### translationNotes:

- **a furnace where iron is forged** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “a furnace where people forge iron” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **your eyes may be open** - The eye is a metonym for the person. AT: “you will pay attention” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 8:54-56****UDB:**

<sup>54</sup> After Solomon had finished praying this and pleading to Yahweh for his help, he stood up in front of the altar where he had been kneeling. He lifted up his arms. <sup>55</sup> Then he asked God to bless all the Israelite people. He prayed loudly, saying,

<sup>56</sup> "Praise Yahweh, who has given us his people peace, like he promised that he would do. He has done every one of the good things that he promised to Moses, the man who served him very well.

**ULB:**

<sup>54</sup> So it was that when Solomon had finished praying all this prayer and request to Yahweh, he arose from before the altar of Yahweh, from kneeling on his knees with his hands spread out toward the heavens. <sup>55</sup> He stood and blessed all the assembly of Israel in a loud voice, saying, <sup>56</sup> "May Yahweh be praised, who has given rest to his people Israel, keeping all his promises. Not one word has failed out of all Yahweh's good promises that he made with Moses his servant.

**translationWords:**

- Solomon
- Yahweh
- altar
- bless, blessed, blessing
- assembly, assemble
- voice
- praise
- rest
- word

**translationNotes:**

- **prayer and request** - The words "prayer" and "request" mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he is sincere as he makes his request. Similar words appear in 8:28. AT: "request" (See: **Doublet**)
- **May Yahweh be praised** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Praise Yahweh" (UDB) (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **Not one word has failed out of all Yahweh's good promises** - This can be stated positively. AT: "Yahweh has made every word of his good promises come true" (See: **Litotes**)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8:57-58

### UDB:

<sup>57</sup> I pray that our God will be with us like he was with our ancestors, and that he will never, never abandon us. <sup>58</sup> I pray that he will cause us to loyally serve him, to conduct our lives as he wants us to, and to obey all his commandments and statutes and decrees that he gave to our ancestors.

### ULB:

<sup>57</sup> May Yahweh our God be with us, as he was with our ancestors. May he never leave us or forsake us, <sup>58</sup> that he may incline our hearts to him, to live in all his ways and keep his commandments and his regulations and his statutes, which he commanded our fathers.

### translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, forsook](#)
- [heart](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [decree](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)

### translationNotes:

- **leave us or forsake us** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize Solomon's desire for Yahweh to be present with the people. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **incline our hearts to him** - Desiring to please someone is spoken of as inclining the heart toward that person. AT: "make us want to please him" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **live in all his ways** - Here "in his ways" is an idiom that refers to the way he wants people to live. AT: "live as he requires us to live" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8:59-61

### UDB:

<sup>59</sup> I pray that Yahweh our God will never forget these words that I have prayed, pleading for his help. I pray that he will think about them by day and by night. I pray that he will always act mercifully toward us Israelite people and toward our king, giving us the things that we need day by day. <sup>60</sup> If you do that, all the people groups in the world will know that you, Yahweh, are the only one who is God, and that there is no other one who is God. <sup>61</sup> I pray that you, his people, will always be fully committed to Yahweh, and that you will obey all his statutes and commands, like you are doing now.”

### ULB:

<sup>59</sup> Let these words I have spoken, by which I have made request before Yahweh, be near Yahweh our God day and night, so that he may help the cause of his servant and the cause of his people Israel, as every day will require; <sup>60</sup> that all the peoples of the earth may know that Yahweh, he is God, and there is no other God! <sup>61</sup> Therefore let your heart be true to Yahweh our God, to walk in his statutes and keep his commandments, as on this day.”

### translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)

### translationNotes:

- **day and night** - This merism refers to “all the time” or “continually.” (See: [Merism](#))
- **let your heart be true** - “be wholly devoted”
- **walk in his statutes** - The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. AT: “always obey his statutes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8:62-63

### UDB:

<sup>62</sup> Then the king and all the Israelite people who were there offered sacrifices to Yahweh. <sup>63</sup> They sacrificed twenty-two thousand cattle and 120,000 sheep to restore fellowship with Yahweh. Then the king and all the people dedicated the temple.

### ULB:

<sup>62</sup> So the king and all Israel with him offered sacrifices to Yahweh. <sup>63</sup> Solomon offered a sacrifice of fellowship offerings, which he made to Yahweh: twenty-two thousand oxen and 120,000 sheep. So the king and all the people of Israel dedicated the house of Yahweh.

### translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [fellowship offering](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [dedicate, dedication](#)
- [house](#)

### translationNotes:

- **all Israel with him ... all the people of Israel** - These generalizations may refer either 1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in [8:1](#), or 2) to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 8:64

### UDB:

<sup>64</sup> On that day, the king also dedicated the middle part of the courtyard that was in front of the temple. Then he offered there sacrifices that would be completely burned on the altar, the offerings of flour and the fat of the animals that were sacrificed to restore fellowship with Yahweh. They sacrificed them there because the bronze altar was not big enough for all those sacrifices to be burned on it that day.

### ULB:

<sup>64</sup> The same day the king set apart the middle of the courtyard in front of the temple of Yahweh, for there he offered the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the fat of the fellowship offerings, because the bronze altar that was before Yahweh was too small to receive the burnt offering, the grain offerings, and the fat of the fellowship offerings.

### translationWords:

- [set apart](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [fellowship offering](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [altar](#)
- [receive](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the bronze altar that was before Yahweh** - “the bronze altar that was in Yahweh’s presence.” Since the temple is Yahweh’s dwelling place among his people, the altar is described as being in his presence.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 8:65-66****UDB:**

<sup>65</sup> Then Solomon and all the Israelite people celebrated the Festival of Shelters for seven days and then for another seven days, for a total of fourteen days. There was a huge crowd of people there, some of whom had come from distant places like Hamath in the far north and the border of Egypt in the far south. <sup>66</sup> On the final day, Solomon sent the people to their homes. They all praised him and went home happy because of all the things that Yahweh had done to bless David and his Israelite people.

**ULB:**

<sup>65</sup> So Solomon held the feast at that time, and all Israel with him, a great assembly, from Lebo Hamath to the brook of Egypt, before Yahweh our God for seven days and also for another seven days, a total of fourteen days. <sup>66</sup> On the eighth day he sent the people away, and they blessed the king and went to their homes with joyful and glad hearts for all the goodness that Yahweh had shown to David, his servant, and to Israel, his people.

**translationWords:**

- Solomon
- feast
- assembly, assemble
- Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- bless, blessed, blessing
- joy, joyful
- heart
- good, goodness
- David
- servant, slave, slavery

**translationNotes:**

- **all Israel with him** - This generalization may refer either 1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in **8:1**, or 2) to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. Similar words appear in **8:62**. (See: **Hyperbole**)
- **seven days ... seven days ... fourteen days** - “7 days ... 7 days ... 14 days” (See: **Numbers**)
- **eighth day** - The word “eighth” is the ordinal form of “8.” (See: **Ordinal Numbers**)
- **joyful and glad** - The two words mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: **Doublet**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 08 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 9 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

There are two parts to this chapter. 9:1–9 is a dream in which God warned Solomon that he and his descendants not to worship idols. If they did this, the temple would be destroyed. 9:10–28 is about Solomon’s extensive building and his partnership with Hiram, King of Tyre. (See: [temple](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Worship only Yahweh

Yahweh alone must be worshiped. It is necessary for people to stay faithful to God and not worship idols. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

’Walk’ is a common image in Scripture. It is said, “if you walk before me as David your father walked.” (See: [walk](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 09:01 Notes](#)



**1 Kings 9:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> After Solomon's workers had finished building the temple and his palace and everything else that Solomon wanted them to build, <sup>2</sup> Yahweh appeared to him in a dream a second time, like he had appeared to him at the city of Gibeon.

**ULB:**

9 <sup>1</sup> After Solomon had finished building the house of Yahweh and the king's palace, and after he had accomplished all that he wanted to do, <sup>2</sup> Yahweh appeared to Solomon a second time, as he had appeared to him at Gibeon.

**translationWords:**

- [Solomon](#)
- [house](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [king](#)
- [palace](#)
- [Gibeon, Gibeonite](#)

**translationNotes:****Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 9:3

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Yahweh said to him,

”I heard what you prayed and what you pleaded for me to do. I have set this house apart for myself, for me to be present in it forever.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Then Yahweh said to him, ”I have heard your prayer and your request that you have made before me. I have set apart this house, which you have built, to myself, to put my name there forever. My eyes and my heart will be there for all time.

### translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [name](#)
- [forever](#)
- [heart](#)

### translationNotes:

- **your prayer and your request** - The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh recognized that Solomon’s request was sincere. Similar words appear in [8:28](#). AT: “your request” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **to put my name there forever** - The name is a metonym for the person. AT: “to dwell there and to claim possession of it forever” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **My eyes and my heart will be there** - The eyes and heart are synecdoche for the whole person. AT: “I will protect and care for it” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 9:4-5****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> And as for you, if you conduct your life as I want you to, like your father David did, and if you very sincerely obey all the statutes and decrees that I have commanded you to obey, <sup>5</sup> I will do what I promised your father that I would do. I promised him that Israel would always be ruled by his descendants.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> As for you, if you walk before me as David your father walked in integrity of heart and in uprightness, obeying all that I have commanded you and keeping my statutes and my decrees, <sup>5</sup> then I will establish the throne of your kingdom over Israel forever, as I promised David your father, saying, ‘A descendant of yours will never fail to be on the throne of Israel.’

**translationWords:**

- walk
- David
- integrity
- heart
- obey, obedient, obedience
- command, to command, commandment
- statute, statutes
- decree
- throne
- kingdom
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- forever
- descendant, descended from

**translationNotes:**

- **if you walk before me as David your father walked** - The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. AT: “if you live the way I want you to live, just as David your father did” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **in integrity of heart and in uprightness** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize how righteous David was. (See: **Doublet**)
- **the throne of your kingdom** - Here “throne” refers to his reign. AT: “your dynasty” or “your reign” (See: **Metonymy**)

- **will never fail to be on the throne of Israel** - The action of ruling a kingdom is spoken of as if it were a person sitting on a throne. This can be expressed positively. AT: “will always rule over Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Litotes](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 9:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> But if you or your descendants turn away from me and disobey the commands and decrees that I have given to you, and if you start to worship other gods, <sup>7</sup> I will remove my Israelite people from the land that I have given to them. I will also abandon this temple that I have dedicated. Then people everywhere will despise Israel and make fun of it.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> But if you turn away, you or your children, and do not keep my commandments and my statutes that I have placed before you, and if you go and worship other gods and bow down to them, <sup>7</sup> then will I cut off Israel from off the ground that I have given them; and this house that I have set apart to my name, I will cast it out of my sight, and Israel will become an example to be mocked and an object of ridicule among all peoples.

**translationWords:**

- turn, turn away, turn back
- worship
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- bow, bow down
- cut off
- house
- set apart
- name
- cast out, drive out, throw out
- proverb
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

**translationNotes:**

- **my commandments and my statutes** - Here the words “commandments” and “statutes” mean basically the same thing and emphasize all that Yahweh has commanded. (See: **Doublet**)
- **worship other gods and bow down to them** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism**)
- **set apart to my name** - Here the word “name” is a metonym for the person who possesses something. AT: “set apart for myself” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **I will cast it out of my sight** - The abstract noun “sight” can be expressed with the verb “see.” Looking at something is a metaphor for protecting it. AT: “I will put it where I no

longer have to see it” or “I will get rid of it so I no longer have to protect it” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 9:8-9

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> Despite the fact that this temple is very beautiful, there will come a time when everyone who passes by will be astonished when they see it, and they will hiss and say, ‘Why has Yahweh done this to this land and to this temple?’ <sup>9</sup> Other people will reply, ‘It happened because the Israelite people abandoned Yahweh their God, the one who brought their ancestors out of Egypt. They started to accept and worship other gods. And that is why Yahweh has caused them to experience all these disasters.’”

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> This temple will become a heap of ruins, and everyone who passes by it will be shocked and will hiss. They will ask, ‘Why has Yahweh done this to this land and to this house?’ <sup>9</sup> Others will answer, ‘Because they forsook Yahweh, their God, who had brought their ancestors out of the land of Egypt, and they laid hold of other gods and bowed down to them and worshiped them. That is why Yahweh has brought all this disaster on them.’”

### translationWords:

- temple
- Yahweh
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- God
- Egypt, Egyptian
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess

### translationNotes:

- **This temple will become a heap of ruins** - “This temple will be destroyed and its remains will be piled into a high mound”
- **will be shocked and will hiss** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “will express amazement and make a sound of disrespect” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **bowed down to them and worshiped them** - These two phrases mean the same thing. The phrase “bowed down to them” describes the posture that people used in worship. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)

- 1 Kings 09 Translation Questions



## 1 Kings 9:10-11

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> Solomon's workers worked for twenty years to build the temple and the palace. <sup>11</sup> Hiram, the king of the city of Tyre, had arranged for his workers to give Solomon all the cedar and pine logs and all the gold that he needed for this work. After it was all finished, King Solomon gave to Hiram twenty cities in the region of Galilee.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> It came about at the end of twenty years that Solomon had finished building the two buildings, the temple of Yahweh and the king's palace. <sup>11</sup> Now Hiram, the king of Tyre, had furnished Solomon with cedar and cypress trees, and with gold—all that Solomon desired—so King Solomon gave Hiram twenty cities in the land of Galilee.

### translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [king](#)
- [palace](#)
- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Galilee, Galilean](#)

### translationNotes:

- **It came about** - This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way of doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **at the end of twenty years** - “after 20 years”
- **Solomon had finished building** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 9:12-14

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> But when Hiram went from Tyre to Galilee to see the cities that Solomon had given to him, he was not pleased with them. <sup>13</sup> He said to Solomon, “My friend, those cities that you gave me are worthless.” Because of that, Hiram called that region Worthless. <sup>14</sup> Hiram gave Solomon only four metric tons of gold for those cities.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> Hiram came out from Tyre to see the cities that Solomon had given him, but they did not please him. <sup>13</sup> So Hiram said, “What cities are these which you have given me, my brother?” Hiram called them the Land of Cabul, which they are still called today. <sup>14</sup> Hiram had sent to the king 120 talents of gold.

### translationWords:

- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)
- [brother](#)

### translationNotes:

- **What cities are these which you have given me, my brother?** - Hiram is rebuking Solomon. AT: “These cities that you have given me are good for nothing.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **which they are still called today** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “and people still call them that today” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **120 talents of gold** - A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 34 kilograms. AT: “about 4,000 kilograms of gold.” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 9:15-16

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> This is a record of the work that King Solomon forced men to do. He forced them to build the temple and his palace and the landfill on the east side of the city, and the wall around Jerusalem, and to rebuild the cities of Hazor, Megiddo, and Gezer. <sup>16</sup> The reason they needed to rebuild Gezer was that the army of the king of Egypt had attacked Gezer and captured it. Then they had burned the houses in the city and killed all the people of the Canaan people group who lived there. The king of Egypt gave that city to his daughter for a gift when she married Solomon.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> The following is the reason for the requirement to work which King Solomon imposed: to build the temple of Yahweh and his own palace, to build the Millo and the wall of Jerusalem, and to build the defenses of Hazor, Megiddo, and Gezer. <sup>16</sup> Pharaoh king of Egypt had gone up and taken Gezer. He burned it and killed the Canaanites in the city. Then Pharaoh gave the city to his daughter, Solomon's wife, as a wedding gift.

### translationWords:

- [temple](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [gift](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the reason for the requirement to work which King Solomon imposed** - “the reason that King Solomon required men to work”
- **to build the Millo** - Possible meanings are 1) “to build the terrace system” or 2) “to build the landfill” (UDB).
- **Pharaoh king of Egypt had gone up** - The person is a metonym for the army he commands. AT: “The army of Pharaoh, king of Egypt, had gone up” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 9:17-19

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> So Solomon's workers also rebuilt the city of Gezer, and they also rebuilt the city of Lower Beth Horon. <sup>18</sup> They also rebuilt the cities of Baalath and Tamar in the wilderness in the southern part of Judah. <sup>19</sup> They also built the cities where they kept the supplies for Solomon, the places where his horses and chariots were kept. They also built everything else that he wanted them to build, in Jerusalem and in Lebanon, and in other places in the area over which he ruled.

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> So Solomon rebuilt Gezer and Beth Horon the Lower, <sup>18</sup> Baalath and Tamar in the wilderness in the land of Judah, <sup>19</sup> and all the store cities that he possessed, and the cities for his chariots and the cities for his horsemen, and whatever he wished to build for his pleasure in Jerusalem, in Lebanon, and in all the lands under his rule.

### translationWords:

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [possess, possession](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [horsemen](#)
- [Lebanon](#)

### translationNotes:

- **So Solomon rebuilt Gezer** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 9:20-21****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> There were many people groups who belonged to the Amor, the Heth, the Periz , the Hiv, and the Jebus, who were not killed when the Israelites captured their land. <sup>21</sup> Their descendants still lived in Israel. It was those people whom Solomon forced to become his slaves to build all those places, and they are still slaves.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> As for all the people who were left of the Amorites, the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites, who were not of the people of Israel, <sup>21</sup> their descendants who were left after them in the land, whom the people of Israel were not able to totally destroy—Solomon made them into forced laborers, which they are to this day.

**translationWords:**

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [Perizzite](#)
- [Hivite](#)
- [Jebusites, Jebus](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [labor, laborer](#)

**translationNotes:****Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 9:22

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> But Solomon did not force any Israelite people to become slaves. Some of them became soldiers, servants, officials, army officers, commanders of his chariot forces, and men who rode on his horses.

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> However, Solomon made no forced laborers of the people of Israel. Instead, they became his soldiers and his servants, his officials, and his officers and commanders of his chariot forces and his horse riders.

### translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [chariot](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Solomon made no forced laborers of the people of Israel** - “Solomon did not force the people of Israel to labor”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 9:23

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> There were 550 officials who supervised the slaves who worked to build all those places.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> These were also the chief officers managing the supervisors who were over Solomon's works, 550 of them, who supervised the people who did the work.

### translationWords:

- chief
- works, deeds, work, acts

### translationNotes:

- 550 of them - "five hundred and fifty of them" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 9:24

### UDB:

<sup>24</sup> After Solomon's wife, who was the daughter of the king of Egypt, moved from the part of Jerusalem called the city of David to the palace that Solomon's workers built for her, Solomon told his workers to fill in the land on the east side of the city.

### ULB:

<sup>24</sup> Pharaoh's daughter moved from the city of David to the house that Solomon had built for her. Later, Solomon built the Millo.

### translationWords:

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [city of David](#)

### translationNotes:

- **built the Millo** - Possible meanings are 1) "built the terrace system" or 2) "built the landfill" (UDB). See how you translated "the Millo" in [9:15](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 9:25

### UDB:

<sup>25</sup> Three times each year Solomon brought to the temple offerings that the priests burned completely on the altar and offerings to promise friendship with Yahweh. He also brought incense to be burned in the presence of Yahweh.

And that is how his men finished building the temple.

### ULB:

<sup>25</sup> Three times each year Solomon offered burnt offerings and peace offerings on the altar that he built for Yahweh, burning incense with them on the altar that was before Yahweh. So he completed the temple and was now using it.

### translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [peace offering](#)
- [altar](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [incense](#)
- [temple](#)

### translationNotes:

- **altar that was before Yahweh** - Translate this phrase as in [8:64](#).
- **So he completed the temple** - Solomon is a metonym for the workers he hired to do the work. AT: "So his workers completed the temple" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 9:26-28

### UDB:

<sup>26</sup> King Solomon's workers also built a fleet of ships at the city of Ezion Geber, which is near the city of Elath, on the shore of the Sea of Reeds, in the land belonging to the Edom people group. <sup>27</sup> King Hiram sent some expert sailors to go on the ships with Solomon's workers. <sup>28</sup> They sailed to the region of Ophir and brought back to Solomon about 14 and one-half metric tons of gold.

### ULB:

<sup>26</sup> King Solomon built a fleet of ships in Ezion Geber, which is near Elath on the shore of the Red Sea, in the land of Edom. <sup>27</sup> Hiram sent servants to Solomon's fleet, sailors who understood the sea, with Solomon's own servants. <sup>28</sup> They went to Ophir with servants of Solomon. From there they brought back 420 talents of gold for King Solomon.

### translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [Sea of Reeds, Red Sea](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

### translationNotes:

- **King Solomon built** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **a fleet of ships** - "a large group of ships"
- **420 talents of gold** - A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 34 kilograms. AT: "about 14,000 kilograms of gold" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 09 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 10 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

There are two parts to this chapter: The Fame of Solomon's wisdom and the wealth of his kingdom.

(See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Queen of Sheba

King Solomon became so famous for his wisdom that the Queen of Sheba (modern day Yemen) came all the way to see him and was deeply impressed. God promised him great wealth and he became famously rich. (See: [promise](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 10:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Kings 10:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> The queen who ruled the land of Sheba heard that Yahweh had caused Solomon to become famous, so she traveled to Jerusalem to ask him questions that were difficult to answer. <sup>2</sup> She came with a large group of wealthy people, and she brought camels that were loaded with spices, precious gems, and much gold. When she met Solomon, she asked him questions about all the things in which she was interested.

### ULB:

**10** <sup>1</sup> When the queen of Sheba heard of Solomon's fame concerning the name of Yahweh, she came to test him with hard questions. <sup>2</sup> She came to Jerusalem with a very long caravan, with camels loaded with spices, much gold, and many precious gemstones. When she arrived, she told Solomon all that was in her heart.

### translationWords:

- [queen](#)
- [Sheba](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [name](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [test](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [camel](#)
- [gold](#)
- [heart](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Solomon's fame concerning the name of Yahweh** - Possible meanings are 1) "Solomon's fame, which glorified Yahweh" or 2) "Solomon's fame, which Yahweh had given him" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **all that was in her heart** - This is a generalization. AT: "everything she wanted to know" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)

- 1 Kings 10 Translation Questions

## 1 Kings 10:3-5

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Solomon answered all her questions. He explained everything that she asked about, even things that were very difficult. <sup>4</sup> The queen realized that Solomon was very wise. She saw his palace, <sup>5</sup> she saw the food that was served on his table every day, she saw where his officials lived, their uniforms, the servants who served the food and wine, and the sacrifices that he took to the temple to be offered. She was extremely amazed.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Solomon answered all her questions. There was nothing she asked that the king did not answer. <sup>4</sup> When the queen of Sheba saw all Solomon's wisdom, the palace that he had built, <sup>5</sup> the food on his table, the seating of his servants, the work of his servants and their clothing, also his cupbearers, and the manner in which he offered burnt offerings in the house of Yahweh, there was no more breath in her.

### translationWords:

- king
- wise, wisdom
- palace
- servant, slave, slavery
- works, deeds, work, acts
- cupbearer
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- house of God, Yahweh's house

### translationNotes:

- **the seating of his servants** - Possible meanings are 1) "how his servants were seated around the table" or 2) "where his servants lived."
- **there was no more breath in her** - This is an idiom. AT: "she was utterly amazed" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 10 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 10:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> She said to the king, "Everything that I heard in my own country about you and about how wise you are is true! <sup>7</sup> But I did not believe it was true until I came here and saw it myself. But really, what they told me is only half of what they could have told me about you. You are extremely wise and rich, more than what people told me.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> She said to the king, "It is true, the report that I heard in my own land of your words and your wisdom. <sup>7</sup> I did not believe what I heard until I came here, and now my eyes have seen it. Not half was told me about your wisdom and wealth! You have exceeded the fame that I heard about.

**translationWords:**

- true, truth, come true
- report
- word
- wise, wisdom
- believe, believe in, belief

**translationNotes:**

- **I heard in my own land** - "I heard while I was in my own land"
- **your words and your wisdom** - Here the word "wisdom" can describe the word "words." AT: "your wise sayings" (See: [Hendiadys](#)).
- **my eyes have seen it** - The eye is a metonym for the person. AT: "I have seen it" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Not half was told me** - This can be expressed positively and stated in active form. AT: "People told me very little" (See: [Litotes](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 10 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 10:8-9****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> How fortunate are your wives! And how fortunate are your servants, who are waiting to serve you, who are listening to the wise things that you say! <sup>9</sup> Praise Yahweh, your God, who has shown that he is pleased with you by causing you to become the king of Israel! God has always loved the Israelite people, and therefore he has appointed you to be their king, in order that you will rule them fairly and righteously.”

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> How blessed are your wives, and how blessed are your servants who constantly stand before you, because they hear your wisdom.[1]Some versions read *How blessed are your men*. Important ancient translations, however, have *How blessed are your wives*. Many think it is probable that *women* was misread as *men*, because the Hebrew words are very similar. <sup>9</sup> May Yahweh your God be praised, who has taken pleasure in you, who placed you on the throne of Israel. Because Yahweh loved Israel forever, he has made you king, for you to do justice and righteousness!”

**translationWords:**

- bless, blessed, blessing
- servant, slave, slavery
- Yahweh
- God
- praise
- throne
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- love
- forever
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness

**translationNotes:**

- **who constantly stand before you** - This is an idiom. AT: “who are always in your presence waiting to serve you” (See: **Idiom**)
- **May Yahweh your God be praised** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “May people praise Yahweh your God” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **who placed you on the throne of Israel** - The throne is a metonym for the king who sits on it. AT: “who made you king of Israel” (See: **Metonymy**)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 10 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 10:10

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> Then the queen gave to the king the things that she had brought. She gave him over 4,500 kilograms of gold and a large amount of spices and gems. Never again did King Solomon receive more spices than the queen gave him at that time.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> She gave the king 120 talents of gold and a large amount of spices and precious stones. No greater amount of spices as these that the queen of Sheba gave to King Solomon was ever given to him again.

### translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [gold](#)
- [queen](#)
- [Sheba](#)
- [Solomon](#)

### translationNotes:

- **120 talents of gold** - A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 34 kilograms. AT: “about 4,000 kilograms of gold” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))
- **No greater amount of spices ... was ever given to him again** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “No one ever again gave to King Solomon more spices than the queen of Sheba gave to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 10 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 10:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> In the ships that belong to King Hiram, in which they had previously brought gold from Ophir, they also brought a large amount of almug wood and precious gem stones. <sup>12</sup> King Solomon told his workers to use that wood to make pillars in the temple and in his palace, and also to make harps and lyres for the musicians. That wood was the largest amount of fine wood that had ever been brought to or seen in Israel.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> The fleet of Hiram, which brought gold from Ophir, also brought from Ophir a large amount of almug wood and precious stones. <sup>12</sup> The king made almug wood pillars for the temple of Yahweh and for the king's palace, and harps and lyres for the singers. No such quantity of almug wood has ever come or been seen again to this day.

### translationWords:

- [pillar, column](#)
- [temple](#)
- [palace](#)
- [harp](#)
- [lute, lyre](#)

### translationNotes:

- **The king made** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. AT: "The king told his people to make" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **almug wood** - a type of wood, possibly one with a pleasant scent (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **or been seen again** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "nor has anyone ever seen such a great quantity again" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **to this day** - This means to the day that the author was writing this.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 10 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 10:13

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> King Solomon gave to the queen from Sheba everything that she wanted. He gave her those gifts in addition to the gifts that he always gave to other rulers who visited him. Then she and the people who came with her returned to her own land.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> King Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba everything she wished for, whatever she asked, in addition to what Solomon gave her of his royal bounty. So she returned to her own land with her servants.

### translationWords:

- [royal](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

### translationNotes:

- **everything she wished for, whatever she asked** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **of his royal bounty** - “because as king he had so much”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 10 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 10:14-15

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> Each year there was brought to Solomon a total of twenty-three thousand kilograms of gold. <sup>15</sup> That was in addition to the taxes paid to him by the merchants and traders, and the annual taxes paid by the kings of Arabia and by the governors of the districts in Israel.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> Now the weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year was 666 talents of gold, <sup>15</sup> besides the gold that the traders and merchants brought. All the kings of Arabia and the governors in the country also brought gold and silver to Solomon.

### translationWords:

- [gold](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [king](#)
- [Arabia, Arabian](#)
- [governor, govern, proconsul, government](#)
- [silver](#)

### translationNotes:

- **in one year** - “each year” (UDB). This refers to every year of Solomon’s reign, and not to just one time.
- **666 talents of gold** - A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 34 kilograms. AT: “almost 23,000 kilograms of gold” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 10 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 10:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> King Solomon's workers took this gold and hammered it into thin sheets and covered two hundred large shields with those thin sheets of gold. They put six kilograms of gold on each shield. <sup>17</sup> His workers made three hundred smaller shields. They covered each of them with 1.7 kilograms of gold. Then the king put those shields in the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> King Solomon made two hundred large shields of beaten gold. Six hundred shekels of gold went into each one. <sup>17</sup> He also made three hundred shields of beaten gold. Three minas of gold went into each shield; the king put them into the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon.

**translationWords:**

- shield
- palace
- Lebanon

**translationNotes:**

- **King Solomon made** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. AT: "King Solomon's men made" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **two hundred large shields** - "200 large shields" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Six hundred shekels of gold** - A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. AT: "About 6.6 kilograms of gold" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))
- **Six hundred shekels** - Because the word "shekels" does not appear here in the Hebrew text, some modern versions assume instead the unit of beka, which was equivalent to only a half shekel. Any version making this assumption would signal a metric equivalent of about three kilograms.
- **He also made** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon do this. AT: "The king's men also made" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **three hundred shields** - "300 shields" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Three minas of gold** - A mina is a unit of weight equal to about 600 grams. AT: "About 1.8 kilograms of gold" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))
- **the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon** - "the house called the House of the Lebanon Forest." Translate as in [7:2](#).

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 10 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 10:18-20

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> His workers also made for him a large throne. Part of it was covered with ivory, and part of it was covered with very fine gold. **19-20** There were six steps in front of the throne. There was a statue of a lion on both sides of each step. So altogether there were twelve statues of lions. The back of the throne was rounded at the top. At each side of the throne there was an armrest and alongside each armrest there was a small statue of a lion. No throne like that had ever existed in any other kingdom.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> Then the king made a great throne of ivory and overlaid it with the finest gold. <sup>19</sup> There were six steps to the throne, and the back of it had a rounded top. There were armrests on each side of the seat, and two lions standing beside the armrests. <sup>20</sup> Twelve lions stood on the steps, one on each side of each of the six steps. There was no throne like it in any other kingdom.

### translationWords:

- [throne](#)
- [lion](#)
- [kingdom](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the king made** - It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped the king do this. AT: “the king’s men made” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **throne of ivory** - Ivory is the hard, white substance from the tusks or teeth of large animals. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 10 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 10:21-22

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> All of Solomon's cups were made of gold, and all the various dishes in the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon were made of gold. They did not make things from silver, because during the years that Solomon ruled silver was not considered to be valuable. <sup>22</sup> The king had a fleet of ships that sailed with the ships that King Hiram owned. Every three years the ships returned from the places to which they had sailed bringing gold, silver, ivory, monkeys, and baboons.

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> All King Solomon's drinking cups were gold, and all the drinking cups in the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon were of pure gold. None were silver, because silver was not considered valuable in Solomon's days. <sup>22</sup> The king had at sea a fleet of oceangoing ships, along with the fleet of Hiram. Once every three years the fleet brought gold, silver, and ivory, as well as apes and baboons.

### translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon** - "the house called the House of the Lebanon Forest." Translate as in [7:2](#).
- **ivory** - Ivory is the hard, white substance from the tusks or teeth of large animals. Translate as in [10:18](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **apes and baboons** - These animals live wild in Africa. At the ends of their four limbs are what look like human hands and feet, and they have long tails. Some people consider baboons a type of ape. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 10 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 10:23-25

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> King Solomon became richer and wiser than any other king. <sup>24</sup> People from all over the world wanted to come and listen to the wise things that Solomon said, things that God had put into his mind. <sup>25</sup> All the people who came to him brought presents. They brought things made from silver or gold, or robes, or weapons, or spices, or horses, or mules. The people continued to do this every year.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> So King Solomon exceeded all the kings of the world in riches and in wisdom. <sup>24</sup> All the earth sought the presence of Solomon in order to hear his wisdom, which God had put in his heart. <sup>25</sup> Those who visited brought tribute, vessels of silver and of gold, and clothes, armor, and spices, as well as horses and mules, year after year.

### translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- earth, earthly
- God
- heart
- tribute
- armor
- horse
- donkey, mule

### translationNotes:

- **All the earth** - This is a generalization. AT: “People from everywhere” or “People from many different places” (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **sought the presence of Solomon** - The presence of the person is a metonym for being able to speak and listen to the person. AT: “sought an audience with Solomon” or “wanted to visit Solomon” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **to hear his wisdom, which God had put in his heart** - The heart is a metonym for what a person thinks and is spoken of as if it were a container. The abstract noun “wisdom” is spoken of as if it were an object that could be put in a container and can be translated as an adjective. It can be a metonym for either the person or the words the person speaks. AT: “to hear his wisdom, which God had given him” or “to hear how wise God had enabled him to be” or “to hear him speak the wise words that God had enabled him to speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 10 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 10:26-27

### UDB:

<sup>26</sup> Solomon acquired 1,400 chariots and twelve thousand men who rode on the horses. Solomon put some of them in Jerusalem and some of them in other cities where he kept his chariots. <sup>27</sup> During the years that Solomon was king, silver became as common in Jerusalem as stones, and lumber from cedar trees in the foothills of Judah were as plentiful as lumber from fig trees.

### ULB:

<sup>26</sup> Solomon gathered together chariots and horsemen. He had 1,400 chariots and twelve thousand horsemen that he stationed in the chariot cities and with himself in Jerusalem. <sup>27</sup> The king had silver in Jerusalem, as much as the stones on the ground. He made cedar wood to be as abundant as the sycamore fig trees that are in the lowlands.

### translationWords:

- [chariot](#)
- [horsemen](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [fig](#)

### translationNotes:

- **1,400 chariots and twelve thousand horsemen** - “1,400 chariots and 12,000 horsemen” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **The king had silver in Jerusalem, as much as the stones on the ground** - The narrator uses hyperbole to emphasize the great amount of silver that was in Jerusalem. AT: “The king had so much silver in Jerusalem, it was like there was as much silver as there was stones on the ground” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 10 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 10:28-29

### UDB:

<sup>28</sup> Solomon's agents bought horses and supervised the bringing of them into Israel from the areas of Egypt and Cilicia that were famous for breeding horses. <sup>29</sup> In Egypt they bought chariots and horses. They paid six and one-half kilograms of silver for each chariot and one and three-fifth kilograms of silver for each horse. They brought them to Israel. Then they sold many of them to the kings of the Hittite people group and the kings of Aram.

### ULB:

<sup>28</sup> Solomon owned horses that had been bought from Egypt and Cilicia. The king's merchants purchased them in herds, each herd at a price. <sup>29</sup> Chariots were purchased out of Egypt for six hundred shekels of silver each, and horses for 150 shekels each. Many of these were then sold to all the kings of the Hittites and Aram.

### translationWords:

- Solomon
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Cilicia
- king
- flock, herd
- silver
- Hittite
- Aram, Aramean, Aramaic

### translationNotes:

- **that had been bought from Egypt** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "that his merchants had bought from people in Egypt" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Chariots were purchased** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "His merchants purchased chariots" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **six hundred shekels of silver ... 150 shekels** - A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. AT: "about 6.6 kilograms of silver ... about 1.7 kilograms" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))
- **six hundred shekels of silver** - "600 shekels of silver" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Many of these were then sold** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "His merchants then sold many of these" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 10 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 11 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This is the end of the story of Solomon. (Chapters 1-11)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Intermarriage with Gentiles

God had told the people of Israel in Moses's law never to marry women from the Gentile nations. But Solomon married many women from Gentile countries. This was because their religious beliefs would negatively affect Israel. Solomon, the wisest man, became a fool and his wives persuaded him to worship foolish idols. God became angry and warned he would take away ten tribes from the kingdom of his son. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 11:01 Notes](#)

**1 Kings 11:1-2****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> King Solomon married many foreign women. First he married the daughter of the king of Egypt. He also married women from the Heth people group and from the Moab, Ammon, and Edom people groups, and from the city of Sidon. <sup>2</sup> He married them even though Yahweh had commanded the Israelite people saying, “Do not marry people from those areas, because if you do that, they will surely persuade you to worship the gods that they worship!”

**ULB:**

**11** <sup>1</sup> Now King Solomon loved many foreign women: the daughter of Pharaoh and women of the Moabites, Ammonites, Edomites, Sidonians, and Hittites—<sup>2</sup> nations concerning which Yahweh had said to the people of Israel, “You will not go among them to marry, neither will they come among you, for they will certainly turn your heart to their gods.” But Solomon loved these women.

**translationWords:**

- king
- Solomon
- love
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Sidon, Sidonians
- Hittite
- nation
- Yahweh
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- turn, turn away, turn back
- heart
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess

**translationNotes:**

- **Now King Solomon** - The word “Now” is used here to mark a break in the main storyline where the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.



- **Moabites, Ammonites, Edomites, Sidonians, and Hittites** - These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **turn your heart to their gods** - To “turn someone’s heart” is to convince that person to change his affection. AT: “persuade you to worship the gods that they worship” (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 11:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> Solomon married seven hundred women who were kings' daughters. He also had three hundred wives who were his slaves. And his wives caused him to turn away from worshiping God. <sup>4</sup> By the time that Solomon became old, they had persuaded him to worship the gods from their countries. He was not completely dedicated to Yahweh his God like his father David had been.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Solomon had seven hundred royal wives and three hundred concubines. His wives turned his heart away. <sup>4</sup> For when Solomon grew old, his wives turned away his heart after other gods; his heart was not fully surrendered to Yahweh his God, as was the heart of David his father.

### translationWords:

- [royal](#)
- [concubine](#)
- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)

### translationNotes:

- **seven hundred royal wives and three hundred concubines** - “700 royal wives and 300 concubines” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **turned his heart away** - To “turn someone’s heart” is to convince that person to change his affection. See how you translated a similar phrase in [11:01](#). AT: “turned his heart away from Yahweh” or “persuaded him to stop worshiping Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **his heart was not fully surrendered ... as was the heart of David** - To “surrender” your heart refers to giving total allegiance and affection. AT: “he was not fully devoted ... as was David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 11:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Solomon worshiped Asherah, the goddess that the people of Sidon worshiped, and he worshiped Milcom, the disgusting god that the Ammon people group worshiped. <sup>6</sup> Thus Solomon did many things that Yahweh said were evil. He did not conduct his life as his father David had done; he did not conduct his life as Yahweh wanted him to.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> For Solomon followed Ashtoreth, the goddess of the Sidonians, and he followed Milcom, the disgusting idol of the Ammonites. <sup>6</sup> Solomon did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh; he did not fully follow Yahweh, as David his father had done.

### translationWords:

- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Ashtoreth ... Milcom** - These are the names of false gods. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Sidonians** - This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **he followed Milcom** - “Milcom” is perhaps another name for the idol “Molech.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - The phrase, “in the sight of” refers to someone’s opinion. AT: “what Yahweh considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 11:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> On the hill to the east of Jerusalem he built a place to worship Chemosh, the disgusting god that the Moab people group worshiped, and a place to worship Molech, the disgusting god that the Ammon people group worshiped. <sup>8</sup> He also built places where all his foreign wives could burn incense and offer sacrifices to the gods from their own countries.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> Then Solomon built a high place for Chemosh, the disgusting idol of Moab, on a hill east of Jerusalem, and also for Molech, the disgusting idol of the people of Ammon. <sup>8</sup> He also built high places for all his foreign wives, who burned incense and sacrificed to their gods at them.

### translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [high places](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Molech, Moloch](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [incense](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [false god, foreign god, god, goddess](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Chemosh ... Molech** - These are the names of false gods. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **sacrificed to their gods at them** - Here the words “at them” refer to the shrines that Solomon built.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 11:9-10

### UDB:

**9-10** Even though Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites worshiped, had appeared to Solomon two times, and had commanded him to not worship foreign gods, Solomon refused to obey Yahweh. So Yahweh was angry with Solomon.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> Yahweh was angry with Solomon, because his heart had turned away from him, the God of Israel, even though he had appeared to him twice <sup>10</sup> and commanded him about this very thing, that he should not go after other gods. But Solomon did not obey what Yahweh commanded.

### translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [heart](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)

### translationNotes:

- **his heart had turned away from him** - The words “his heart had turned” refer to his having changed allegiance and affection. See how you translated a similar phrase in [11:01](#). AT: “Solomon had stopped worshiping Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **he had appeared to him twice** - “Yahweh had appeared to Solomon twice”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 11:11-13

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> Yahweh said to him, "You have chosen to disobey the covenant that I made with you and to disobey what I commanded you. So I am certainly not going to allow you to rule all of your kingdom. I am going to allow one of your officials to rule. <sup>12</sup> But because of what I promised your father David, I will allow you to rule all your kingdom while you are still living. After you die, I will not allow your son to rule the whole kingdom. <sup>13</sup> But I will not stop him from ruling some of the kingdom. I will allow him to rule one tribe, because of what I promised to David, who served me well, and because I want David's descendants to rule in Jerusalem, where my temple is located."

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> Therefore Yahweh said to Solomon, "Because you have done this and have not kept the covenant and my statutes that I have commanded you, I will surely tear the kingdom from you and give it to your servant. <sup>12</sup> However, for David your father's sake, I will not do it in your lifetime, but I will tear it out of the hand of your son. <sup>13</sup> Yet I will not tear away all the kingdom; I will give one tribe to your son for David my servant's sake, and for the sake of Jerusalem, which I have chosen."

### translationWords:

- [covenant](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [son, son of](#)
- [tribe](#)

### translationNotes:

- **tear the kingdom from you** - To "tear from" is to forcefully remove. This is like a person tears apart a piece of cloth. AT: "forcefully take the kingdom from you" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the hand of your son** - The word "hand" refers to control, authority and power. AT: "your son's control" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 11 General Notes
- 1 Kings 11 Translation Questions

## 1 Kings 11:14-17

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> Yahweh caused Hadad, from the family of the kings in the Edom people group, to rebel against Solomon. **15-16** What happened was that previously, when David's army had conquered Edom, his army commander Joab had gone there to help bury the Israelite soldiers who had been killed in the battle. Joab and his army remained in Edom for six months, and during that time they killed all the males of that area. <sup>17</sup> Hadad was a young child at that time, and he had escaped to Egypt, along with some of his father's servants from Edom.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> Then Yahweh raised up an adversary to Solomon, Hadad the Edomite. He was from the royal family of Edom. <sup>15</sup> When David was in Edom, Joab the captain of the army had gone up to bury the dead, every man who had been killed in Edom. <sup>16</sup> Joab and all Israel remained there six months until he had killed every male in Edom. <sup>17</sup> But Hadad was taken with other Edomites by his father's servants into Egypt, since Hadad was still a little child.

### translationWords:

- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- adversary, enemy
- Solomon
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- royal
- family
- Joab
- bury, buried, burial
- death, die, dead
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Egypt, Egyptian

### translationNotes:

- **Hadad** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **When David was in Edom ... since Hadad was still a little child** - This is background material that happened long before.
- **Joab and all Israel** - The words "all Israel" refer to the army of Israel. AT: "Joab and all of the Israelite army" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **But Hadad was taken with other Edomites by his father's servants** - This can be stated in active form. "But the servants of Hadad's father took him with other Edomites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 11:18-19

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> They went to the region of Midian, and then they went to the desert area at Paran. Some other men joined them there. Then they all traveled to Egypt and went to the king of Egypt. The king gave Hadad some land and ordered his servants to give him some food regularly. <sup>19</sup> The king liked Hadad. As a result he gave him the sister of his own wife, Queen Tahpenes, to be Hadad's wife.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> They left Midian and came to Paran, from where they took men with them to Egypt, to Pharaoh king of Egypt, who gave him a house and land and food. <sup>19</sup> Hadad found great favor in the sight of Pharaoh, so that Pharaoh gave him a wife, his own wife's sister, the sister of Tahpenes the queen.

### translationWords:

- [Midian, Midianites](#)
- [Paran](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [queen](#)

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This section continues the background information that began in [11:15](#).
- **They left Midian** - Here the word "They" refers to Hadad and the other Edomites mentioned in [11:17](#).
- **Midian ... Paran ... Egypt** - These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Tahpenes** - This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 11:20-22****UDB:**

<sup>20</sup> Later Hadad's wife gave birth to a son named Genubath. The sister of Tahpenes raised him in the palace, where he lived with the king's sons.

<sup>21</sup> While Hadad was in Egypt, he heard that David had died, and that Joab, the commander of David's army, was also dead. So he said to the king of Egypt, "Please allow me to return to my own country."

<sup>22</sup> But the king said to him, "Why do you want to go back to your country? Is there something that you lack that you want me to give to you?" Hadad replied, "No, but please just allow me to go." So the king allowed him to leave, and he returned to his own country and became the king of Edom.

**ULB:**

<sup>20</sup> The sister of Tahpenes gave birth to Hadad's son. They named him Genubath. Tahpenes raised him in Pharaoh's palace. So Genubath lived in Pharaoh's palace among the children of Pharaoh.

<sup>21</sup> While he was in Egypt, Hadad heard that David laid down with his ancestors and that Joab the captain of the host was dead, Hadad said to Pharaoh, "Let me depart, so I may go to my own country." <sup>22</sup> Then Pharaoh said to him, "But what have you lacked with me, that you now seek to go to your own country?" Hadad answered, "Nothing. Please let me go."

**translationWords:**

- [palace](#)
- [David](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Tahpenes** - This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Genubath ... Hadad** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **David laid down with his ancestors** - This is a polite way of saying David was dead. AT: "David died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 11:23-25

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> God also caused another man named Rezon son of Eliada, to rebel against Solomon. Rezon had run away from his master, King Hadadezer of the area of Zobah, north of Damascus. <sup>24</sup> Rezon then became the leader of a group of outlaws. That happened after David's army had defeated Hadadezer and had also killed all his soldiers. Rezon and his men went to Damascus and started to live there, and the people there appointed him to be their king. <sup>25</sup> All during the time that Solomon was alive, while Rezon was ruling not only Damascus but all of Aram, he was an enemy of Israel and caused trouble for Israel like Hadad did.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> God also raised up another adversary to Solomon, Rezon son of Eliada, who had fled from his master Hadadezer king of Zobah. <sup>24</sup> Rezon gathered men to himself and became captain over a small force, when David defeated the men of Zobah. Rezon's men went to Damascus and lived there, and Rezon controlled Damascus. <sup>25</sup> He was an enemy of Israel all the days of Solomon, along with the trouble that Hadad caused. Rezon abhorred Israel and reigned over Aram.

### translationWords:

- God
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- adversary, enemy
- Solomon
- lord, master, sir
- king
- Damascus
- life, live, living, alive
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- reign
- Aram, Aramean, Aramaic

### translationNotes:

- **Rezon ... Eliada ... Hadadezer** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Zobah ... Damascus ... Aram** - These are the name of locations. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **when David defeated** - "David" refers to all of David's forces. AT: "when David's army overcame" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

- **all the days of Solomon** - Here the word “days” refers to a period of time and “Solomon” refers to everything under his control. AT: “all the time when Solomon had control” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Rezon abhorred Israel** - “Rezon hated Israel very much”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 11:26-27

### UDB:

<sup>26</sup> Another man who rebelled against Solomon was one of his officials named Jeroboam son of Nebat. He was from the city of Zeredah in the region where the tribe of Ephraim lives. His mother was a widow named Zeruah.

<sup>27</sup> This is what happened. Solomon's workers were filling in the land on the east side of Jerusalem and repairing the walls around the city.

### ULB:

<sup>26</sup> Then Jeroboam son of Nebat, an Ephraimite of Zeredah, an official of Solomon, whose mother's name was Zeruah, a widow, also lifted up his hand against the king. <sup>27</sup> The reason he lifted up his hand against the king was because Solomon built up the place at Millo and repaired the opening in the city wall of David his father.

### translationWords:

- Jeroboam
- Ephraim
- Solomon
- name
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- David
- ancestor, father, forefather

### translationNotes:

- **Jeroboam ... Nebat** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Zeredah ... Millo** - These are the names of locations. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Zeruah** - This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **lifted up his hand against the king** - The word "hand" refers to authority, power and control. The phrase "lifted up against" refers to having opposed someone by using authority, power and control. This is a metonymy used as a common idiom. AT: "rebelled against the king" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **Solomon built up the place at Millo** - Translate "Millo" as in [9:15](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 11 General Notes
- 1 Kings 11 Translation Questions

## 1 Kings 11:28-30

### UDB:

<sup>28</sup> Jeroboam was a very capable young man. So, when Solomon saw that he worked very hard, he appointed him to supervise all the men who were forced to work in the areas where the tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim live.

<sup>29</sup> One day when Jeroboam was walking alone along the road outside of Jerusalem, the prophet Ahijah from the city of Shiloh met him. Ahijah was wearing a new robe, <sup>30</sup> which he took off and tore into twelve pieces.

### ULB:

<sup>28</sup> Jeroboam was a mighty man of valor. Solomon saw that the young man was industrious, so he gave him command over all the labor of the house of Joseph. <sup>29</sup> At that time, when Jeroboam went out of Jerusalem, the prophet Ahijah the Shilonite found him on the road. Now Ahijah had dressed in a new garment and the two men were alone in the field. <sup>30</sup> Then Ahijah grabbed hold of the new garment that was on him and tore it into twelve pieces.

### translationWords:

- mighty, might
- commander, command
- labor, laborer
- house
- Joseph (OT)
- Jerusalem
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Ahijah
- Shiloh

### translationNotes:

- **a mighty man of valor** - Possible meanings are 1) “a great warrior” or 2) “a very capable man” (UDB) or 3) “a wealthy and influential man.”
- **he gave him command** - “he made him commander”
- **all the labor** - The word “labor” refers to the work that Solomon commanded the people to do for his government. This is a metonymy. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the house of Joseph** - This refers to the descendants of Joseph who were the people groups of Ephraim and Manasseh. This is a metonymy. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Ahijah** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Shilonite** - The Shilonites are a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 11:31-33****UDB:**

<sup>31</sup> He said to Jeroboam, "Take ten of these pieces for yourself, because Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, says to you, 'I am going to tear the kingdom from Solomon, and I am going to enable you to become the ruler of ten of the tribes of Israel. <sup>32</sup> Solomon's descendants will still rule one tribe, because of what I promised David, a man who served me very well, and because of Jerusalem, the city that I have chosen from all the cities in Israel to be the city where my people will worship me. <sup>33</sup> I am going to do this because Solomon has rejected me and has been worshipping Asherah, the goddess that the people of Sidon worship, Chemosh, the god that the Moab people group worships, and Milcom, the god that the Ammon people group worships. He has not conducted his life as I wanted him to. He has not obeyed my statutes and decrees, as his father David did.

**ULB:**

<sup>31</sup> He said to Jeroboam, "Take ten pieces, for Yahweh, the God of Israel, says, 'Look, I will tear the kingdom out of the hand of Solomon and I will give ten tribes to you <sup>32</sup> (but Solomon will have one tribe, for my servant David's sake and for Jerusalem's sake—the city that I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel), <sup>33</sup> because they have forsaken me and have worshiped Ashtoreth the goddess of the Sidonians, Chemosh the god of Moab, and Milcom the god of the people of Ammon. They have not walked in my ways, to do what is right in my eyes, and to keep my statutes and my decrees, as did David his father.

**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- kingdom
- tribe
- servant, slave, slavery
- Jerusalem
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- worship
- Sidon, Sidonians
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites
- walk
- statute, statutes
- decree

**translationNotes:**

- **He said** - Here the word “He” refers to Ahijah.
- **tear the kingdom out** - Here “tear ... out” is a metaphor that refers to the action of forcefully removing. This is like a person tears apart a piece of cloth. AT: “forcefully take the kingdom out” See how you translated this phrase in [11:11](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the hand of Solomon** - Here “hand” is a metonym that refers to a person’s authority, control and power. AT: “Solomon’s control” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Solomon will have** - The name “Solomon” here is a metonym referring to his descendants. AT: “Solomon’s sons will have” or “Solomon’s descendants will have” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Ashtoreth ... Chemosh ... Milcom** - These are the names of false gods. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Sidonians ... Moab ... Ammon** - These are the names of locations and the people groups that live there. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **what is right in my eyes** - “Eyes” here is a metonym for someone’s opinion or idea. This is a commonly used idiom. AT: “what I consider to be right” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 11:34-36

### UDB:

<sup>34</sup> But I will not take the entire kingdom away from him. I will enable him to rule Judah all during the years that he is alive. I will do that because of what I promised to do for David, whom I chose to be the king, and who served me well, and who always obeyed my commandments and laws. <sup>35</sup> But I will take the other ten tribes of his kingdom and give them to you to rule. <sup>36</sup> I will allow Solomon's son to rule one tribe, in order that descendants of David will always rule in Jerusalem, the city that I have chosen to be the place where my people worship me.

### ULB:

<sup>34</sup> However, I will not take the whole kingdom out of Solomon's hand. Instead, I have made him ruler all the days of his life, for David my servant's sake whom I chose, the one who kept my commandments and my statutes. <sup>35</sup> But I will take the kingdom out of his son's hand and I will give it to you, ten tribes. <sup>36</sup> I will give one tribe to Solomon's son, so that David my servant may always have a lamp before me in Jerusalem, the city in which I have chosen to put my name.

### translationWords:

- Solomon
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- ruler, rulers, rule
- David
- command, to command, commandment
- son, son of
- lamp
- name

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ahijah continues to tell Jeroboam what Yahweh has said.
- **I will not take** - Here the word "I" refers to Yahweh.
- **out of Solomon's hand** - Here the word "hand" is a metonym that refers to a person's authority, control and power. AT: "out of Solomon's control" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will give it to you** - Here the word "you" refers to Jeroboam.
- **may always have a lamp before me** - The word "lamp" is a metonym that refers to a person's influence and guidance. AT: "will always have a descendant to rule as an influence and a guide for obeying my covenant with David's family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 11:37-39

### UDB:

<sup>37</sup> I will enable you to become the king of Israel, and you will rule over all the territory that you want to. <sup>38</sup> If you obey all that I command you to do, and conduct your life as I want you to, and if you do what I say is right by obeying my laws and commandments like David did, I will help you. I will make sure that your descendants will rule after you die, like I promised to do for David. <sup>39</sup> Because of Solomon's sins, I will punish David's descendants, but I will not continue to punish them forever.”

### ULB:

<sup>37</sup> I will take you, and you will rule to fulfill all that you desire, and you will be king over Israel. <sup>38</sup> If you listen to all that I command you, and if you walk in my ways and do what is right in my eyes, to keep my statutes and my commandments, as David my servant did, then I will be with you and will build you a sure house, as I built for David, and will give Israel to you. <sup>39</sup> I will punish the descendants of David, but not forever.”

### translationWords:

- fulfill
- king
- house
- punish, punishment
- descendant, descended from
- forever

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Ahijah continues to tell Jeroboam what Yahweh has said.
- **I will take you** - Here the word “I” refers to Yahweh and the word “you” refers to Jeroboam.
- **what is right in my eyes** - The word “eyes” here is a metonym for someone’s opinion or idea. This is a commonly used idiom. See how you translated this phrase in [11:33](#). (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **build you a sure house** - The clause “build a house” is a metaphor for establishing descendants from that time on. AT: “establish for you a lasting kingdom” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 11 General Notes
- 1 Kings 11 Translation Questions

**1 Kings 11:40****UDB:**

<sup>40</sup> Solomon found out what Ahijah told Jeroboam, so he tried to kill Jeroboam. But Jeroboam escaped and went to Egypt. He went to Shishak, the king of Egypt, and stayed with him until after Solomon died.

**ULB:**

<sup>40</sup> So Solomon tried to kill Jeroboam. But Jeroboam got up and fled into Egypt, to Shishak king of Egypt, and he remained in Egypt until the death of Solomon.

**translationWords:**

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Shishak** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 11:41-43****UDB:**

<sup>41</sup> A record of all the other things that Solomon did, and all the wise things that he said, was written in the Book of the Acts of Solomon. <sup>42</sup> He was king in Jerusalem and ruled over all of Israel for forty years. <sup>43</sup> Then Solomon died and was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. Then his son Rehoboam became the king.

**ULB:**

<sup>41</sup> As for the other matters concerning Solomon, all that he did and his wisdom, are they not written in The Book of the Events of Solomon? <sup>42</sup> Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel for forty years. <sup>43</sup> He slept with his ancestors and he was buried in the city of David his father. Rehoboam his son became king in his place.

**translationWords:**

- Solomon
- wise, wisdom
- reign
- Jerusalem
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- sleep, asleep, fall asleep
- city of David
- David
- ancestor, father, forefather
- Rehoboam

**translationNotes:**

- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of Solomon?** - This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. AT: “you can find them in The Book of the Events of Solomon.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **The Book of the Events of Solomon** - This book no longer exists.
- **He slept with his ancestors and he was buried** - The clause “slept with his ancestors” is a metaphor that expresses as a euphemism the death of a person in more gentle words. AT: “He died and he was buried with his ancestors” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))
- **he was buried** - This can be expressed in active form. AT: “people buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 11 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 12 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### Civil war

This chapter explains how the united kingdom of Israel was split into the two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. This is sometimes called a “civil war.”

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Israel splits

God’s warning to Solomon came true. In spite of his famous wealth, Solomon had over-taxed his own people and forced them to work for free. When the people requested that King Rehoboam reduce taxes and forced labor, he said that he would be harsher than his father. This caused the ten northern tribes to revolt and appoint Jeroboam as their king. These northern tribes are now called the kingdom of “Israel.” Only Judah and Benjamin stayed with Rehoboam. They are called Judah. (See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#))

#### Jeroboam introduces calf worship

Jeroboam made a terrible mistake. He was afraid that if the people continued to go to Jerusalem to worship in the temple, they would want to return to Rehoboam as their king. So he made two shrines with calves made of gold for the people to worship. This eventually caused the destruction of his whole family. The kingdom of Israel continued worshiping the idols until they were taken slaves by the Assyrians. The northern tribes were unable to truly worship Yahweh without going to Jerusalem in the kingdom of Judah.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

The people used the metaphor of “yoke” for oppressive government: “Your father made our yoke difficult. Now then, make your father’s hard work easier, and lighten the heavy yoke that he put on us” But Rehoboam promised to increase their oppression with three metaphors: “My little finger is thicker than my father’s waist. So now, although my father burdened you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke. My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions.” (See: [Metaphor](#), [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#) and [promise](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 12:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Kings 12:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> All the people of northern Israel went to the city of Shechem in order to appoint Rehoboam to be their king. So Rehoboam also went there. <sup>2</sup> When Jeroboam, who was still in Egypt, heard about that, he returned from Egypt to Israel.

### ULB:

12 <sup>1</sup> Rehoboam went to Shechem, for all Israel was coming to Shechem to make him king. <sup>2</sup> It happened that Jeroboam son of Nebat heard of this (for he was still in Egypt, where he had fled from the presence of King Solomon), for Jeroboam had settled down in Egypt.[1]Some versions have, *then Jeroboam returned from Egypt*

### translationWords:

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Shechem](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [king](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Solomon](#)

### translationNotes:

- **all Israel was coming** - Here “Israel” is a metonym for all men of Israel capable of fighting. “All Israel” is an exaggeration which means almost all the men of Israel. AT: “all the men of Israel were coming” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **It happened that** - This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **Jeroboam ... Nebat** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 12:3-5

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> The leaders of the northern tribes summoned him, and they went together to talk to Rehoboam. They said to him, <sup>4</sup> “Your father Solomon forced us to work very hard, and if you allow us to work less, we will serve you faithfully.”

<sup>5</sup> He replied, “Go away, and come back three days from now and I will give you my answer.” So those leaders and Jeroboam left.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> So they sent and called him, and Jeroboam and all the assembly of Israel came and said to Rehoboam, <sup>4</sup> “Your father made our yoke heavy. Now make lighter the hard work of your father and make lighter the heavy yoke that he put on us, and we will serve you.” <sup>5</sup> Rehoboam said to them, “Go away for three days, then come back to me.” So the people went away.

### translationWords:

- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [call, calling, called, call out](#)
- [assembly, assemble](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [yoke](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [serve, service](#)

### translationNotes:

- **called him** - Here the word “him” refers to Jeroboam.
- **made our yoke heavy** - A heavy yoke is a metaphor for very difficult labor and requirements. AT: “treated us cruelly” or “forced us to work very hard” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 12:6-7****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> Then King Rehoboam consulted his older men who had advised his father Solomon while he was still living. He asked them, “What should I say to answer these men?”

<sup>7</sup> They replied, “If you want to serve these people well, speak kindly to them when you reply to them. If you do that, they will always serve you faithfully.”

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> King Rehoboam consulted with the old men who had stood before Solomon his father while he was alive, and he said, “How do you advise me to answer this people?” <sup>7</sup> They spoke to him and said, “If you will be a servant today to these people and serve them, and answer them by saying good words to them, then they will always be your servants.”

**translationWords:**

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [word](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **the old men who had stood before Solomon** - To “stand before” is an idiom for serving the king in his presence. AT: “the old men who counseled Solomon” or “the old men who attended to Solomon” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 12:8-9

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> But he ignored what the older men advised him to do. Instead, he consulted the younger men who had grown up with him, who were now his advisors. <sup>9</sup> He said to them, “What do you say that I should answer the men who are asking me to reduce the work that my father required from them?”

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> But Rehoboam ignored the advice that the old men had given him and he consulted with the young men who had grown up with him and stood before him. <sup>9</sup> He said to them, “What advice do you give me that we may answer the people who spoke to me and said, ‘Lighten the yoke that your father put on us?’”

### translationWords:

- [Rehoboam](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Lighten the yoke that your father put on us** - To “lighten the yoke” is a metaphor to represent lifting of the burden. AT: “Do not treat us as cruelly as your father did” or “Do not force us to work as hard as your father did” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 12:10-11

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> They replied, "This is what you should tell them: 'My little finger is thicker than my father's waist. <sup>11</sup> What I mean is that my father required you to work hard. But I will make those loads heavier. It was as though my father whipped you, but I will whip you with scorpions.'"

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> The young men who had grown up with Rehoboam spoke to him, saying, "Speak to these people who told you that your father Solomon made their yoke heavy but that you must make it lighter. You should say to them, 'My little finger is thicker than my father's waist. <sup>11</sup> So now, although my father burdened you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke. My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions.'"

### translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [yoke](#)
- [burden](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)

### translationNotes:

- **My little finger is thicker than my father's waist** - This metaphor means that Rehoboam is more cruel and intimidating than his father. AT: "What I will do to make your burden heavier is much more than what my father put on you" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions** - This metaphor means that the punishment Rehoboam plans to give will be worse than what his father gave. AT: "My father used whips to force you to work but I will use even crueler punishment" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **punish you with scorpions** - The word "scorpions" may refer to 1) a whip with sharp metal barbs on the end or 2) a spider-like creature that has a poisonous sting.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 12:12-14

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> So three days later, Jeroboam and all the leaders came to Rehoboam again, which is what he had told them to do. <sup>13</sup> The king ignored the advice of the older men and spoke harshly to the Israelite leaders. <sup>14</sup> He told them what the younger men had advised. He said, “My father put heavy burdens of work on you, but I will put heavier burdens on you. It was as though he beat you with whips, but I will beat you with scorpions!”

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> So Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam on the third day, as the king had instructed when he said, “Come back to me on the third day.” <sup>13</sup> The king answered the people roughly and ignored the advice of the old men that they had given him. <sup>14</sup> He spoke to them following the advice of the young men; he said, “My father burdened you with a heavy yoke, but I will add to your yoke. My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions.”

### translationWords:

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [king](#)

### translationNotes:

- **burdened you with a heavy yoke** - A heavy yoke is a metaphor for very difficult labor and requirements. See how you translated this in [12:4](#). AT: “treated you cruelly” or “forced you to work very hard” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions** - This metaphor means that the punishment Rehoboam plans to give will be worse than what his father gave. See how you translated this in [12:11](#). AT: “My father used whips to force you to work but I will use even crueler punishment” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 12:15

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> So the king did not pay any attention to the Israelite leaders. Now all this happened in order that what Yahweh wanted would occur, what he had told the prophet Ahijah about Jeroboam becoming king of the ten tribes.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> So the king did not listen to the people, for it was a turn of events brought about by Yahweh, that he might carry out his word that he had spoken by Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam son of Nebat.

### translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [word](#)
- [Ahijah](#)
- [Shiloh](#)

### translationNotes:

- **it was a turn of events brought about by Yahweh** - This is an idiom and can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh caused things to happen like this” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **Ahijah ... Jeroboam ... Nebat** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Shilonite** - This is the name of a people group from the town of Shiloh. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 12:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> When the Israelite leaders realized that the king did not pay any attention to what they said, they shouted,

”We do not want anything to do with this descendant of King David!

We will not pay attention to what this grandson of Jesse says!

You people of Israel, let us go home!

As for this descendant of David, he can rule his own tribe!”

So the Israelite leaders returned to their homes. <sup>17</sup> And after that, the only Israelite people whom Rehoboam ruled over were those who lived in the territory of the tribe of Judah.

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> When all Israel saw that the king did not listen to them, the people answered him and said,

”What share do we have in David?

We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse!

Go to your tents, Israel.

Now see to your own house, David.”

So Israel went back to their tents. <sup>17</sup> But as for the people of Israel who lived in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam became king over them.

**translationWords:**

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- David
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- Jesse
- tent
- house
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Rehoboam

**translationNotes:**

- **all Israel** - Here “Israel” is a metonym for all men of Israel capable of fighting. “All Israel” is an exaggeration which means almost all the men of Israel. AT: “all the men of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

- **What share do we have in David?** - “Share” is a metonym meaning a part, involvement, or interest. This question can be translated as a simple statement. AT: “We will have no part in the family of David.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse** - “Son of Jesse” is a metonym for David, a son of Jesse. “Inheritance” is a metonym for the part left for these people from David’s successes. AT: “We will have nothing to do with the descendants of Jesse” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Go to your tents, Israel** - “Tents” is a metonym representing a person’s place of residence. AT: “Go to your homes, people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Now see to your own house, David** - “House” is a metonym for David’s lineage of power and prestige. AT: “Now take care of your own kingdom, descendant of David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 12:18-19

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> Then King Rehoboam went with Adoniram to talk to the Israelite people. Adoniram was the man who supervised all the men who were forced to work for Rehoboam. But the Israelite people killed him by throwing stones at him. When that happened, King Rehoboam quickly got in his chariot and escaped to Jerusalem. <sup>19</sup> Ever since that time, the people of the northern tribes of Israel have been rebelling against the descendants of King David.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> Then King Rehoboam sent Adoram, who was over the forced laborers, but all Israel stoned him to death with stones. King Rehoboam fled quickly in his chariot to Jerusalem. <sup>19</sup> So Israel has been in rebellion against the house of David to this day.

### translationWords:

- labor, laborer
- stone, stoning
- death, die, dead
- king
- chariot
- Jerusalem
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion

### translationNotes:

- **Adoram** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **all Israel** - Here “Israel” is a metonym for the people of Israel. “All Israel” is an exaggeration which means almost all the people of Israel. AT: “all the people of Israel who were there” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **the house of David** - Here “house” is a metonym that represents family or descendants. AT: “the kings descended from David” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **to this day** - “Day” is a metonym for a period of time, a duration. Here it refers to the time that the writer was actually writing this. AT: “to the time of the writer” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 12:20

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> When the Israelite people heard that Jeroboam had returned from Egypt, they invited him to come to a meeting, and there they appointed him to be the king of Israel. Only the people of the tribe of Judah continued to be loyal to the kings descended from King David.

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> It happened that when all Israel heard that Jeroboam had returned, they sent and called him to their assembly and made him king over all Israel. There was no one who followed the family of David, except only the tribe of Judah.

### translationWords:

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [assembly, assemble](#)
- [king](#)
- [family](#)
- [tribe](#)

### translationNotes:

- **It happened that** - This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **when all Israel heard** - “All Israel” is hyperbole to mean the capable men of Israel who represent the rest of the people by a metonym. AT: “when all the leaders of Israel heard” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **king over all Israel** - “Israel” implicitly means the northern ten tribes that rebelled against Rehoboam. AT: “king over all of the 10 tribes of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the family of David** - “David’s descendants”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 12:21

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> When Rehoboam arrived in Jerusalem, he gathered 180,000 of the best soldiers from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. He wanted them to fight against the northern tribes of Israel and defeat them, in order that he could rule all the tribes of his kingdom again.

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> When Rehoboam arrived in Jerusalem, he assembled all the house of Judah and the tribe of Benjamin; there were 180,000 chosen men who were soldiers, to fight against the house of Israel, to restore the kingdom to Rehoboam son of Solomon.

### translationWords:

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [house](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [son, son of](#)
- [Solomon](#)

### translationNotes:

- **all the house of Judah and the tribe of Benjamin** - Here “house” is a metonym that represents a tribe or descendants. And, here “tribe” refers specifically to the soldiers from those tribes. AT: “all the soldiers from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the house of Israel** - Here “house” represents the kingdom made up of the 10 northern tribes of Israel. AT: “the kingdom of Israel” or “the people of the northern tribes of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 12:22-24

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> But God spoke to the prophet Shemaiah and said this to him: <sup>23</sup> "Go and tell this to Solomon's son Rehoboam, the king of Judah, and to all the people of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin and the people from the northern tribe who live in Judah: <sup>24</sup> 'Yahweh says that you must not go to fight against your own relatives, the people of Israel. All of you must go home. What has happened is what Yahweh wanted to happen.'" So Shemaiah went and told that to them, and they all listened what Yahweh had commanded them to do, and they went home.

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> But the word of God came to Shemaiah, the man of God; it said, <sup>23</sup> "Speak to Rehoboam son of Solomon, king of Judah, to all the house of Judah and Benjamin, and to the rest of the people; say, <sup>24</sup> 'Yahweh says this: You must not attack or fight against your brothers the people of Israel. Each man must return to his home, for this thing has been made to happen by me.'" So they listened to the word of Yahweh and turned back and went their way, and they obeyed his word.

### translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- man of God
- Yahweh
- brother
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- obey, obedient, obedience

### translationNotes:

- **the word of God came ... it said** - This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. AT: "God spoke this message ... and he said" or "God spoke these words ... and he said" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Shemaiah** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the man of God** - The expression "man of God" is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. AT: "the man who belongs to God" or "the prophet of God"
- **all the house of Judah and Benjamin** - Here "house" is a metonym that represents a tribe or descendants. AT: "all the people from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **your brothers the people of Israel** - The words "brothers" and "people of Israel" are a doublet that refer to the men of the ten northern tribes and emphasize the family relationship between them and the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **for this thing has been made to happen by me** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "because I have made this thing happen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 12:25-27

### UDB:

<sup>25</sup> Then Jeroboam's workers built walls around the city of Shechem in the hill country where the descendants of Ephraim lived, and he ruled from there for a while. He and his workers then left there and went to the city of Peniel, and they built walls around that city.

26-27 Then Jeroboam said to himself, "If my people continue to go to Jerusalem and offer sacrifices to Yahweh at the temple there, soon they will again become loyal to Rehoboam, the king of Judah, and they will kill me."

### ULB:

<sup>25</sup> Then Jeroboam built Shechem in the hill country of Ephraim, and lived there. He went out from there and built Peniel. <sup>26</sup> Jeroboam thought in his heart, "Now the kingdom will return to the house of David. <sup>27</sup> If these people go up to offer sacrifices in the temple of Yahweh at Jerusalem, then the heart of these people will turn again to their master, to Rehoboam king of Judah. They will kill me and return to Rehoboam king of Judah."

### translationWords:

- Jeroboam
- Shechem
- Ephraim
- life, live, living, alive
- heart
- David
- sacrifice, offering
- temple
- lord, master, sir
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah

### translationNotes:

- **thought in his heart** - "Heart" is a metonym for a person's inner consciousness, thoughts, motivation, or feelings. AT: "thought to himself" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the house of David** - Here "house" is a metonym representing family or descendants. AT: "the kings descended from David" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **If these people go up** - The words "these people" refer to the people of the northern ten tribes of Israel.

- **the heart of these people** - “Heart” is a metonym for the people’s allegiance and affection. AT: “the allegiance of these people” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **turn again to their master, to Rehoboam king of Judah ... return to Rehoboam king of Judah** - These phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined to emphasize Jeroboam’s fear that the people would turn again to Rehoboam as king. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 12:28-30

### UDB:

<sup>28</sup> So he consulted his advisors, and then he did what they suggested. He told his workers to make gold statues of two calves. Then he said to the people, “You have been going to Jerusalem to worship for a long time. You are making too big an effort to keep going there. You people of Israel, look! These statues are the gods that brought our ancestors up from Egypt! So you can worship these, here!” <sup>29</sup> He told his workers to place one of the statues in the city of Bethel in the south and one in the city of Dan in the north. <sup>30</sup> So what Jeroboam did caused the people to sin. Some of them went and worshiped the calf at Bethel, and others went and worshiped the other calf at Dan.

### ULB:

<sup>28</sup> So King Jeroboam sought advice and made two calves of gold; he said to the people, “It is too much for you to go up to Jerusalem. Look, these are your gods, Israel, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt.” <sup>29</sup> He set up one in Bethel and the other in Dan. <sup>30</sup> So this act became a sin. The people went to one or the other, all the way to Dan.

### translationWords:

- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- gold
- Jerusalem
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Bethel
- Dan
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### translationNotes:

- **brought you up** - “You” here is a metonym for the ancestors of the people. AT: “brought your ancestors up” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 12:31-32

### UDB:

<sup>31</sup> Moses had declared that only men from the tribe of Levi would be priests, but Jeroboam also told his workers to build places on the hills where they could worship idols, and then he appointed men who were not from the tribe of Levi to be priests for the idols. <sup>32</sup> They had a celebration in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day, like the celebration of living in temporary shelters that occurred in Judah each year. On the altar that they built at Bethel, he offered sacrifices to the gold statues of calves that they had made, and he stationed the priests on the hills where idols were worshiped, where his workers built houses used for idolatry.

### ULB:

<sup>31</sup> Jeroboam made houses on high places and he also made priests from among all the people, who were not among the sons of Levi. <sup>32</sup> Jeroboam ordained a feast in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day of the month, like the feast that is in Judah, and he went up to the altar. He did so at Bethel, sacrificing to the calves that he had made, and he placed in Bethel the priests of the high places he had made.

### translationWords:

- high places
- priest, priesthood
- son, son of
- Levite, Levi
- ordain
- feast
- biblical time: day
- altar

### translationNotes:

- **Jeroboam made houses on high places** - The workers who did this at Jeroboam's commands are represented by the metonym of the name of Jeroboam himself. AT: "Jeroboam's workers made houses on high places" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **houses on high places** - The implied information is that these were houses of worship. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "houses of worship on high places" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **made priests** - "appointed men to be priests"
- **in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day of the month** - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifteenth day is near the beginning of November on Western calendars. AT: "on the fifteenth day of the eighth month" (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

- **went up to the altar** - “Went up” is an idiom for going to a sacred place to worship since these altars were located on high places. AT: “offered sacrifices on the altar” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 12:33

### UDB:

<sup>33</sup> Jeroboam went up to that altar on that day in the eighth month that he himself had chosen. There on that altar he burned incense to be a sacrifice. And he declared that the people should celebrate that festival on that same day every year.

### ULB:

<sup>33</sup> Jeroboam went up to the altar that he had made in Bethel on the fifteenth day in the eighth month, in the month he had planned in his own mind; he ordained a feast for the people of Israel and went up to the altar to burn incense.

### translationWords:

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [mind](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [incense](#)

### translationNotes:

- **went up to the altar** - “Went up” is an idiom for going to a sacred place to worship since these altars were located on high places. AT: “offered sacrifices on the altar” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **in the month he had planned in his own mind** - “in the month that he had determined”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 12 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 13 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter has two parts: The young prophet's warning to Jeroboam (1-10) and the old prophet's deception (11-34). (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Obeying God

People should obey what God tells them to do and not what other people tell them is God's will for them. The story of the young prophet and the old prophet is an example of this. (See: [reward](#) and [will of God](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 13:01 Notes](#)



**1 Kings 13:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> One day a prophet, obeying what Yahweh commanded him to do, went from Judah north to Bethel. He arrived there right at the time that Jeroboam was standing at the altar, ready to burn incense. <sup>2</sup> Saying what Yahweh told him to say, the prophet shouted, “This is what Yahweh says about this altar, ‘I want you to know that some day a descendant of King David will be born. His name will be Josiah, and he will come here. He will slaughter at this altar the priests who are burning incense for sacrifices on the hills in this area, and he will burn the bones of dead people on this altar.’” <sup>3</sup> Then the prophet also said, “This is what will prove to you that Yahweh has said this: This altar will be split apart, and the ashes that are on it will be scattered.”

**ULB:**

**13** <sup>1</sup> A man of God came out of Judah by the word of Yahweh to Bethel. Jeroboam was standing by the altar to burn incense. <sup>2</sup> He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, a son named Josiah will be born to the family of David, and on you he will sacrifice the priests of the high places who now burn incense on you. On you they will burn human bones.’” <sup>3</sup> Then the man of God gave a sign the same day, saying, “This is the sign that Yahweh has spoken: ‘Look, the altar will be split apart, and the ashes on it will be poured out.’”

**translationWords:**

- man of God
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Bethel
- Jeroboam
- altar
- incense
- Yahweh
- son, son of
- Josiah
- David
- sacrifice, offering
- priest, priesthood
- high places
- sign, proof, reminder

**translationNotes:**

- **A man of God came out of Judah by the word of Yahweh to Bethel** - The implied information is that Yahweh sent the man of God to Bethel. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh sent a man of God from Judah to Bethel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **A man of God** - This is another title for a prophet. AT: “A prophet”
- **came out of Judah** - “came from Judah”
- **the word of Yahweh** - Here “word” represents Yahweh’s message. AT: “the message of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **He cried against the altar** - Here “He” refers to the man of God.
- **cried against the altar** - This means he prophesied toward the altar in a loud and condemning voice. AT: “prophesied loudly toward the altar” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Altar, altar** - The prophet spoke to the altar as if it were a person who could hear him. He said this twice for emphasis. (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Personification](#))
- **a son named Josiah will be born to the family of David** - Here the “family of David” refers to the descendants of David. This can be stated in active form. AT: “a descendant of David will have a son named Josiah” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **they will burn** - Here “they” refers to Josiah and the people with him.
- **the altar will be split apart, and the ashes on it will be poured out** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will split the altar apart and the ashes on it will fall to the ground” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 13 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 13:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> When King Jeroboam heard the prophet say that, he pointed his finger at him and said to his servants, “Seize that man!” But immediately the king’s arm became paralyzed, with the result that he could not move it. <sup>5</sup> (The altar split apart, and the ashes spilled out on the ground, which is what the prophet said that Yahweh had predicted would happen.)

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> When the king heard what the man of God said, that he had cried out against the altar at Bethel, Jeroboam reached out with his hand from the altar, saying, “Seize him.” Then the hand with which he had reached out against the man dried up, so that he could not draw it back to himself. <sup>5</sup> (The altar was also split apart and the ashes poured out from the altar, as described by the sign that the man of God had given by the word of Yahweh.)

### translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [seize](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the hand with which he had reached out against the man dried up** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh dried up the hand with which he had reached out against the man” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **dried up** - “withered” or “became paralyzed” (UDB)
- **The altar was also split apart** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh also split the altar apart” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **as described by the sign that the man of God had given by the word of Yahweh** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “as the man of God had described by the word of Yahweh as a sign” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the word of Yahweh** - Here “word” represents Yahweh’s message. AT: “the message of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 13 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 13:6-7

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> Then the king said to the prophet, “Please pray that Yahweh will be merciful to me and heal my arm!” So the prophet prayed, and Yahweh completely healed the king’s arm.

<sup>7</sup> Then the king said to the prophet, “Come home with me and eat some food. And I will also give you a reward for what you have done!”

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> King Jeroboam answered and said to the man of God, “Plead for the favor of Yahweh your God and pray for me, so that my hand may be restored to me again.” So the man of God prayed to Yahweh, and the king’s hand was restored to him again, and it became as it was before. <sup>7</sup> The king said to the man of God, “Come home with me and refresh yourself, and I will give you a reward.”

### translationWords:

- [plead, pleading, plea](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [reward](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Plead for the favor of Yahweh your God** - The abstract noun “favor” can be expressed as a verb. AT: “Plead that Yahweh your God may favor me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **my hand may be restored to me again** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh may restore my hand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the king’s hand was restored to him again, and it became as it was before** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh restored the king’s hand and made it as it was before” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Come home with me and refresh yourself** - The word “yourself” is a reflexive pronoun. AT: “Come home with me and eat some food” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 13 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 13:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> But the prophet replied, "Even if you would promise to give me half of everything that you own, I will not go with you, and I will not eat or drink anything with you here, <sup>9</sup> because Yahweh commanded me not to eat or drink anything here. He also commanded me not to return home on the road on which I came here." <sup>10</sup> So he started to return home, but he did not go on the road on which he came to Bethel. He went on a different road.

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> The man of God said to the king, "Even if you give me half your possessions, I will not go with you, nor will I eat food or drink water in this place, <sup>9</sup> because Yahweh commanded me by his word, 'You will eat no bread nor drink water, nor return by the way that you came.'" <sup>10</sup> So the man of God left another way and did not return to his home by the way that he had come to Bethel.

**translationWords:**

- [God](#)
- [possess, possession](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [word](#)
- [bread](#)
- [Bethel](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **half your possessions** - "half of your house"
- **You will eat no bread nor drink water, nor return by the way that you came** - "Do not eat bread, drink water, or return by the way that you came"
- **left another way** - "went a different way"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 13 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 13:11-13

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> At that time there was an old man living in Bethel who was also a prophet. His sons came and told him what the prophet from Judah had done there on that day, and they also told him what the prophet had said to the king. <sup>12</sup> Their father said, "On which road did he go?" So his sons showed him the road on which the prophet from Judah had gone when he left Bethel. <sup>13</sup> Then he said to his sons, "Put a saddle on my donkey." So they did that, and he got on the donkey.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> Now there was an old prophet living in Bethel, and one of his sons came and told him all the things that the man of God had done that day in Bethel. His sons also told him the words that the man of God had spoken to the king. <sup>12</sup> Their father said to them, "Which way did he go?" Now his sons had seen the way the man of God from Judah had gone. <sup>13</sup> So he said to his sons, "Saddle the donkey for me." So they saddled the donkey and he rode off on it.

### translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- word
- king
- ancestor, father, forefather
- Judah
- donkey, mule

### translationNotes:

- **his sons had seen the way** - The implied information is that the sons also told their father which way the man of God went. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Saddle** - This means to place a seat on the back of an animal so a person can ride on it.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 13 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 13:14-17****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> He went along the road to find the prophet from Judah. He found him sitting under an oak tree. He said to him, “Are you the prophet who came from Judah?” He replied, “Yes, I am.”

<sup>15</sup> The old prophet said to him, “Come home with me and eat some food.”

<sup>16</sup> He replied, “No, I am not allowed to go with you into your house, or to eat or drink anything with you, <sup>17</sup> because Yahweh told me, ‘Do not eat or drink anything here, and do not return home on the road on which you came.’”

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> The old prophet went after the man of God and found him sitting under an oak tree; and he said to him, “Are you the man of God who came from Judah?” He answered, “I am.” <sup>15</sup> Then the old prophet said to him, “Come home with me and eat food.” <sup>16</sup> The man of God answered, “I may not return with you nor go in with you, neither will I eat food nor drink water with you in this place, <sup>17</sup> because it was commanded to me by the word of Yahweh, ‘You will eat no food nor drink water there, nor return by the way that you came.’”

**translationWords:**

- [God](#)
- [oak](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **The old prophet** - This refers to the prophet who lived in Bethel.
- **he said to him** - “the old prophet said to the man of God”
- **He answered** - “The man of God answered”
- **go in with you** - “go into your house”
- **in this place** - “in Bethel”
- **it was commanded to me by the word of Yahweh** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh commanded me by his word” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **by the word of Yahweh** - This is an idiom that means Yahweh spoke. Here “word” represents Yahweh’s message. See how you translated this in [6:11](#). AT: “by the message of Yahweh” (See: [Idiom and Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 13 General Notes
- 1 Kings 13 Translation Questions



## 1 Kings 13:18-19

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> Then the old prophet said to him, “I also am a prophet, like you are. Yahweh sent an angel to tell me that I should take you home with me and give you some food and drink.” But the old man was lying when he said that. <sup>19</sup> But because of what the old prophet said, the prophet from Judah returned with him to his home and ate some food and drank some water with him.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> So the old prophet said to him, “I also am a prophet as you are, and an angel spoke to me by the word of Yahweh, saying, ‘Bring him back with you into your house, that he may eat food and drink water.’” But he was lying to the man of God. <sup>19</sup> So the man of God went back with the old prophet and ate food in his house and drank water.

### translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)

### translationNotes:

- **an angel spoke to me by the word of Yahweh** - “an angel delivered to me a message from Yahweh”
- **by the word of Yahweh** - This is an idiom that means Yahweh spoke. Here “word” represents Yahweh’s message. Translate this phrase as in [13:17](#). AT: “by the message of Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 13 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 13:20-22

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> While they were sitting at the table, Yahweh spoke to the old man. <sup>21</sup> Then he cried out to the prophet from Judah, "This is what Yahweh says: 'You have disobeyed him, and you have not done what he commanded you to do. <sup>22</sup> Instead, you have come back here and had things to eat and drink in a place where he commanded you not to do that. As a result, you will be killed, and your body will not be buried in the grave where your ancestors are buried.'"

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> As they sat at the table, the word of Yahweh came to the prophet who had brought him back, <sup>21</sup> and he cried to the man of God who came from Judah, saying, "Yahweh says, 'Because you have been disobedient to the word of Yahweh and have not kept the command that Yahweh your God gave you, <sup>22</sup> but came back and have eaten food and drunk water in the place about which Yahweh told you to eat no food and drink no water, your body will not be buried in the tomb of your fathers.'"

### translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Yahweh
- disobey, disobedient, disobedience
- command, to command, commandment
- bury, buried, burial
- tomb, grave, burial place
- ancestor, father, forefather

### translationNotes:

- **As they sat at the table** - The implied information is that they were still eating and drinking at the table. AT: "As they were eating and drinking at the table" (See **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **the word of Yahweh came** - This is an idiom that means Yahweh spoke. Here "word" represents Yahweh's message. Translate this phrase as in **13:17**. AT: "the message of Yahweh came" or "Yahweh spoke his message" (See: **Idiom** and **Metonymy**)
- **brought him back** - Here the word "him" refers to the man of God.
- **he cried to the man of God** - "he spoke loudly to the man of God"
- **Because you have been disobedient to the word of Yahweh** - "Because you have not obeyed the word of Yahweh"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 13 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 13:23-25

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> When they had finished eating, the old man put a saddle on the donkey for the prophet from Judah, and the prophet from Judah left. <sup>24</sup> But as he was going, a lion met him and killed him. The prophet's corpse was lying on the road; the donkey was standing beside it, and the lion was also standing beside the corpse. <sup>25</sup> Some men passed by and were surprised to see the corpse on the road and the lion standing next to the corpse. So they went into Bethel and reported what they had seen.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> After he had eaten food and after he had drunk, the prophet saddled the donkey of the man of God, the man who had come back with him. <sup>24</sup> When the man of God was gone, a lion met him on the road and killed him, and his body was left on the road. Then the donkey stood by it, and the lion also stood by the body. <sup>25</sup> When men passed by and saw the body left on the road, and the lion standing by the body, they came and told it in the city where the old prophet lived.

### translationWords:

- donkey, mule
- God
- lion
- life, live, living, alive

### translationNotes:

- **the prophet saddled the donkey** - This means he placed a seat on the back of the donkey so the man of God could ride on it. See how you translated this in [13:13](#).
- **and his body was left on the road** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "and left his body on the road" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **body** - "dead body"
- **they came and told it** - Here "it" refers to what they had seen on the road. AT: "they came and told about what they had seen"

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 13 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 13:26-28

### UDB:

<sup>26</sup> When the old man who had brought the prophet from Judah to his home heard about it, he said, "That is the prophet who disobeyed what Yahweh told him to do! That is why Yahweh allowed the lion to attack him and kill him. That is what Yahweh said would happen!"

<sup>27</sup> Then he said to his sons, "Put a saddle on my donkey." So they did that. <sup>28</sup> Then he rode on the donkey and found the prophet's corpse on the road, and his donkey and the lion were still standing there alongside the corpse. But the lion had not eaten any of the flesh of the prophet and had not attacked the donkey.

### ULB:

<sup>26</sup> When the prophet who had brought him back from the way heard it, he said, "It is the man of God who disobeyed the word of Yahweh. Therefore Yahweh gave him to the lion, which tore him to pieces and killed him, just as the word of Yahweh warned him." <sup>27</sup> So the old prophet spoke to his sons, saying, "Saddle my donkey," and they saddled it. <sup>28</sup> He went and found the body left in the road, and the donkey and the lion standing by the body. The lion had not eaten the body, nor attacked the donkey.

### translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [son, son of](#)

### translationNotes:

- **body** - "dead body"
- **left in the road** - "lying in the road"

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 13 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 13:29-30

### UDB:

<sup>29</sup> The old man picked up the corpse of the prophet and put it on his donkey and brought it back to Bethel, in order to mourn for him and to bury his corpse. <sup>30</sup> He buried the prophet's corpse in the grave where other people in his family had been buried. Then he and his sons mourned about him, saying, "We are very sorry, my brother!"

### ULB:

<sup>29</sup> The prophet took up the body of the man of God, laid it on the donkey, and brought it back. He came to his own city to mourn and to bury him. <sup>30</sup> He laid the body in his own grave, and they mourned over him, saying, "Woe, my brother!"

### translationWords:

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [mourn, mourning](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)
- [woe](#)
- [brother](#)

### translationNotes:

- **took up** - "lifted up"
- **body** - "dead body"
- **they mourned** - Here the word "they" refers to the prophet and his sons.
- **Woe, my brother!** - The word "Woe" here is an expression of great sorrow.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 13 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 13:31-32

### UDB:

<sup>31</sup> After they had buried him, the old man said to his sons, "When I die, bury my corpse in the grave where we buried the prophet from Judah. Lay my corpse next to his corpse. <sup>32</sup> And do not forget what he said, things that Yahweh told him to say about the altar in Bethel, and what Yahweh told him to say about the places where they worshiped idols on the hills around the towns in Samaria. Those things will surely happen."

### ULB:

<sup>31</sup> Then after he had buried him, the old prophet spoke to his sons, saying, "When I am dead, bury me in the tomb in which the man of God is buried. Lay my bones beside his bones. <sup>32</sup> For the message he declared by the word of Yahweh, against the altar in Bethel and against all the houses on the high places in the cities of Samaria, will certainly happen."

### translationWords:

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [God](#)
- [altar](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [high places](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

### translationNotes:

- **he had buried him** - Here the word "he" refers to the old prophet and the word "him" refers to the man of God.
- **Lay my bones beside his bones** - Here "my bones" represents his entire body. AT: "Lay my dead body beside his bones" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **houses on the high places** - The implied information is that these were houses of worship. AT: "houses of worship on the high places" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 13 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 13:33-34

### UDB:

<sup>33</sup> But King Jeroboam still did not turn away from continuing to do the evil things that he was doing. Instead, he appointed more priests from men who were not descended from Levi. He appointed as priest anyone who agreed to become one, in order that he could offer sacrifices on the hilltops.

<sup>34</sup> Because he committed that sin, a few years later God got rid of most of Jeroboam's descendants and did not allow them to become kings of Israel.

### ULB:

<sup>33</sup> After this Jeroboam did not turn from his evil way, but continued to appoint common priests for the high places from among all sorts of people. Any who would serve he consecrated as a priest. <sup>34</sup> This matter became sin to the family of Jeroboam and caused his family to be destroyed and to be exterminated from the face of the earth.

### translationWords:

- Jeroboam
- turn, turn away, turn back
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- priest, priesthood
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- serve, service
- consecrate
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- family
- face
- earth, earthly

### translationNotes:

- **This matter became sin to the family of Jeroboam** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Jeroboam's family sinned by doing this thing" (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **This matter** - This phrase refers to Jeroboam's setting up shrines and appointing priests.
- **caused his family to be destroyed and to be exterminated** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "because of this God destroyed and exterminated Jeroboam's family" (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **to be destroyed and to be exterminated** - These mean nearly the same thing. AT: "to be completely destroyed" (See: **Doublet**)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 13 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 14 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter has two stories. One is the death of Jeroboam's son (1-18). The other is the reign of Rehoboam (20-31).

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The death of Jeroboam's son

God knows the truth and it is useless to try to fool God's prophet. Jeroboam's son became sick; so the king sent his wife, disguised as a common woman, to the prophet. The prophet told her that her son that he would become king. The prophet was blind, but when Jeroboam's wife arrived he told her "Come in, wife of Jeroboam." He also told her that her son would die and all of Jeroboam's family would be killed because he had caused Israel to sin by worshiping the golden calves. (See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

#### Rehoboam's reign

When Solomon obeyed God, God made him very rich. When the people of Judah began to worship the fertility goddess, Ashtoreth, and to do many evil things, they had to give all of their wealth to the king of Egypt to persuade him not to attack Jerusalem. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

### Links:

- [1 Kings 14:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Kings 14:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> At that time, Jeroboam's son Abijah became very sick. <sup>2</sup> Jeroboam said to his wife, "Disguise yourself in order that no one will recognize that you are my wife. Then go to the city of Shiloh, where the prophet Ahijah lives. He is the one who predicted that I would become the king of Israel. <sup>3</sup> Take with you ten loaves of bread and some small flat cakes, and a jar of honey, and give them to him. Tell him about our son, and he will tell you what will happen to him."

### ULB:

**14** <sup>1</sup> At that time Abijah son of Jeroboam became very sick. <sup>2</sup> Jeroboam said to his wife, "Please arise and disguise yourself, so you will not be recognized as my wife, and go to Shiloh, because Ahijah the prophet is there; he is the one who spoke about me, saying that I would become king over these people. <sup>3</sup> Take with you ten loaves, some cakes, and a jar of honey, and go to Ahijah. He will tell you what will happen to the child."

### translationWords:

- [Abijah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Shiloh](#)
- [Ahijah](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [king](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [honey, honeycomb](#)

### translationNotes:

- **disguise yourself** - "change how you appear to others"
- **you will not be recognized** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "no one will recognize you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 14 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 14:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> So his wife went to Shiloh, to Ahijah's house. Ahijah was unable to see, because he was very old and had become blind.

<sup>5</sup> But before she got there, Yahweh told Ahijah that Jeroboam's wife was coming to inquire about their son, who was very sick. And Yahweh told Ahijah what he should tell her.

When she came to him, she pretended to be another woman.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> Jeroboam's wife did so; she left and went to Shiloh and came to the house of Ahijah. Now Ahijah could not see; he lost his sight because of old age. <sup>5</sup> Yahweh said to Ahijah, "Look, the wife of Jeroboam is coming to seek advice from you regarding her son, for he is sick. Say such and such to her, because when she comes, she will act as if she were some other woman."

### translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Look, the wife of Jeroboam** - Here the word "Look" means "pay attention."
- **coming to seek advice from you** - The abstract noun "advice" can be translated as a verb. AT: "coming to ask you" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **Say such and such to her** - The words "such and such" mean that Yahweh told Ahijah what to say. AT: "Speak in this way to her" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 14 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 14:6-8****UDB:**

<sup>6</sup> But when Ahijah heard her footsteps as she entered the doorway, he said to her, "Come in, wife of Jeroboam! Why do you pretend that you are someone else? Yahweh has given me bad news to tell you. <sup>7</sup> Go and tell Jeroboam that this is what Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, says to you: 'I chose you from among the common people and enabled you to become the king of my Israelite people. <sup>8</sup> I took most of the kingdom of Israel away from David's descendants and gave it to you. But you have not been like David, who served me very well. He obeyed all my commandments very sincerely, doing only things that I considered to be right.

**ULB:**

<sup>6</sup> When Ahijah heard the sound of her feet as she came in at the door, he said, "Come in, wife of Jeroboam. Why do you pretend to be someone you are not? I have been sent to you with bad news. <sup>7</sup> Go, tell Jeroboam that Yahweh, the God of Israel, says, 'I raised you from among the people to make you the leader over my people Israel. <sup>8</sup> I tore the kingdom away from the family of David and gave it to you, yet you have not been like my servant David, who kept my commandments and followed me with all his heart, to do only what was right in my eyes.

**translationWords:**

- send, send out, sent
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- kingdom
- family
- David
- servant, slave, slavery
- command, to command, commandment
- heart

**translationNotes:**

- **Why do you pretend to be someone you are not?** - This question shows that Ahijah knew she was disguised. AT: "Stop pretending to be someone else; I know who you are." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **I have been sent to you with bad news** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh told me to give you bad news" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **I raised you** - "I exalted you"

- **I tore the kingdom away** - God forcefully removed most of the kingdom like a person tears a piece of cloth. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **followed me** - “obeyed me”
- **what was right in my eyes** - The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “what I judged to be right” or “what I considered to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 14 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 14:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> But you have done more evil things than all those who ruled before you. You have rejected me, and you have caused me to become very angry by making metal images of other gods so that you and others could worship them.

<sup>10</sup> So, I am going to cause terrible things to happen to your family. I will cause all your male descendants to die, young ones and old ones. I will completely get rid of your family just like a man completely burns dung to cook his food.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Instead, you have done evil, more than all who were before you. You have made other gods, and you have cast metal images to provoke me to anger, and have thrust me behind your back.

<sup>10</sup> Therefore, look, I will bring disaster on your family; I will cut off from you every male child in Israel, whether slave or free, and will completely remove your family, like someone who burns up dung until it is gone.

**translationWords:**

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- angry, anger
- cut off
- kingdom of Israel
- free, freedom, liberty
- dung, manure

**translationNotes:**

- **thrust me behind your back** - Jeroboam has disrespected Yahweh like a person throws away something that is not wanted. AT: “completely rejected me” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **look** - “pay attention.” This word is added to indicate that what follows is important.
- **I will cut off ... and will completely remove** - These two phrases are very similar in meaning and are repeated for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **cut off from you every male child in Israel** - Yahweh speaks of destroying Jeroboam’s family and preventing him from having any descendants as if he were cutting them off as one would cut a branch from a tree. AT: “destroy every one of your male children in Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **will completely remove your family, like someone who burns up dung until it is gone -**  
This simile compares the removal of every descendant of Jeroboam with the complete burning up of dung that was mixed with straw, dried, and burned for fuel. (See: [Simile](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 14 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 14:11-13****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> The corpses of any members of your family who die in cities will be eaten by dogs. And the corpses of any members of your family who die out in the open fields will be eaten by vultures. This will surely happen because I, Yahweh, have said that it will happen.'

<sup>12</sup> So go back home. And as soon as you enter the city, your son will die. <sup>13</sup> All the Israelite people will mourn for him and bury him. He is the only one of Jeroboam's family who will be buried properly, because he is the only one of Jeroboam's family with whom Yahweh is at all pleased.

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> Anyone who belongs to your family who dies in the city will be eaten by dogs, and anyone who dies in the field will be eaten by the birds of the heavens, for I, Yahweh, have said it.' <sup>12</sup> So arise, wife of Jeroboam, and go back to your home; when your feet enter the city, the child Abijah will die. <sup>13</sup> All Israel will mourn for him and bury him. He is the only one from Jeroboam's family who will go into a grave, because only in him, out of Jeroboam's house, was anything good found in the sight of Yahweh, the God of Israel.

**translationWords:**

- death, die, dead
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh
- Jeroboam
- Abijah
- mourn, mourning
- bury, buried, burial
- tomb, grave, burial place
- house
- good, goodness

**translationNotes:**

- **Anyone who belongs to your family who dies in the city will be eaten by dogs** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Dogs will eat anyone who belongs to your family and who dies in the city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **anyone who dies in the field will be eaten by the birds of the heavens** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "the birds of the heavens will eat anyone who dies in the field" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **when your feet enter the city** - The word “feet” here is a synecdoche for the whole person. AT: “when you enter the city” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **All Israel** - This is a generalization that means the people of the northern kingdom of Israel. AT: “The Israelite people” (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **go into a grave** - “be buried in a grave”
- **out of Jeroboam’s house** - The word “house” here is a metonymy for “family.” AT: “in all of Jeroboam’s family” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **was anything good found in the sight of Yahweh, the God of Israel** - The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. This can be stated in active form. AT: “did Yahweh, the God of Israel, find anything he judged to be good” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 14 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 14:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Furthermore, Yahweh will appoint for himself a king to rule over Israel who will get rid of Jeroboam's descendants. And that will start to happen today! <sup>15</sup> Yahweh will punish the people of Israel. He will shake them like the wind shakes the reeds that grow in a stream. He will expel the Israelite people from this good land that he gave to our ancestors. He will scatter them into countries east of the Euphrates River, because they have caused him to become very angry by making poles for worshiping the goddess Asherah. <sup>16</sup> Yahweh will abandon the Israelite people because of the sins that Jeroboam committed, sins which induced the Israelite people to commit them."

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> Also, Yahweh will raise up a king of Israel who will cut off the family of Jeroboam on that day. Today is that day, right now. <sup>15</sup> For Yahweh will attack Israel as a reed is shaken in the water, and he will root up Israel out of this good land that he gave to their ancestors. He will scatter them beyond the Euphrates River, because they have made their Asherah poles and provoked Yahweh to anger. <sup>16</sup> He will give Israel up because of the sins of Jeroboam, the sins that he has committed, and through which he has led Israel to sin."

**translationWords:**

- Yahweh
- king
- reed, reeds
- water, waters
- Euphrates River
- Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

**translationNotes:**

- **cut off the family of Jeroboam** - The writer speaks of the new king of Israel destroying Jeroboam's family and preventing him from having any descendants like one would cut a branch from a tree. AT: "destroy the descendants of Jeroboam" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Yahweh will attack Israel as a reed is shaken in the water** - The writer here uses a simile to express how Yahweh will bring judgment on the people of Israel. AT: "Yahweh will attack the people of Israel as a reed is shaken in the water" (See: [Simile](#))
- **as a reed is shaken in the water** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "like a river of water shakes a reed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **he will root up Israel out of this good land** - Yahweh compares Israel with a plant that he will tear out of the ground by its roots. AT: “he will remove the people of Israel from this good land” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **scatter them** - “disperse them”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 14 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 14:17-18****UDB:**

<sup>17</sup> Jeroboam's wife returned home to the city of Tirzah, the new capital of Israel. And just as she entered her house, her son died. <sup>18</sup> All the Israelite people mourned for him and buried him, which is what Yahweh had told his servant, the prophet Ahijah, would happen.

**ULB:**

<sup>17</sup> So Jeroboam's wife arose and left, and came to Tirzah. As she came to the threshold of her house, the child died. <sup>18</sup> All Israel buried him and mourned for him, just as it was told to them by the word of Yahweh which he had spoken by his servant Ahijah the prophet.

**translationWords:**

- [threshold](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Ahijah](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Tirzah** - This is the name of the city where king Jeroboam lived. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **All Israel buried him and mourned for him** - This is a generalization that means the people of Israel buried him and mourned for him. AT: "A great number of the people of Israel were present when people buried him, and the people of Israel mourned for him" (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **just as it was told to them by the word of Yahweh** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "just as Yahweh told them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the word of Yahweh** - Here "word" represents a message. AT: "the message of Yahweh" or "Yahweh's message" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 14 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 14:19-20

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> Everything else that Jeroboam did, and the record of wars that his army fought, and how he ruled, is written in the Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel. <sup>20</sup> Jeroboam ruled for twenty-two years. Then he died, and his son Nadab became king.

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> As for the other matters concerning Jeroboam, how he waged war and how he reigned, see, they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel. <sup>20</sup> Jeroboam reigned twenty-two years and then slept with his ancestors, and Nadab his son became king in his place.

### translationWords:

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [reign](#)
- [written](#)
- [sleep, asleep, fall asleep](#)
- [son, son of](#)

### translationNotes:

- [see](#) - “look”
- [they are written in](#) - This can be stated in active form. AT: “you can find them written in” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- [The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel](#) - This refers to a book that no longer exists.
- [twenty-two years](#) - “22 years” (See: [Numbers](#))
- [slept with his ancestors](#) - Jeroboam dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. See how you translated this in [2:10](#). AT: “died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 14 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 14:21-22****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> Solomon's son Rehoboam ruled Judah. He was forty-one years old when he started to rule, and he ruled for seventeen years. He ruled in Jerusalem, which is the city that Yahweh chose out of all the tribes of Israel to be the place where he should be worshiped. Rehoboam's mother's name was Naamah. She was from the Ammon people group.

<sup>22</sup> The people of Judah did many things that Yahweh said were evil. They caused him to become angry because they committed more sins than their ancestors had committed. They worshiped many other gods instead of worshiping only Yahweh.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> Now Rehoboam son of Solomon was reigning in Judah. Rehoboam was forty-one years old when he became king, and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city that Yahweh had chosen out of all the tribes of Israel in which to put his name. His mother's name was Naamah the Ammonitess.

<sup>22</sup> Judah did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh; they provoked him to jealousy with the sins that they committed, more than everything that their fathers had done.

**translationWords:**

- Rehoboam
- Solomon
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- twelve tribes of Israel
- name
- Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess
- jealous, jealousy
- ancestor, father, forefather

**translationNotes:**

- **forty-one years old ... seventeen years** - "41 years old ... 17 years" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **in which to put his name** - Here "put his name" is a metonym for "dwell" and refers to the temple where Yahweh was to be worshiped. AT: "in which to dwell" or "in which to be worshiped." (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **His mother's name** - Here the word "His" refers to Rehoboam.
- **Naamah** - This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Judah did** - Here "Judah" represents the people of Judah. AT: "The people of Judah did" (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - The “sight” of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [11:6](#). AT: “what was evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they provoked him to jealousy** - The abstract noun “jealousy” can be translated as an adjective. AT: “they made him jealous” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **fathers** - “ancestors”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 14 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 14:23-24

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> They built places to worship those gods. On high hills and under big trees they set up pillars and poles for worshipping Asherah. <sup>24</sup> Also, there were male prostitutes at these places of worship. The Israelite people did the same disgraceful things that had been done by the people whom Yahweh had expelled while the Israelites were advancing through the land.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> For they also built for themselves high places, stone pillars, and Asherah poles on every high hill and under every green tree. <sup>24</sup> There were also cultic prostitutes in the land. They did the same despicable practices as the nations that Yahweh had driven out before the people of Israel.

### translationWords:

- [high places](#)
- [pillar, column](#)
- [Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [nation](#)
- [cast out, drive out, throw out](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

### translationNotes:

- **For they also built** - The word “they” here refers to the people of Judah.
- **built for themselves** - “built for their own use” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))
- **on every high hill and under every green tree** - This is likely to be an exaggeration that indicates there were many places like these for false worship all over the country. AT: “on the high hills and under the green trees” (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **cultic prostitutes** - “religious prostitutes” or “male prostitutes.” This probably refers to male prostitutes who were associated with idol worship.
- **the same despicable practices as the nations that** - Here the word “nations” represents the people in those nations. AT: “the same disgusting things that the people did, whom” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#)

- 1 Kings 14 Translation Questions

**1 Kings 14:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> When Rehoboam had been ruling for almost five years, King Shishak of Egypt came with his army to attack Jerusalem. <sup>26</sup> They took away all the valuable things in the temple and in the king's palace, including the gold shields that Solomon's workers had made.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> It happened in the fifth year of King Rehoboam that Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem. <sup>26</sup> He took away the treasures in the house of Yahweh, and the treasures in the king's house. He took everything away; he also took all the shields of gold that Solomon had made.

**translationWords:**

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [house](#)
- [shield](#)
- [gold](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **in the fifth year of King Rehoboam** - This refers to the fifth year of Rehoboam's reign as king. AT: "in the fifth year that Rehoboam was king" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **in the fifth year** - "in year 5" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem** - "Shishak king of Egypt" is a metonym for Shishak along with the Egyptian army. AT: "Shishak king of Egypt, and his army with him, came up against Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Shishak** - This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [11:40](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **came up against** - This is an idiom that means marched against or attacked. AT: "came to attack" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **He took everything away** - This is a generalization that indicates every valuable thing that could be found was taken away. AT: "He took away many valuable things" (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **He took** - The word "He" represents Shishak and the soldiers who were with him. AT: "Shishak and his army took" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **that Solomon had made** - Here "Solomon" refers to the craftsmen who worked for Solomon to make the shields. AT: "that Solomon had his workers make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 14 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 14:27-28

### UDB:

<sup>27</sup> King Rehoboam's workers made bronze shields to replace them and put them into the hands of officers who guarded the entrance to the king's palace. <sup>28</sup> Every time that the king went into the temple, those guards carried those shields, and when he left the temple they returned the shields to the storeroom.

### ULB:

<sup>27</sup> King Rehoboam made shields of bronze in their place and entrusted them into the hands of the commanders of the guard, who guarded the doors to the king's house. <sup>28</sup> It happened that whenever the king entered the house of Yahweh, the guards would carry them; then they would bring them back into the guardhouse.

### translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [commander, command](#)

### translationNotes:

- **King Rehoboam made shields** - Here "King Rehoboam" represents the persons who worked for him to make the shields. AT: "King Rehoboam's workers made shields" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **in their place** - "in place of the shields of gold"
- **entrusted them into the hands of the commanders** - Here "hands" represents care or responsibility. AT: "made them the responsibility of the commanders" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **who guarded the doors to the king's house** - Here "doors" represents the entrance. AT: "who guarded the entrance to the king's house" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the guards would carry them** - "the guards would carry the shields of bronze"

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 14 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 14:29-31****UDB:**

<sup>29</sup> Everything else that Rehoboam did is written in the Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah. <sup>30</sup> There were wars continually between the armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam. <sup>31</sup> Then Rehoboam died, and he was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David, where his ancestors were buried. Then his son Abijah became the king.

**ULB:**

<sup>29</sup> As for the other matters concerning Rehoboam, and all that he did, are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah? <sup>30</sup> There was constant warfare between Rehoboam and Jeroboam. <sup>31</sup> So Rehoboam slept with his ancestors and was buried with them in the city of David. His mother's name was Naamah the Ammonitess. Abijah his son became king in his place.

**translationWords:**

- written
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jeroboam
- sleep, asleep, fall asleep
- bury, buried, burial
- city of David
- Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess
- Abijah

**translationNotes:**

- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah?** - This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. AT: "they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah." or "you can read about them in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah." (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah** - This refers to a book that no longer exists.
- **There was constant warfare** - "There was continuing war" or "There were constant battles"
- **warfare between Rehoboam and Jeroboam** - The names of the kings means that there was war between the armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam. AT: "the armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam fought in battle again and again" (UDB) or "Rehoboam and his people and Jeroboam and his people engaged in battle continually" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **slept with his ancestors** - Rehoboam dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. See how you translated this in [2:10](#). AT: "died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

- **was buried with them** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “people buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Naamah** - This is the name of a woman. See how you translated this in [14:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Abijah his son** - “Abijah the son of Rehoboam”
- **became king in his place** - The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” AT: “became king instead of Rehoboam” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 14 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 15 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

Judah had some bad kings and some good kings. All of the kings in Israel continued to worship the golden calves, so they were all considered to be bad. Judah and Israel continually fought each other.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### **“But the shrines were not taken away.”**

At the shrines, the people worshiped Yahweh. But later, during Hezekiah’s reign, it was decided that all sacrifices must be made only at the temple. (See: [temple](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 15:01 Notes](#)



## 1 Kings 15:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> After Jeroboam had been the king of Israel for almost eighteen years, Abijah became the king of Judah. <sup>2</sup> He ruled for three years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Maacah, the daughter of Abishalom.

<sup>3</sup> Abijah committed the same kind of sins that his father had committed. He was not fully dedicated to Yahweh his God, as his ancestor David had been.

### ULB:

15 <sup>1</sup> In the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam son of Nebat, Abijah began to reign over Judah. <sup>2</sup> He ruled for three years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Maacah. She was the daughter of Abishalom. <sup>3</sup> He walked in all the sins that his father had committed before his time; his heart was not devoted to Yahweh his God as the heart of David, his ancestor, had been.

### translationWords:

- king
- Jeroboam
- Abijah
- reign
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- walk
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- heart
- Yahweh
- God
- David

### translationNotes:

- **In the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam son of Nebat** - This refers to the eighteenth year of Jeroboam's reign. AT: "After Jeroboam had been the king of Israel for almost eighteen years" (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **In the eighteenth year** - "In year 18" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **He walked in all the sins** - Walking represents living, and walking in sins represents committing those sins. AT: "Abijah continued to practice all the sins" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **that his father had committed before his time** - Since these verses refer to several kings, it may help to include the name of Abijah's father. This information can be made clear. AT

“that his father, Rehoboam, had committed before Abijah’s time” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **his time** - This phrase represents the time that he was king. The meaning of this can be made clear. AT: “before Abijah was king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **his heart was not devoted ... as the heart of David** - The heart represents the whole person. AT: “Abijah was not devoted ... as David” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 15 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 15:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> But, because of what Yahweh his God had promised to David, Yahweh gave Abijah a son to rule in Jerusalem after him, and in order to protect Jerusalem from their enemies. <sup>5</sup> Yahweh did that because David had always done what pleased Yahweh and because David had always obeyed Yahweh. The only time when he disobeyed Yahweh was when he caused Uriah to be killed due to his sin with Bathsheba.

<sup>6</sup> There were wars between the armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam all during the time that Abijah ruled.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> Nevertheless, for David's sake, Yahweh his God gave him a lamp in Jerusalem by raising up his son after him in order to strengthen Jerusalem. <sup>5</sup> God did this because David had done what was right in his eyes; for all the days of his life, he had not turned away from anything that he commanded him, except only in the matter of Uriah the Hittite. <sup>6</sup> Now there was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam all the days of Abijah's life.

**translationWords:**

- lamp
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- life, live, living, alive
- turn, turn away, turn back
- command, to command, commandment
- Uriah
- Hittite
- Rehoboam

**translationNotes:**

- **gave him a lamp in Jerusalem** - The word "lamp" here represents a descendant who would be king as David was. AT: "gave David a descendant to rule in Jerusalem" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **by raising up his son after him** - "by raising up Abijah's son after him" or "by giving Abijah a son"
- **what was right in his eyes** - The eyes here represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: "what Yahweh judges to be right" or "what Yahweh considers to be right" (See: **Metonymy** and **Metaphor**)
- **for all the days of his life** - The word "days" represents a period of time. AT: "the whole time that David lived" or "throughout David's whole life" (See: **Metonymy**)

- **he had not turned away from anything that he commanded him** - Turning away from a command represents disobeying it. AT: “David did not disobey anything that God commanded him” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **except only in the matter of Uriah the Hittite** - This is a general way to refer to the situation with Uriah. It can be stated more clearly what this matter was. AT: “except for what he did to Uriah the Hittite” or “except when he caused Uriah the Hittite to be killed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **between Rehoboam and Jeroboam** - The names “Rehoboam” and “Jeroboam” represent the armies of those two kings. Rehoboam was Abijah’s father. AT: “between the armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam” (UDB) (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **all the days of Abijah’s life** - The word “days” represents a period of time. AT: “the whole time that Abijah lived” or “throughout his whole life” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 15 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 15:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> Everything else that Abijah did is written in the Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah. <sup>8</sup> Abijah died and was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David, and his son Asa became king.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> As for the other matters of Abijah, all that he did, are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah? There was war between Abijah and Jeroboam. <sup>8</sup> Abijah slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in the city of David. Asa his son became king in his place.

### translationWords:

- [written](#)
- [sleep, asleep, fall asleep](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [city of David](#)
- [Asa](#)

### translationNotes:

- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah?** - This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Abijah is in this other book. See how you translated this in [14:29](#). This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah?** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone has written about this in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **between Abijah and Jeroboam** - The names “Abijah” and “Jeroboam” represent the armies of those two kings. AT: “between the armies of Abijah and Jeroboam” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Abijah slept with his ancestors** - In this euphemism, sleeping represents dying. AT: “Abijah died as his ancestors had” or “Like his ancestors, Abijah died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))
- **became king in his place** - The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” AT: “became king instead of Abijah” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 15 General Notes
- 1 Kings 15 Translation Questions

**1 Kings 15:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> After Jeroboam had been the king of Israel for almost twenty years, Asa started to rule Judah. <sup>10</sup> He ruled in Jerusalem for forty-one years. His grandmother was Maacah, the daughter of Abishalom.

<sup>11</sup> Asa did what was pleasing to Yahweh, as his ancestor David had done.

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> In the twentieth year of Jeroboam king of Israel, Asa began to reign over Judah. <sup>10</sup> He ruled forty-one years in Jerusalem. His grandmother's name was Maacah, the daughter of Abishalom. <sup>11</sup> Asa did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, as David, his ancestor, had done.

**translationWords:**

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [king](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **In the twentieth year of Jeroboam king of Israel** - This refers to the twentieth year of Jeroboam's reign. AT: "After Jeroboam had been the king of Israel for almost twenty years" (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **In the twentieth year** - "In year 20" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **forty-one years** - "41 years" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **what was right in the eyes of Yahweh** - The eyes here represent seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and approved of Asa's actions. AT: "what Yahweh judges to be right" or "what Yahweh considers to be right" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 15 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 15:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> He got rid of the male prostitutes who were at the places where the people worshiped idols, and he also got rid of all the idols that his ancestors had made. <sup>13</sup> He also removed his grandmother Maacah so that she no longer had influence in the government because of being the mother of a previous king. He did that because she had made a disgusting wooden statue of the goddess Asherah. Asa told his workers to cut down the statue and burned it in the Kidron Valley.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> He expelled the cultic prostitutes from the land and removed all the idols that his ancestors had made. <sup>13</sup> He also removed Maacah, his grandmother, from being queen, because she had made a disgusting figure out of an Asherah pole. Asa cut down the disgusting figure and burned it at the Kidron Valley.

### translationWords:

- prostitute, harlot, whore
- idol, idolatrous
- queen
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth

### translationNotes:

- **the cultic prostitutes** - This probably refers to prostitutes who were associated with idol worship and who were all men. AT: “religious prostitutes” or “the prostitutes who worked for idols” or “male prostitutes”
- **Asa cut down the disgusting figure** - Since Asa was king, he may have told his officials to cut down the figure. AT: “Asa caused the disgusting figure to be cut down” or “Asa made them cut down the disgusting figure” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 15 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 15:14-15

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> He was not able to destroy all the places where the people worshiped Yahweh, but he continued to be dedicated to Yahweh all during the time that he lived. <sup>15</sup> He told his workers to place in the temple all the items that his father had dedicated to God, and all the gold and silver things that he had dedicated to God.

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> But the high places were not taken away. Nevertheless, Asa's heart was completely devoted to Yahweh all his days. <sup>15</sup> He brought into the house of Yahweh the things that were set apart by his father, and his own things that had been set apart that were made of silver and gold, and vessels.

### translationWords:

- [high places](#)
- [heart](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)

### translationNotes:

- **But the high places were not taken away** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "But Asa did not command the people to take away the high places" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Asa's heart was completely devoted** - The heart represents the person. AT: "Asa was completely devoted" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **all his days** - This refers to the whole period of time that Asa lived. AT: "the whole time that Asa lived" or "throughout Asa's whole life" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 15 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 15:16-17

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> There were wars between the armies of Asa and Baasha, the king of Israel, all during the time that they ruled. <sup>17</sup> Baasha's army invaded Judah. They captured the city of Ramah north of Jerusalem. Then they started to build a wall around it in order to prevent people from entering or leaving the area in Judah that King Asa ruled.

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> There was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel, all their days. <sup>17</sup> Baasha king of Israel, acted aggressively against Judah and built up Ramah, so that he might not allow anyone to leave or enter into the land of Asa king of Judah.

### translationWords:

- [Asa](#)
- [Baasha](#)
- [king](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Ramah](#)

### translationNotes:

- **all their days** - The word “days” represents a period of time, and “all their days” refers to the whole period of time that Asa and Baasha were kings. AT: “the whole time that they reigned over Judah and Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **acted aggressively against Judah** - “attacked Judah”
- **built up Ramah** - It is implied that the army of Baasha first captured Ramah. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “captured and fortified Ramah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 15 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 15:18-19****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> So Asa told his workers to take all the silver and gold that was still in the storerooms in the temple and in the palace and gave it to some of his officials. He told them to take it to Damascus and give it to King Ben Hadad who ruled Aram. Ben Hadad was son of Tabrimmon and grandson of Hezion. He told the officials to say this to Ben Hadad: <sup>19</sup> “I want there to be a peace treaty between me and you, like there was between my father and your father. For that purpose, I am giving you this silver and gold. So now please cancel the treaty that you made with Baasha, the king of Israel, in order that he will take his soldiers away from attacking mine, because he will be afraid of your army.”

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Then Asa took all the silver and gold left in the storerooms in the house of Yahweh, and the storerooms of the king’s palace. He put it into the hands of his servants and sent it to Ben Hadad son of Tabrimmon son of Hezion, the king of Aram, who lived in Damascus. He said, <sup>19</sup> “Let there be a covenant between me and you, as there was between my father and your father. Look, I have sent to you a gift of silver and gold. Break your covenant with Baasha king of Israel, so that he may leave me alone.”

**translationWords:**

- palace
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- servant, slave, slavery
- send, send out, sent
- Aram, Aramean, Aramaic
- Damascus
- gift

**translationNotes:**

- **He put it into the hands of his servants** - Putting things in their hands represents giving those things to them. It is implied that they would do with it what he wanted them to do. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “He entrusted it to his servants” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **He said** - This means he spoke by means of his servants. Asa told his servants what to say to Ben Hadad and they did. The meaning of this can be made clear. AT: “Asa told his servants to say to Ben Hadad” or “Through his servants, Asa said to Ben Hadad” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **Let there be a covenant between me and you** - A covenant being between two people represents those two people having a covenant with each other. AT: “Let us have a covenant with each other” or “Let us make a peace treaty” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Look** - This is an idiom. Here the word “Look” adds emphasis to what follows and validates what was just said. AT: “As proof that I want a treaty with you” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Break your covenant with Baasha king of Israel** - Breaking a covenant represents canceling it and not doing what one has promised to do. AT: “Cancel your covenant with Baasha king of Israel” or “Do not be loyal to Baasha king of Israel as you promised in your covenant with him” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Break your covenant with Baasha king of Israel** - Asa wanted Ben Hadad to attack Israel. Ben Hadad could only do that if he broke his covenant with the king of Israel. The meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “Break your covenant with Baasha king of Israel, and attack Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 15 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 15:20-22

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> So the officials went and gave the message to Ben Hadad, and he did what Asa suggested. He sent his army commanders and their soldiers to attack some of the towns in Israel. They captured Ijon, Dan, Abel of Beth Maacah, the area near the Sea of Galilee, and all the land of the tribe of Naphtali. <sup>21</sup> When Baasha heard about that, he told his soldiers to stop working at Ramah. He and his soldiers returned to Tirzah and stayed there. <sup>22</sup> Then King Asa sent a message to all the people in the towns in Judah, stating that they all were required to go to Ramah and carry away the stones and timber that Baasha's soldiers had been using to build a wall around the city. With those stones and timber they fortified the city of Mizpah north of Jerusalem, and Geba, a town in the territory of the tribe of Benjamin.

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> Ben Hadad listened to King Asa and sent the commanders of his armies, and they attacked the cities of Israel. They attacked Ijon, Dan, Abel of Beth Maacah, and all Chinnereth, together with all the land of Naphtali. <sup>21</sup> It came about that when Baasha heard this, he stopped building up Ramah and went back to Tirzah. <sup>22</sup> Then King Asa made a proclamation to all Judah. No one was exempted. They carried away the stones and timbers of Ramah with which Baasha had been building up the city. Then King Asa used that building material to build up Geba of Benjamin and Mizpah.

### translationWords:

- commander, command
- Dan
- Naphtali
- proclaim, proclamation
- Benjamin
- Mizpah

### translationNotes:

- **It came about that** - This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **he stopped building up Ramah** - King Baasha did this by telling his workers to do this. AT: "he had his workers stop building up Ramah" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Tirzah** - This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [14:17](#).
- **No one was exempted** - This can also be stated positively. AT: "Every one had to obey King Asa's proclamation"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 15 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 15:23-24****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> Everything else that Asa did, the armies that his soldiers defeated, and the names of the cities that he caused to be fortified, are all written in the Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah. But when Asa became old, he got a disease in his feet. <sup>24</sup> He died and was buried where his ancestors were buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. Then his son Jehoshaphat became king.

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> As for the other matters of Asa, all his might, all that he did, and the cities he built, are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah? But during his old age he was diseased in his feet. <sup>24</sup> Then Asa slept with his ancestors and was buried with them in the city of David his father. Jehoshaphat his son became king in his place.

**translationWords:**

- mighty, might
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- sleep, asleep, fall asleep
- bury, buried, burial
- city of David
- Jehoshaphat

**translationNotes:**

- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah?** - This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Abijah is in this other book. See how you translated this in [14:29](#). This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah?** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone has written about this in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Asa slept with his ancestors** - Sleeping here is a euphemism which represents dying. AT: “Asa died as his ancestors had” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))
- **and was buried with them** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “and they buried him with his ancestors” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **David his father** - The word “father” here refers to an ancestor. AT: “King David, his ancestor”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 15 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 15:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> After Asa had been the king of Judah for almost two years, King Jeroboam's son Nadab started to rule Israel. He ruled for two years. <sup>26</sup> He did many things that Yahweh said were evil. His behavior was sinful like his father's behavior had been, and what he did induced the people of Israel to sin.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> Nadab son of Jeroboam began to reign over Israel in the second year of Asa king of Judah; he reigned over Israel two years. <sup>26</sup> He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh and walked in the way of his father, and in his own sin, by which he led Israel to sin.

**translationWords:**

- Jeroboam
- reign
- kingdom of Israel
- Asa
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Yahweh
- walk
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - The rest of chapter 15 and 16 is about the kings of Israel. These events happened while King Asa of Judah was still alive.
- **the second year of Asa king of Judah** - This refers to the second year of Asa's reign. The meaning of this can be made clear. AT: "when Asa had been king of Judah for almost two years" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **he reigned over Israel two years** - "Nadab reigned over Israel two years"
- **what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. AT: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **walked in the way of his father** - Walking here represents behaving. AT: "did the same things that his father had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and in his own sin** - Walking in his own sin represents sinning in ways that were different from the ways that his father had sinned. AT: "and he sinned in his own ways" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **by which he led Israel to sin** - Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do it. AT: “and by sinning, he influenced Israel to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 15 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 15:27-28

### UDB:

<sup>27</sup> A man named Baasha, from the tribe of Issachar, planned to harm him. He killed Nadab when Nadab and his army had surrounded the city of Gibbethon in the region of Philistia. <sup>28</sup> That was when Asa had been the king ruling Judah for almost three years. Then Baasha became the king of Israel.

### ULB:

<sup>27</sup> Baasha son of Ahijah, of the family of Issachar, conspired against Nadab; Baasha killed him down at Gibbethon, which belonged to the Philistines, for Nadab and all Israel were laying siege to Gibbethon. <sup>28</sup> In the third year of Asa king of Judah, Baasha killed Nadab and became king in his place.

### translationWords:

- [Baasha](#)
- [Ahijah](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### translationNotes:

- **conspired against Nadab** - “secretly plotted to kill King Nadab”
- **Gibbethon** - This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Nadab and all Israel** - “The phrase ”all Israel” is a generalization that represents the many soldiers of Israel. AT: “Nadab and the many soldiers of Israel” or “Nadab and the army of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **were laying siege to Gibbethon** - “were surrounding Gibbethon, so that the people of Gibbethon would surrender to them”
- **became king in his place** - The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” AT: “became king instead of Nadab” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 15 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 15:29-30****UDB:**

<sup>29</sup> As soon as he became king, he commanded his soldiers to kill all of Jeroboam's family. Doing what Yahweh had told the prophet Ahijah from Shiloh would happen, they killed all of Jeroboam's family. None of them were left. <sup>30</sup> That happened because Yahweh had become very angry with Jeroboam because of all the sins that Jeroboam had committed, and because of the sins that he had persuaded the people of Israel to commit.

**ULB:**

<sup>29</sup> As soon as he was king, Baasha killed all the family of Jeroboam. He left none of Jeroboam's descendants breathing; in this way he destroyed his royal line, just as Yahweh had spoken by his servant Ahijah the Shilonite, <sup>30</sup> for the sins of Jeroboam which he committed and by which he led Israel to sin, because he provoked Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger.

**translationWords:**

- descendant, descended from
- royal
- servant, slave, slavery
- Ahijah
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- angry, anger

**translationNotes:**

- **Baasha killed all the family of Jeroboam. He left none of Jeroboam's descendants breathing.** - These two sentences mean the same thing and are combined to emphasize his descendents were all killed. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **all the family of Jeroboam** - Jeroboam was King Nadab's father.
- **He left none of Jeroboam's descendants breathing** - Breathing represents being alive. AT: "He left none of Jeroboam's descendants living" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **his royal line** - "Jeroboam's royal line"
- **just as Yahweh had spoken by his servant Ahijah the Shilonite** - In [14:10-11](#) Yahweh spoke through his prophet Ahijah and told Jeroboam that he would destroy his family.
- **Ahijah the Shilonite** - "Ahijah, who was from Shiloh"
- **for the sins of Jeroboam which he committed and by which he led Israel to sin** - The abstract noun "sins" can be expressed with the verb "sin." AT: "because Jeroboam sinned and led Israel to sin in the same ways" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

- **by which he led Israel to sin** - Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do something. AT: “by which he influenced Israel to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 15 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 15:31-32

### UDB:

<sup>31</sup> Everything else that Nadab did is written in Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel. <sup>32</sup> There were wars between the armies of King Asa and King Baasha all the time that they ruled.

### ULB:

<sup>31</sup> As for the other matters concerning Nadab, and all that he did, are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel? <sup>32</sup> There was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel all their days.

### translationWords:

- [written](#)
- [king](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Asa](#)

### translationNotes:

- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel?** - This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Nadab is in this other book. See how you translated a similar phrase concerning Judah in [14:29](#). This rhetorical question can be written as a statement. AT: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel?** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone has written about this in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **all their days** - The word “days” represents a period of time, and “all their days” refers to the whole period of time that Asa and Baasha were kings. See how you translated this in [15:16](#) AT: “the whole time that they reigned over Judah and Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 15 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 15:33-34

### UDB:

<sup>33</sup> After Asa had been the king of Judah for almost three years, Baasha son of Ahijah, started to rule Israel at the city of Tirzah. He ruled for twenty-four years. <sup>34</sup> Baasha did many things that Yahweh said were evil, and he lived a sinful life just like Jeroboam lived. Baasha's sinful life set an example for the people of Israel that encouraged them to commit sins that were like his sins.

### ULB:

<sup>33</sup> In the third year of Asa king of Judah, Baasha son of Ahijah began to reign over all Israel in Tirzah and he reigned twenty-four years. <sup>34</sup> He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh and walked in the way of Jeroboam and in his sin by which he led Israel to sin.

### translationWords:

- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Ahijah
- reign
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Yahweh

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement** - This chapter told about how Baasha became king in [15:27-28](#). These verses begin to tell about Baasha as king of Israel.
- **Tirzah** - This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [14:17](#).
- **what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. AT: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **walked in the way of Jeroboam** - Walking here represents behaving. AT: "did the same things that Jeroboam had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in his sin by which he led Israel to sin** - Possible meanings are that "his" and "he" refer to 1) Baasha or 2) Jeroboam.
- **by which he led Israel to sin** - Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do it. AT: "and by sinning, he influenced Israel to sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 15 General Notes
- 1 Kings 15 Translation Questions



## 1 Kings 16 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Incorrect worship

The prophet Jehu warned Baasha, king of Israel, that God would destroy his family for worshiping the idols. But Baasha did not change his ways; so Zimri murdered Baasha's son and all his relatives. Then Omri killed Zimri. Omri's son Ahab brought in the rain god, Baal and his wife, the fertility goddess, Ashtoreth as the official religion of Israel. This was very evil. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#) and [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#)).

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 16:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Kings 16:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> During the time that Baasha was king of Israel, the prophet Jehu, Hanani's son, gave Baasha this message that he had received from Yahweh: <sup>2</sup> "You were very insignificant when I caused you to become the ruler of my Israelite people. But you have caused me to become very angry by doing the kinds of evil things that King Jeroboam did. You have also caused me to become angry by causing my people to sin.

### ULB:

16 <sup>1</sup> The word of Yahweh came to Jehu son of Hanani against Baasha, saying, <sup>2</sup> "Although I exalted you out of the dust and made you leader over my people Israel, you have walked in the way of Jeroboam and have made my people Israel to sin, so as to provoke me to anger with their sins.

### translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Jehu
- Baasha
- exalt, exaltation
- people of God, my people
- kingdom of Israel
- walk
- Jeroboam
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- angry, anger

### translationNotes:

- **The word of Yahweh came** - This idiom means God spoke. See how you translated this in [6:11](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke his message" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Although I exalted you** - This is God's message that Jehu was to give to Baasha. The word "you" refers to Baasha.
- **I exalted you out of the dust** - "I raised you out of the dust." Being in the dust on the ground represents not being important. Exalting someone represents making him important. AT: "I raised you from a very unimportant position" or "when you had no power or influence over people, I made you important" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **you have walked in the way of Jeroboam** - Walking represents behaving. Jeroboam and Baasha both sinned. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "you have done the same things that Jeroboam did" or "you have sinned as Jeroboam sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 16:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> So now I will get rid of you and your family. I will do to you just like I did to Jeroboam and his family. <sup>4</sup> The bodies of those in your family who die in this city will not be buried. They will be eaten by dogs, and the bodies of those who die in the fields will be eaten by vultures.”

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> See, I will completely sweep away Baasha and his family and I will make your family like the family of Jeroboam son of Nebat. <sup>4</sup> The dogs will eat anyone belonging to Baasha who dies in the city, and the birds of the sky will eat anyone who dies in the fields.”

### translationWords:

- sweep, swept
- family
- death, die, dead
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Yahweh continues telling Baasha what he will do to him.
- **See, I will completely sweep away Baasha and his family** - Yahweh is speaking to Baasha, and the phrase “his family” refers to Baasha’s family. This can be translated using the words “you” and “your.” AT: “Listen, Baasha. I will completely sweep away you and your family” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **I will completely sweep away** - Sweeping away represents destroying. AT: “I will completely destroy” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 16:5-6****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> The other things that Baasha did during the time that he ruled Israel, and the great things that his army did, are written in Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel. <sup>6</sup> When Baasha died, he was buried in Tirzah, the capital city. Then his son Elah became king.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> As for the other matters concerning Baasha, what he did, and his might, are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel? <sup>6</sup> Baasha slept with his ancestors and was buried in Tirzah, and Elah his son became king in his place.

**translationWords:**

- mighty, might
- written
- king
- sleep, asleep, fall asleep
- bury, buried, burial

**translationNotes:**

- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel?** - This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Baasha is in this other book. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. See how you translated this in [15:31](#). AT: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel?** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone has written about them in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Baasha slept with his ancestors** - Sleeping is a euphemism that represents dying. AT: “Baasha died as his ancestors had” or “Like his ancestors, Baasha died” (See: [Metaphor and Euphemism](#))
- **and was buried** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “and people buried him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Tirzah** - This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [14:17](#).
- **became king in his place** - The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” AT: “became king instead of Baasha” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 16:7****UDB:**

<sup>7</sup> Yahweh gave that message about Baasha and his family to the prophet Jehu. Baasha had done many deeds that Yahweh said were evil, which caused Yahweh to become angry. Baasha did the same kind of deeds that King Jeroboam and his family had done previously. Yahweh was also angry with Baasha because he had killed all of Jeroboam's family.

**ULB:**

<sup>7</sup> So by the prophet Jehu son of Hanani the word of Yahweh came against Baasha and his family, both because of all the evil that he did in the sight of Yahweh, so as to provoke him to anger with the work of his hands, like the family of Jeroboam, and also because he had killed all of Jeroboam's family.

**translationWords:**

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Jehu
- son, son of
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Baasha
- family
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- angry, anger
- works, deeds, work, acts
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Jeroboam

**translationNotes:**

- **the word of Yahweh came** - This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in **6:11**. AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: **Idiom**)
- **all the evil that he did in the sight of Yahweh** - The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. AT: "all the evil things Baasha did in Yahweh's judgment" or "all the things that Baasha did that Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **so as to provoke him to anger** - The abstract noun "anger" can be expressed with the adjective "angry." AT: "so as to make Yahweh very angry" or "that made God very angry" (See: **Abstract Nouns**)
- **with the work of his hands** - The hands represent Baasha or his actions. AT: "by the things Baasha had done" (See: **Synecdoche**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 16:8-10

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> After Asa had been the king of Judah for almost twenty-six years, Elah became the king of Israel. Elah ruled in Tirzah for only two years.

<sup>9</sup> A man named Zimri was one of Elah's army officers. He commanded the drivers of half of Elah's army's chariots. He made plans to kill Elah while Elah was in Tirzah, getting drunk at the house of a man named Arza. Arza was the man who took care of the things in the king's palace. <sup>10</sup> Zimri went into Arza's house and killed Elah. Then he became the king of Israel. That was when Asa had been the king of Judah for twenty-seven years.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> In the twenty-sixth year of Asa king of Judah, Elah son of Baasha began to reign over Israel in Tirzah; he reigned two years. <sup>9</sup> His servant Zimri, captain of half his chariots, conspired against him. Now Elah was in Tirzah, drinking himself drunk in the house of Arza, who was over the household in Tirzah. <sup>10</sup> Zimri went in, attacked him and killed him, in the twenty-seventh year of Asa king of Judah, and became king in his place.

### translationWords:

- Asa
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- reign
- kingdom of Israel
- chariot
- drunk, drunkard
- house
- household

### translationNotes:

- **Tirzah** - This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [14:17](#).
- **His servant Zimri** - "Elah's servant Zimri"
- **captain of half his chariots** - The word "chariots" here represents the soldiers who drove the chariots. AT: "captain of half his chariot drivers" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **drinking himself drunk** - This is an idiom. AT: "drinking so much wine that he was getting drunk" or "getting drunk" (See: [Idiom](#))

- **who was over the household** - Being over the household represents being in charge of the things in King Elah's house. AT: "who was in charge of the things in the Elah's house" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **attacked him and killed him** - "attacked and killed Elah"
- **became king in his place** - The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him." AT: "became king instead of Elah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 16:11-13

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> As soon as Zimri became king, he killed all of Baasha's family. He killed every male in Baasha's family and all of Baasha's male friends. <sup>12</sup> So he got rid of all of Baasha's family. That was just what Yahweh told the prophet Jehu would happen. <sup>13</sup> Baasha and his son Elah had sinned and induced the Israelite people to sin. They caused Yahweh, the God whom the Israelite people worshiped, to become angry, because they both urged the people to worship worthless idols.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> When Zimri began to reign and was seated on his throne, he killed all the family of Baasha. He did not leave alive a single male belonging to Baasha's relatives or friends. <sup>12</sup> So Zimri destroyed all the family of Baasha, according to the word of Yahweh which he spoke against Baasha by Jehu the prophet, <sup>13</sup> for all the sins of Baasha and the sins of Elah his son that they committed, and by which they had led Israel to sin, so that they provoked Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger with their idols.

### translationWords:

- throne
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- idol, idolatrous

### translationNotes:

- **He did not leave alive a single male** - This means that he killed all the men and boys. AT: "He did not leave even one male alive"
- **the word of Yahweh** - "the message of Yahweh" or "Yahweh's message"
- **which he spoke against Baasha by Jehu the prophet** - Speaking "by" a prophet represents telling a prophet to speak and the prophet speaking. AT: "that Yahweh told Jehu the prophet to speak against Baasha" (See: **Idiom**)
- **they had led Israel to sin** - Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do it. AT: "they had influenced Israel to sin" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **they had led Israel to sin** - Here the word "Israel" refers to the ten northern tribes of Israel. Baasha and Elah had been their king.
- **they provoked Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger with their idols** - God became angry with the people because they worshiped idols. The meaning of this can be made clear. AT:

“they made Yahweh, the God of Israel, angry because they worshiped idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **the God of Israel** - Here the word “Israel” refers to all of the twelve tribes descended from Jacob.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 16:14****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> Everything else that Elah did is written in Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> As for the other matters concerning Elah, all that he did, are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel?

**translationWords:**

- [written](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **are they not written ... Kings of Israel?** - This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Elah is in this other book. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. See how you translated this in [15:31](#). AT: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **are they not written ... Israel?** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone has written about them in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 16:15-17

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> So Zimri became the king of Israel after Asa had been king of Judah for twenty-seven years. But Zimri ruled in Tirzah for only seven days. The Israelite army was besieging Gibeah, a town that belonged to the Philistine people group. <sup>16</sup> The men in the Israelite army camp heard that Zimri had secretly planned to kill King Elah, and then had killed him. So on that day the soldiers chose Omri, the commander of their army, to become the king of Israel. <sup>17</sup> The Israelite army was camped near Gibbethon. When they heard what Zimri had done, they left there and went to Tirzah, and surrounded the city.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> In the twenty-seventh year of Asa king of Judah, Zimri reigned only for seven days in Tirzah. Now the army was camped by Gibbethon, which belonged to the Philistines. <sup>16</sup> The army camped there heard it said, “Zimri has plotted and has killed the king.” So that day in the camp, all Israel declared Omri, the commander of the army, king over Israel. <sup>17</sup> Omri went up from Gibbethon and all Israel with him, and they besieged Tirzah.

### translationWords:

- Asa
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- reign
- Philistines
- kingdom of Israel
- commander, command

### translationNotes:

- **Tirzah** - This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [14:17](#).
- **the army was camped by Gibbethon** - The word “army” refers to the army of the kingdom of Israel.
- **Gibbethon** - This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [15:27](#).
- **The army camped there heard it said** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The soldiers who camped there heard someone say” (See [Active or Passive](#))
- **all Israel** - Both times this phrase is used, it represents the army of Israel. Here the word “all” is a generalization meaning “most.” AT: “all the army of Israel” or “most of the soldiers in the army of Israel” or “the army of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 16:18-20

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> When Zimri realized that the city was about to be captured, he went into his palace and set it on fire. So the palace burned down, and he died in the fire. <sup>19</sup> He died because he had sinned by doing many things that Yahweh said were evil. Jeroboam had induced the Israelite people to sin, and Zimri sinned just like Jeroboam had sinned.

<sup>20</sup> All the other things that Zimri did, and the record of how he rebelled against King Elah, are written in Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> So when Zimri saw that the city had been taken, he went into the fortress attached to the king's palace and set fire to the building over him; in this way he died in the flames. <sup>19</sup> This was for the sins that he had committed in doing what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, by walking in the way of Jeroboam and in the sin that he had committed, so as to lead Israel to sin. <sup>20</sup> As for the other matters concerning Zimri, and the treason that he carried out, are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel?

### translationWords:

- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- palace
- fire
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Yahweh
- walk
- Jeroboam

### translationNotes:

- **that the city had been taken** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that Omri and the army had taken the city” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. AT: “what was evil in Yahweh's judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **walking in the way of Jeroboam** - Here walking represents behaving. AT: “doing the same things that Jeroboam had done” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **so as to lead Israel to sin** - Leading people to do something represents influencing them to do it. AT: “so as to influence Israel to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))



- **the treason that he carried out** - This treason refers to Zimri's plot to kill Elah, the king of Israel. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "how he plotted against King Elah" or "how he killed the king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel?** - This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Zimri is in this other book. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. See how you translated a similar phrase concerning Judah in [14:29](#). AT: "they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **are they not written ... Israel?** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "someone has written about them in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 16:21-22

### UDB:

<sup>21</sup> After Zimri died, the Israelite people were divided among themselves. One group wanted Tibni son of Ginath, to be their king. The other group wanted Omri to be the king. <sup>22</sup> Those who supported Omri were stronger than those who supported Tibni. So Tibni was killed, and Omri became king.

### ULB:

<sup>21</sup> Then the people of Israel were divided into two parts. Half of the people followed Tibni son of Ginath, to make him king, and half followed Omri. <sup>22</sup> But the people who followed Omri were stronger than the people who followed Tibni son of Ginath. So Tibni died, and Omri became king.

### translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)

### translationNotes:

- **followed Tibni ... followed Omri** - Here “followed” represents supporting or wanting to make him king. AT: “supported Tibni son of Ginath, to make him king, and half supported Omri” or “wanted to make Tibni son of Ginath king, and half wanted to make Omri king” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **were stronger than the people who followed Tibni** - “overpowered the people who followed Tibni”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 16:23-24

### UDB:

<sup>23</sup> Omri became king when Asa had been king of Judah for almost thirty-one years. Omri ruled Israel for twelve years. For the first six years he ruled in Tirzah. <sup>24</sup> Then he bought a hill from a man named Shemer and paid him about sixty-eight kilograms of silver for it. Then Omri ordered his men to build a city on that hill, and he called it Samaria, to honor Shemer, the man who owned it previously.

### ULB:

<sup>23</sup> Omri began to reign over Israel in the thirty-first year of Asa king of Judah, and he reigned twelve years. He reigned from Tirzah for six years. <sup>24</sup> He bought the hill of Samaria from Shemer for two talents of silver. He built a city on the hill and called the name of the city Samaria, after the name of Shemer, the past owner of the hill.

### translationWords:

- [Asa](#)
- [king](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [silver](#)
- [name](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Tirzah** - This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [14:17](#).
- **Shemer** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **two talents of silver** - You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: “68 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))
- **He built a city** - The word “He” refers to Omri. He commanded people to build the city. AT: “Omri had his people build a city” or “Omri commanded and his workers built a city” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **after the name of Shemer** - This is an idiom that means “to honor Shemer” or “so that people would remember Shemer.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)

- 1 Kings 16 Translation Questions

## 1 Kings 16:25-26

### UDB:

<sup>25</sup> But Omri did many things that Yahweh said were evil. He did more evil deeds than any of the kings who ruled Israel before he did. <sup>26</sup> When Jeroboam was previously the king, he had induced the Israelite people to sin, and Omri committed the same kind of sins that Jeroboam did. The Israelite people caused Yahweh, the God the Israelite people had worshiped, to become very angry, because they worshiped worthless idols.

### ULB:

<sup>25</sup> Omri did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh and acted more wickedly than all who had been before him. <sup>26</sup> For he walked in all the way of Jeroboam son of Nebat and in his sins by which he led Israel to sin, to provoke Yahweh, the God of Israel, to be angry with their worthless idols.

### translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Yahweh
- walk
- Jeroboam
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- angry, anger
- idol, idolatrous

### translationNotes:

- **what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. AT: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **walked in all the ways of Jeroboam son of Nebat** - Walking represents behaving. AT: "did all the same things that Jeroboam son of Nebat did" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in his sins by which he led Israel to sin** - Possible meanings are that "his" and "he" refer to 1) Baasha or 2) Jeroboam.
- **in his sins** - Possible meanings are walking in his sins represents 1) sinning as Jeroboam sinned. AT: "he sinned as Jeroboam sinned" or 2) or sinning habitually. AT: "he sinned habitually" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **by which he led Israel to sin** - Leading people to sin represents influencing them to sin. AT: "his sins, by which he influenced Israel to sin" or "and by sinning like this, he influenced people to sin."

- **to provoke Yahweh ... to be angry with their worthless idols** - God became angry with the people because they worshiped idols. See how you translated a similar phrase in [16:13](#). AT: “to make Yahweh, the God of Israel, angry because they worshiped worthless idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **their worthless idols** - The word “worthless” here reminds people that idols are worthless because they cannot do anything. AT: “their idols, which are worthless” or “their idols, which are useless” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))
- **the God of Israel** - Here the word “Israel” refers to all of the twelve tribes descended from Jacob.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 16:27-28

### UDB:

<sup>27</sup> Everything that Omri did, and the record of the victories that his army won, are written in Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel. <sup>28</sup> After Omri died, he was buried in Samaria, and his son Ahab became king.

### ULB:

<sup>27</sup> As for the other matters concerning Omri which he did, and the might that he showed, are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel? <sup>28</sup> So Omri slept with his ancestors and was buried in Samaria and Ahab his son became king in his place.

### translationWords:

- [mighty, might](#)
- [written](#)
- [sleep, asleep, fall asleep](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [son, son of](#)

### translationNotes:

- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel?** - This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Omri is in this other book. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. See how you translated this in [15:31](#). AT: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **are they not written ... Israel?** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone has written about them in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Omri slept with his ancestors** - The euphemism “sleeping” here represents dying. AT: “Omri died as his ancestors had” or “Like his ancestors, Omri died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))
- **became king in his place** - The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” AT: “became king instead of Omri” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 16:29-30

### UDB:

<sup>29</sup> Ahab became king of Israel when Asa had ruled Judah for almost thirty-eight years. Ahab ruled in the city of Samaria for twenty-two years. <sup>30</sup> Ahab did many things that Yahweh said were evil. He did more evil deeds than any of the kings who ruled Israel before he did.

### ULB:

<sup>29</sup> In the thirty-eighth year of Asa king of Judah, Ahab son of Omri began to reign over Israel. Ahab son of Omri reigned over Israel in Samaria twenty-two years. <sup>30</sup> Ahab son of Omri did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, more than all those who were before him.

### translationWords:

- [Asa](#)
- [king](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [reign](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

### translationNotes:

- **what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. AT: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 16:31-33****UDB:**

<sup>31</sup> He committed the same kind of sins that Jeroboam did, but he did things that were worse than the things that Jeroboam did. He married a woman named Jezebel, the daughter of Ethbaal, the king of the city of Sidon. Then Ahab started to worship Baal, the god that the Canaan people group worshiped. <sup>32</sup> He built a temple in Samaria in order that the Israelite people could worship Baal there, and he put an altar there for making sacrifices to Baal. <sup>33</sup> He also made an idol that represented Asherah, Baal's wife. He did many more things that caused Yahweh to become angry. He did more evil things than any of the previous kings of Israel had done.

**ULB:**

<sup>31</sup> It was to Ahab a trivial thing to walk in the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, so he took as his wife Jezebel the daughter of Ethbaal, king of the Sidonians; he went and worshiped Baal and bowed down to him. <sup>32</sup> He built an altar for Baal in the house of Baal, which he had built in Samaria. <sup>33</sup> Ahab made an Asherah pole. Ahab did even more to provoke Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger than all the kings of Israel who had been before him.

**translationWords:**

- walk
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Jeroboam
- Jezebel
- Sidon, Sidonians
- worship
- Baal
- bow, bow down
- altar
- house
- Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth
- Yahweh
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- kingdom of Israel

**translationNotes:**

- **It was to Ahab a trivial thing to walk in the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat** - This implies that Ahab wanted to commit worse sins. The full meaning of this statement can be made

explicit. AT: “It was as if Ahab thought that walking in the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat was not enough” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **It was to Ahab a trivial thing** - This is an idiom. The phrase “to Ahab” means that Ahab considered or thought something. AT: “Ahab considered it a trivial thing” or “Ahab thought that it was not enough” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **a trivial thing** - “an insignificant thing” or “not enough”
- **to walk in the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat** - Walking in Jeroboam’s sins represents sinning as Jeroboam had sinned. AT: “to sin as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **worshiped Baal and bowed down to him** - These two phrases mean the same thing. The phrase “bowed down to him” describes the posture that people used in worship. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **the God of Israel** - Here the word “Israel” refers to the nation of Israel, which consisted of twelve tribes.
- **the kings of Israel** - Here the word “Israel” refers to the kingdom of Israel, which consisted of ten tribes.

#### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 16:34****UDB:**

<sup>34</sup> During the years that Ahab ruled, Hiel, a man from the city of Bethel, rebuilt the city of Jericho. But when he started to rebuild the city, his oldest son Abiram died. And when the city was finished, while Hiel was building the city gates, his youngest son Segub died. They died just as Yahweh had told Joshua would happen to the sons of anyone who would rebuild Jericho.

**ULB:**

<sup>34</sup> During Ahab's rule, Hiel of Bethel rebuilt Jericho. Hiel laid the foundation of the city at the cost of the life of Abiram, his firstborn son; and Segub, his youngest son, lost his life while he was building the gates of the city, in keeping with the word of Yahweh which he spoke by Joshua son of Nun.

**translationWords:**

- Bethel
- Jericho
- foundation, founded
- firstborn
- gate, gate bar
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Joshua

**translationNotes:**

- **at the cost of the life of Abiram, his firstborn son** - The consequence of building the city is spoken of as if it were a cost that Hiel paid. AT: "and the consequence of his sin was that Abiram, his firstborn son, died" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Segub, his youngest son, lost his life** - Dying is spoken of as if he lost his life. AT: "Segub, his youngest son, died" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **while he was building the gates of the city** - "while Hiel was building the gates of the city"
- **in keeping with the word of Yahweh** - "according to the word of Yahweh"
- **the word of Yahweh** - Here the word "word" represents a message. AT: "the message of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **which he spoke by Joshua son of Nun** - Speaking "by" someone represents both telling someone to speak and the person doing it. AT: "which Yahweh caused Joshua son of Nun to speak" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 16 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 17 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This is the beginning of the story of Elijah. (1 Kings 17 – 2 Kings 2)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Baal worship

Ahab had introduced the worship of Baal, the god people thought brought rain, to Israel. Because of this, God caused a drought. Elijah told Ahab that it would not rain or dew until he, Elijah, said so. Elijah had to hide so Ahab would not kill him for bringing the drought. (See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 17:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Kings 17:1

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Elijah was a prophet who lived in the city of Tishbe in the region of Gilead. One day he went to King Ahab and said to him, “Yahweh is the God whom we Israelites worship and the God whom I worship and serve. Just as certainly as Yahweh lives, there will be no dew or rain for the next few years, unless I command it to fall.”

### ULB:

17 <sup>1</sup> Elijah the Tishbite, from Tishbe in Gilead, said to Ahab, “As Yahweh, the God of Israel lives, before whom I stand, there will not be dew or rain these years unless I say so.”

### translationWords:

- [Elijah](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the Tishbite** - This is the name of a people group from Tishbe. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Tishbe** - This is the name of a town in the region of Gilead. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **As Yahweh, the God of Israel lives** - This phrase is an oath to emphasize that what he will say is true.
- **before whom I stand** - This is an idiom that means “to serve.” AT: “whom I serve” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **dew** - drops of water that form on the plants during the night

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 17 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 17:2-4****UDB:**

<sup>2</sup> Then Yahweh said to Elijah, <sup>3</sup> "Because you have made the king angry with you, escape from the king and, go to the east, to the Cherith Brook, east of where it flows into the Jordan River. <sup>4</sup> You will be able to drink water from the brook, and you will be able to eat what the crows bring to you, because I have commanded them to bring food to you."

**ULB:**

<sup>2</sup> The word of Yahweh came to Elijah, saying, <sup>3</sup> "Leave from here and go eastward; hide yourself by the brook Cherith, east of the Jordan. <sup>4</sup> It will happen that you will drink from the brook, and I have commanded the ravens to feed you there."

**translationWords:**

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **The word of Yahweh came** - This idiom means God spoke. See how you translated this in [6:11](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke his message" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Cherith** - This is the name of a very small stream. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **It will happen that** - This phrase is used to introduce how Yahweh will take care of Elijah during the drought. AT: "There"
- **ravens** - large, black birds (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 17 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 17:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> So Elijah did what Yahweh commanded him to do. He went and camped alongside Cherith Brook.

<sup>6</sup> Crows brought bread and meat to him every morning and every evening, and he drank water from the brook.

<sup>7</sup> But after a while, the water in the brook dried up, because rain did not fall anywhere in the land.

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> So Elijah went and did as the word of Yahweh commanded. He went to live by the brook Cherith, east of the Jordan. <sup>6</sup> The ravens brought him bread and meat in the morning and bread and meat in the evening, and he drank from the brook. <sup>7</sup> But after a while the brook dried up because there was no rain in the land.

**translationWords:**

- [bread](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **as the word of Yahweh commanded** - Here “the word” represents Yahweh himself. AT: “as Yahweh commanded” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the brook Cherith** - This is the name of a very small stream. Translate this as you did in [17:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **in the land** - “in that area” or “in that country”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 17 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 17:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Then Yahweh said to Elijah, <sup>9</sup> “Go and live in the village of Zarephath, near the city of Sidon. There is a widow there who will give you food to eat. I have already told her what to do about that.” <sup>10</sup> So Elijah did what God said. He went to Zarephath. As he arrived at the gates of the village, he saw a widow who was gathering sticks. He said to her, “Would you please bring me a cup of water?”

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> The word of Yahweh came to him, saying, <sup>9</sup> “Arise, go to Zarephath, which belongs to Sidon, and live there. Look, I have commanded a widow there to provide for you.” <sup>10</sup> So he arose and went to Zarephath, and when he came to the gate of the city a widow was there gathering sticks. So he called to her and said, “Please bring me a little water in a jar so that I may drink.”

**translationWords:**

- [Sidon, Sidonians](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [call, calling, called, call out](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **The word of Yahweh came** - This idiom means God spoke. See how you translated this in [6:11](#). AT: “Yahweh spoke his message” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **came to him** - Here the word “him” refers to Elijah.
- **Zarephath** - This is a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Look** - The word “Look” here adds emphasis to what follows.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 17 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 17:11-13

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> While she was going to get it, he called out to her, “Bring me a piece of bread, too!”

<sup>12</sup> But she replied, “Your God knows that what I am telling you is true. I do not have even one piece of bread in my house. I have only a handful of flour in a jar, and a little olive oil in a jug. I was gathering a few sticks to use these to make a fire and cook one more meal, and then after my son and I eat that, we will die from hunger.”

<sup>13</sup> But Elijah said to her, “Do not be worried! Go home and do what you said that you were going to do. But first, bake me a little loaf of bread and bring it to me. After you do that, take what is left and prepare some food for you and your son.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> As she was going to get water he called to her, and said, “Please bring me a piece of bread in your hand.” <sup>12</sup> She replied, “As Yahweh your God lives, I do not have any bread, but only a handful of meal in a jar and a little oil in a jug. See, I am gathering two sticks so I may go in and cook it for me and my son, that we may eat it, and die.” <sup>13</sup> Elijah said to her, “Do not fear. Go and do as you have said, but make me a little bread first and bring it out to me. Then afterward make some for you and for your son.

### translationWords:

- Yahweh
- God
- oil
- death, die, dead
- Elijah
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

### translationNotes:

- **As Yahweh your God lives** - This phrase is an oath to emphasize that what she will say is true.
- **only a handful of meal** - “only a little bit of meal”
- **meal** - “flour.” This what is used to make bread.
- **See** - The word “See” here adds emphasis to what follows.
- **two sticks** - This may refer to two sticks or to only a few sticks. (See: [Numbers](#))
- **that we may eat it, and die** - It is implied that they will die because they do not have anymore food. AT: “that we may eat. Afterwards, we will starve to death” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **afterward make some for you and for your son** - It is implicit that there would be enough flour and oil to make more bread. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 17 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 17:14-16****UDB:**

<sup>14</sup> I know that you will be able to do that, because Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, says this, “There will always be plenty of flour and olive oil left in your containers, until the time when I send rain again and the crops grow again!”

<sup>15</sup> So the woman did exactly what Elijah told her to do. And she and her son and Elijah had enough food every day, <sup>16</sup> because the flour in the jar was never finished, and the jug of oil was never empty. That happened just like Yahweh had told Elijah that it would happen.

**ULB:**

<sup>14</sup> For Yahweh, the God of Israel, says, “The jar of meal will not empty, neither will the jug of oil stop flowing, until the day that Yahweh sends rain on the earth.” <sup>15</sup> So she did as Elijah had told her. She and Elijah, along with her household, ate for many days. <sup>16</sup> The jar of meal did not empty, neither did the jug of oil stop flowing, just as the word of Yahweh had said, as he had spoken by Elijah.

**translationWords:**

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- send, send out, sent
- earth, earthly
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

**translationNotes:**

- **Yahweh sends rain** - This is an idiom that means Yahweh causes it to rain. AT: “Yahweh causes rain to fall” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **She and Elijah, along with her household, ate for many days** - In the original language it says, “And she and he and her household ate for many days.” It is unclear who “he” is. Possible meanings are 1) Elijah, the widow, and her son ate for many days or 2) the widow, her son, and everyone living in her house ate for many days or 3) Elijah, the widow, and everyone living in her house ate for many days.
- **along with her household** - Possible meanings for “household” are 1) this refers only to the widow’s son or 2) this refers to other people who live in her house but are not named in the story or 3) this refers to her son and others living in her house.
- **just as the word of Yahweh had said** - Here “word” represents Yahweh himself. AT: “just as Yahweh had said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 17 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 17:17-18

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> Some time later, the woman's son became sick. He continued to get worse, and finally he died.

<sup>18</sup> So the woman went to Elijah and said to him, "You are a prophet; so why have you done this to me? Have you come here to punish me for my sins by causing my son to die?"

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> After these things the woman's son, the woman who owned the house, fell sick. His sickness was so severe that there was no more breath left in him. <sup>18</sup> So his mother said to Elijah, "What do you have against me, man of God? Have you come to me to remind me of my sin and to kill my son?"

### translationWords:

- [son, son of](#)
- [breathe, breath](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the woman's son, the woman who owned the house** - "the son of the woman who owned the house"
- **there was no more breath left in him** - This is a polite way of saying the boy died. AT: "he stopped breathing" or "he died" (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **man of God** - The phrase "man of God" is another title for a prophet.
- **of my sin** - This means sins in general not a specific sin. AT: "of my sins" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 17 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 17:19-21****UDB:**

<sup>19</sup> But Elijah replied, “Give your son to me.” So she gave her son to him, and he took the boy’s body from her and carried it up the steps to the room where he stayed. He laid the boy’s body on his bed. <sup>20</sup> Then Elijah cried out to Yahweh, “O Yahweh my God, this widow has kindly allowed me to stay in her home. So why have you brought this tragedy to her and caused her son to die?” <sup>21</sup> Then Elijah stretched himself on top of the boy’s body and called out to Yahweh saying, “Yahweh my God, please allow this boy to become alive again!” He did this three times.

**ULB:**

<sup>19</sup> Then Elijah replied to her, “Give me your son.” He took the boy from her arms and carried him up into the room where he was staying, and he laid the boy on his own bed. <sup>20</sup> He cried to Yahweh and said, “Yahweh my God, have you also brought disaster on the widow with whom I am staying, by killing her son?” <sup>21</sup> Then Elijah stretched himself on the child three times; he cried out to Yahweh and said, “Yahweh my God, I beg you, please let this child’s life return to him.”

**translationWords:**

- **Elijah**
- **Yahweh**
- **God**
- **beg, beggar**
- **life, live, living, alive**

**translationNotes:**

- **where he was staying** - Here “he” refers to Elijah.
- **on his own bed** - Here “his” refers to Elijah.
- **have you also brought disaster on the widow with whom I am staying, by killing her son?** - Possible meanings are 1) Elijah is truly asking a question. AT: “why would you cause the widow with whom I am staying to suffer even more by killing her son” or 2) Elijah uses a question to express how sad he is. AT: “surely, you would not cause the widow with whom I am staying to suffer even more by killing her son” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **have you also brought disaster on the widow** - Causing the widow to suffer is spoken of as if “disaster” were an object that is placed on the widow. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **also brought disaster** - Here “also” means in addition to the disaster that the drought has caused.
- **stretched himself on the child** - This is an idiom. AT: “lay on top of the child” (See: **Idiom**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 17 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 17:22-24****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> Yahweh heard what Elijah prayed, and he caused the boy to become alive again. <sup>23</sup> Elijah carried the boy down the steps and gave him to his mother. He said, “Look, your son is alive!”

<sup>24</sup> The woman said to Elijah, “Now I know for certain that you are a prophet and that the words that you speak are truly from Yahweh!”

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Yahweh listened to the voice of Elijah; the life of the child returned to him, and he revived. <sup>23</sup> Elijah took the child and brought him out of his room down into the house; he handed the boy to his mother and said, “See, your son is alive.” <sup>24</sup> The woman said to Elijah, “Now I know that you are a man of God, and that the word of Yahweh in your mouth is true.”

**translationWords:**

- [voice](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Yahweh listened to the voice of Elijah** - Here “voice” represents what Elijah prayed. AT: “Yahweh answered Elijah’s prayer” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the life of the child returned to him, and he revived** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing. AT: “the child came back to life” or “the child lived again” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **his room** - Here “his” refers to Elijah.
- **See, your son is alive** - The word “See” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
- **the word of Yahweh in your mouth is true** - Here “word” represents a message. Also, “mouth” represents what Elijah said. AT: “the message that you spoke from Yahweh is true” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 17 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 18 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The story of Elijah continues in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Baal

God proved himself to all the people of Israel. Elijah went to meet Ahab. He told Ahab to bring the 450 prophets of Baal and all the people to Mount Carmel. Then he proposed an experiment. The prophets of Baal took one bull and he took the other and they killed them, cut them up and placed them on wood on an altar but did not put any fire under it. The God who answers by fire is the true God. So the prophets of Baal danced and prayed to Baal all morning and half the afternoon. Then Elijah built his altar and drenched it with water and prayed. God answered with fire that burned up the sacrifice, the altar and the water. Then Elijah told the people to catch the prophets of Baal and kill them. Then Elijah prayed for rain and it rained really hard. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Humor

Elijah insults the false god Baal. He states, “Perhaps he is thinking, or is relieving himself, or he is traveling on a journey, or perhaps he is sleeping and must be awakened.” Baal was too busy in the bathroom to answer the prophets. “Relieving himself” is a euphemism. (See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#) and [Euphemism](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 18:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Kings 18:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> For almost three years there was no rain in Samaria. Then Yahweh said this to Elijah: “Go and meet with King Ahab and tell him that I will soon send rain.” <sup>2</sup> So Elijah went to talk to Ahab.

In Samaria there was almost no food for anyone to eat.

### ULB:

**18** <sup>1</sup> So after many days the word of Yahweh came to Elijah, in the third year of the drought, saying, “Go, show yourself to Ahab and I will send rain on the land.” <sup>2</sup> Elijah went to show himself to Ahab; now the famine was severe in Samaria.

### translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Elijah
- Ahab
- send, send out, sent
- famine
- Samaria, Samaritan

### translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - “Word” is metonymy for what a person says. See how you translated this in [6:11](#). AT: “Yahweh spoke his word” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **send rain on the land** - “cause rain to fall on the land”
- **now the famine was severe** - The word “now” is used here to mark a break in the main storyline. Here the writer tells background information about how the famine had affected Samaria. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 18:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> There was a man there named Obadiah. He was in charge of the king's palace. He greatly revered Yahweh. <sup>4</sup> One time when Queen Jezebel had tried to kill all Yahweh's prophets, Obadiah hid a hundred of them in two caves. He put fifty prophets in each cave, and he brought food and water to them.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Ahab called Obadiah, who was in charge of the palace. Now Obadiah honored Yahweh very much, <sup>4</sup> for when Jezebel was killing the prophets of Yahweh, Obadiah took one hundred prophets and hid them by fifties in a cave and fed them with bread and water.

### translationWords:

- [call, calling, called, call out](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jezebel](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [bread](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Now Obadiah honored Yahweh** - The word "Now" is used here to mark a break in the main storyline. Here the writer tells about a new person in the story.
- **one hundred prophets and hid them by fifties** - "100 prophets and hid them in groups of 50" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 18:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> By this time, the famine had become very severe in Samaria. So Ahab summoned Obadiah and said to him, “We must look near every spring and in every valley to see if we can find enough grass to give to some of my horses and mules, so that they will not all die.” <sup>6</sup> So they both started walking through the land. Obadiah went by himself in one direction, and Ahab went in another direction by himself.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Ahab said to Obadiah, “Go through the land to all the water springs and brooks. Perhaps we will find grass and save the horses and mules alive, so that we will not lose all the animals.” <sup>6</sup> So they divided the land between them to pass through it and look for water. Ahab went one way by himself and Obadiah went another way.

### translationWords:

- [water, waters](#)
- [save, safe](#)
- [horse](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

### translationNotes:

- **save the horses and mules alive ... not lose all the animals** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. AT: “prevent the horses and mules from dying” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Ahab went one way by himself and Obadiah went another way** - The phrase “by himself” emphasizes that Ahab and Obadiah went in separate directions, not necessarily that no one was with Ahab. AT: “Ahab lead a team in one direction and Obadiah lead a team in the other direction” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 18:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> While Obadiah was walking along, he saw Elijah coming toward him. Obadiah recognized Elijah and bowed down in front of him and said, “Is it really you, Elijah, my master?”

<sup>8</sup> Elijah replied, “Yes. Now go and tell Ahab your master that I am here.”

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> As Obadiah was on the road, Elijah unexpectedly met him. Obadiah recognized him and lay facedown on the ground. He said, “Is it you, my master Elijah?” <sup>8</sup> Elijah answered him, “It is I. Go tell your master, ‘Look, Elijah is here.’”

### translationWords:

- [Elijah](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)

### translationNotes:

- **master Elijah** - Here the word “master” is used as a term of respect.
- **Go tell your master, ‘Look, Elijah is here.’** - Here the word “master” refers to Ahab.
- **Look** - The word “Look” here adds emphasis to what follows.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 18:9-11****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> Obadiah objected. He said, "Sir, I have not harmed you at all. So why are you sending me back to Ahab? He will kill me!" <sup>10</sup> Yahweh your God knows that I am telling the truth when I solemnly declare that King Ahab has searched in every kingdom to find you. Each time that some king said to him, 'Elijah is not here,' Ahab demanded that the king of that country solemnly swear that the king was telling the truth. <sup>11</sup> Now you say to me, 'Go and tell your master that Elijah is here!'

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> Obadiah replied, "How have I sinned, that you would give your servant into the hand of Ahab, for him to kill me?" <sup>10</sup> As Yahweh your God lives, there is no nation or kingdom where my master has not sent men to find you. Whenever a nation or kingdom says, 'Elijah is not here,' Ahab makes them take an oath swearing that they could not find you. <sup>11</sup> Yet now you say, 'Go, tell your master that Elijah is here.'

**translationWords:**

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- servant, slave, slavery
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Ahab
- Yahweh
- God
- nation
- kingdom
- send, send out, sent
- oath, swear, swear by

**translationNotes:**

- **How have I sinned ... for him to kill me?** - Obadiah asks this question to emphasize the danger to himself because of King Ahab's anger at Elijah. AT: "I have not wronged you ... for him to kill me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **give your servant into the hand of Ahab** - "Hand" is metonymy for power and control. AT: "deliver your servant to Ahab" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **your servant** - Obadiah refers to himself as Elijah's servant in order to honor Elijah.
- **As Yahweh your God lives** - This is an oath used to emphasize that what he is saying is true.
- **there is no nation ... where my master has not sent men** - This can be expressed positively. AT: "my master has sent men everywhere" (See: [Double Negatives](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

- **Yet now** - This phrase is used to emphasize the danger in what Elijah is telling Obadiah to do.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 18:12-13

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> But as soon as I leave you, the Spirit of Yahweh will carry you away, and I will not know where he will take you. So when I tell Ahab that you are here and he comes to me and he does not find you here, he will kill me! But I do not deserve to die because I have revered Yahweh since I was a boy. <sup>13</sup> My master, have you not heard about what I did when Jezebel wanted to kill all of Yahweh's prophets? I hid a hundred of them in two caves and took food and water to them.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> As soon as I am gone from you, the Spirit of Yahweh will carry you some place I do not know. Then when I go and tell Ahab, and when he cannot find you, he will kill me. Yet I, your servant, have worshiped Yahweh from my youth. <sup>13</sup> Has it not been told to you, my master, what I did when Jezebel killed the prophets of Yahweh, how I hid one hundred of Yahweh's prophets by fifties in a cave and fed them with bread and water?

### translationWords:

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [worship](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jezebel](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [bread](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Has it not been told to you ... with bread and water?** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Surely you have been told about what I did ... with bread and water!" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **my master** - Here the word "master" is a term of respect used to refer to Elijah.
- **one hundred of Yahweh's prophets by fifties** - "100 of Yahweh's prophets in groups of 50" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 18:14-15

### UDB:

<sup>14</sup> Now, sir, you say, ‘Go and tell your master that Elijah is here.’ But if I do that, and he comes and you are not here, he will kill me!”

<sup>15</sup> But Elijah replied, “Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, the one whom I serve, knows that I am telling the truth as I solemnly declare that I will go to meet with Ahab today.”

### ULB:

<sup>14</sup> Now you say to me, ‘Go and tell your master that Elijah is here,’ so that he will kill me.” <sup>15</sup> Then Elijah responded, “As Yahweh of hosts lives, before whom I stand, I will surely show myself to Ahab today.”

### translationWords:

- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Go and tell your master that Elijah is here** - Translate this quotation as in [18:11](#).
- **your master** - Here “master” refers to King Ahab.
- **As Yahweh of hosts lives** - This is an oath to emphasize that what he will say is true.
- **before whom I stand** - To “stand before” is an idiom for being in someone’s presence and ready to serve him. AT: “whom I serve” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 18:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> So Obadiah went to tell Ahab that Elijah had come. Ahab went to meet with him. <sup>17</sup> When he saw Elijah, he said to him, “Is that you, the one who causes trouble for the people of Israel?”

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> So Obadiah went to meet Ahab, and told him what Elijah said. Then the king went to meet Elijah. <sup>17</sup> When Ahab saw Elijah, he said to him, “Is it you? You are the one who brings trouble to Israel!”

**translationWords:**

- [Ahab](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **told him what Elijah said** - “Obadiah told Ahab what Elijah had told him to say”
- **Is it you? You are the one who brings trouble to Israel!** - Ahab asks the question for emphasis to be certain about Elijah’s identity. AT: “So here you are. You are the troublemaker of Israel!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 18:18-19

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> Elijah replied, "It is not I who have caused trouble for the people of Israel! You and your family are the ones who have caused trouble! You have refused to obey Yahweh's commands, and you have worshiped the idols of Baal instead. <sup>19</sup> So now, command all the Israelite people to come to Mount Carmel, and be sure to bring all the 450 prophets who worship Baal and the four hundred prophets who worship the goddess Asherah, the ones to whom your wife Jezebel always invites to eat with her."

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> Elijah answered, "I have not brought trouble Israel, but you and your father's family are the ones who have caused trouble by abandoning the commandments of Yahweh and by following the Baals. <sup>19</sup> Now then, send word and gather to me all Israel at Mount Carmel, along with the 450 prophets of Baal and the four hundred prophets of Asherah who eat at Jezebel's table."

### translationWords:

- trouble, troubles, troubled
- ancestor, father, forefather
- family
- command, to command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Baal
- idol, idolatrous
- send, send out, sent
- word
- Carmel, Mount Carmel
- Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth
- Jezebel

### translationNotes:

- **all Israel** - This is a generalization to refer to the leaders and people who represent the ten tribes of the northern kingdom. (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **450 prophets** - "four hundred and fifty prophets" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **four hundred prophets** - "400 prophets" (See: [Numbers](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 18:20-21

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> So Ahab summoned all his prophets and all the other Israelite people to the top of Mount Carmel, and Elijah went up there too. <sup>21</sup> Then Elijah stood in front of them and said, “How long are you going to be undecided about who is truly God? If Yahweh is God, then worship him. If Baal is truly God, then worship him!” But the people said nothing in reply, because they were afraid of what Jezebel would do to them if they admitted that they worshiped Yahweh.

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> So Ahab sent word to all the people of Israel and gathered the prophets together at Mount Carmel. <sup>21</sup> Elijah came near to all the people and said, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, follow him. But if Baal is God, then follow him.” Yet the people did not answer him a word.

### translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [mind](#)
- [God](#)
- [word](#)

### translationNotes:

- **sent word** - “Word” is metonymy for what a person says. This is a common statement used with the meaning understood. AT: “sent a message” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **How long will you keep changing your mind?** - Elijah asks this question to urge the people to make a decision. AT: “You have been indecisive for long enough.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **did not answer him a word** - “did not say anything” or “were silent”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 18:22-24****UDB:**

<sup>22</sup> Then Elijah said to them, "I am the only true prophet of Yahweh who is left, but Baal has 450 prophets. <sup>23</sup> Bring two bulls. The prophets of Baal may choose the one that they want. They must kill it and cut it into pieces and lay the pieces on the wood that is on the altar that they made. But they must not light a fire under the wood. I will kill the other bull and cut it in pieces and lay the pieces on the altar that I make. <sup>24</sup> Then they must call to their god, and I will call to Yahweh. The god who answers by lighting a fire to the wood that is on that altar is the true God!"

Then all the people thought that Elijah's suggestion was good.

**ULB:**

<sup>22</sup> Then Elijah said to the people, "I, I alone, am left as a prophet of Yahweh, but Baal's prophets are 450 men. <sup>23</sup> So let them give us two bulls. Let them choose one bull for themselves and cut it in pieces, and lay it on the wood, but put no fire under it. Then I will prepare the other bull and lay it on the wood, and put no fire under it. <sup>24</sup> Then you will call on the name of your god, and I will call on the name of Yahweh, and the God who answers by fire, then let him be God." So all the people answered and said, "This is good."

**translationWords:**

- **Elijah**
- **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess**
- **Baal**
- **cow, calf, bull, cattle**
- **fire**
- **call, calling, called, call out**
- **name**
- **false god, foreign god, god, goddess**
- **God**
- **good, goodness**

**translationNotes:**

- **I, I alone, am left** - The word "I" is repeated for emphasis.
- **call on the name of your god ... call on the name of Yahweh** - "Name" is metonymy for the reputation and honor of someone and "calling on" him represents an appeal. AT: "call to your god ... call to Yahweh" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **all the people answered and said, "This is good."** - "all the people said, 'This is a good thing to do.'"

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 18:25-26****UDB:**

<sup>25</sup> Then Elijah said to the prophets of Baal, “You call to Baal first, because there are many of you. Choose one of the bulls and prepare it, and then call to your god. But do not light a fire under the wood!” <sup>26</sup> So they killed one of the bulls and cut it up and placed the pieces on the altar. Then they called out to Baal all morning. They shouted, “Baal, answer us!” But no one answered. There was no reply at all .

Then they danced wildly around the altar that they had made.

**ULB:**

<sup>25</sup> So Elijah said to the prophets of Baal, “Choose one bull for yourselves and prepare it first, for you are many people. Then call on the name of your god, but put no fire under the bull.” <sup>26</sup> They took the bull that was given to them and prepared it, and they called on the name of Baal from morning until noon, saying, “Baal, hear us.” But there was no voice, nor anyone who answered. They danced around the altar they had made.

**translationWords:**

- **Elijah**
- **prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess**
- **Baal**
- **cow, calf, bull, cattle**
- **name**
- **false god, foreign god, god, goddess**
- **voice**
- **altar**

**translationNotes:**

- **prepare it** - “make it ready to be sacrificed”
- **you are many people** - Here the word “you” is plural. (See: **Forms of ‘You’ - Dual/Plural**)
- **They took the bull** - “The prophets of Baal took the bull”
- **the bull that was given to them** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the bull that someone gave them” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **But there was no voice, nor anyone who answered** - These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that there was no one to respond to the prayers of the false prophets. AT: “But Baal did not say or do anything” (See: **Parallelism** and **Metonymy**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 18:27-29

### UDB:

<sup>27</sup> About noontime, Elijah started to make fun of them. He said, “Surely Baal is a god, so it seems that you must shout louder! Perhaps he is thinking about something, or perhaps he has gone to the toilet. Or perhaps he is traveling somewhere, or perhaps he is asleep and you need to wake him up!” <sup>28</sup> So they shouted louder. Then, doing one of the things that they frequently did when they worshiped Baal, they slashed themselves with knives and swords until a lot of blood flowed. <sup>29</sup> They continued calling out to Baal all afternoon. But there was no voice that gave a reply, no answer, no god who paid attention.

### ULB:

<sup>27</sup> At noon Elijah mocked them and said, “Shout out loudly! He is a god! Perhaps he is thinking, or is relieving himself, or he is traveling on a journey, or perhaps he is sleeping and must be awakened.” <sup>28</sup> So they shouted more loudly, and they cut themselves, as they usually did, with swords and spears, until their blood flowed out over themselves. <sup>29</sup> Midday passed, and they were still raving until the time of offering of the evening sacrifice, but there was no voice or anyone to answer; there was no one who paid any attention to their pleadings.

### translationWords:

- Elijah
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- sleep, asleep, fall asleep
- sword
- spear
- blood
- sacrifice, offering
- plead, pleading, plea

### translationNotes:

- **Perhaps** - “Maybe” or “It could be that”
- **relieving himself** - This euphemism is a more pleasant way to express a harsh statement. Elijah uses understatement to insult Baal with sarcasm. AT: “in the bathroom” (See: **Euphemism**)
- **must be awakened** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must awaken him” or “you must wake him up” (See: **Active or Passive**)

- **they were still raving** - “they continued their wild behavior.” Prophets often acted in ways that seemed unusual or even crazy. In this case they were calling on Baal while dancing, shouting loudly, and cutting themselves with knives.
- **of offering of the evening sacrifice** - “to offer the evening sacrifice”
- **but there was no voice or anyone to answer; there was no one who paid any attention to their pleadings** - These phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that no one responded to the prayers of the false prophets. AT: “but Baal did not say or do anything or even pay attention” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **there was no voice or anyone to answer** - Translate this as in [18:26](#).

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 18:30-32****UDB:**

<sup>30</sup> Then Elijah called to the people saying, “Come closer!” So they all crowded around him. Then Elijah repaired the altar of Yahweh that had been ruined by the prophets of Baal. <sup>31</sup> Then he took twelve large stones, each one to represent one of the Israelite tribes, whose ancestors were the twelve sons of Jacob. <sup>32</sup> With these stones he rebuilt Yahweh’s altar. Then around the altar he dug a little ditch that was large enough to hold about fifteen liters of water.

**ULB:**

<sup>30</sup> Then Elijah said to all the people, “Come near to me,” and all the people came near to him. Then he repaired the altar of Yahweh that was lying in ruin. <sup>31</sup> Elijah took twelve stones, each stone representing one of the tribes of the sons of Jacob—it was to Jacob that the word of Yahweh had come, saying, “Your name will be Israel.” <sup>32</sup> With the stones he built an altar in the name of Yahweh and he dug a trench around the altar large enough to contain two seahs of seeds.

**translationWords:**

- altar
- Yahweh
- ruin, ruins
- twelve tribes of Israel
- son, son of
- Jacob, Israel
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- name
- seed

**translationNotes:**

- **twelve stones** - “12 stones” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **in the name of Yahweh** - “Name” is a metonymy for honor and reputation. Possible meanings are 1) “to honor Yahweh” or 2) “with the authority of Yahweh.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **trench** - a small waterway to hold water
- **two seahs of seeds** - A seah is a unit of volume equal to about 7.7 liters. AT: “about 15 liters of seeds” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 18 General Notes
- 1 Kings 18 Translation Questions

## 1 Kings 18:33-35

### UDB:

<sup>33</sup> He piled wood on top of the stones. He killed the bull and cut it in pieces. Then he laid the pieces on top of the wood. Then he said, "Fill four large jars with water, and pour the water on top of the pieces of meat and the wood." So they did that.

<sup>34</sup> Then he said, "Do the same thing again!" So they did it again. Then he said, "Do it a third time!" So they did it again.

<sup>35</sup> As a result, the water flowed down below the altar and filled the ditches.

### ULB:

<sup>33</sup> He arranged the wood for a fire, cut the bull in pieces, and laid the pieces of the bull on the wood. He said, "Fill four jars with water and pour it on the burnt offering and on the wood." <sup>34</sup> Then he said, "Do it a second time," and they did it a second time. Once more he said, "Do it a third time," and they did it a third time. <sup>35</sup> The water ran around the altar and filled the trench.

### translationWords:

- [fire](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)

### translationNotes:

- **He arranged the wood for a fire** - "On the altar" where he placed the wood is assumed in this sentence. AT: "He put the wood for a fire on the altar" (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **four jars** - "4 jars" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **jars** - A jar is a container for water.
- **trench** - Translate this as in [1 Kings 18:30-32](#).

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 18:36-37

### UDB:

<sup>36</sup> When it was time to offer the evening sacrifices, Elijah walked close to the altar and prayed. He said, "Yahweh, you who are the God that our ancestors Abraham and Isaac and Jacob worshiped, prove today that you are the God whom the Israelite people should worship, and prove that I am your servant. Prove that I have done all these things because you told me to do them. <sup>37</sup> Yahweh, answer me! Answer me in order that these people will know that you, Yahweh, are God and that you have caused them to trust in you again!"

### ULB:

<sup>36</sup> It happened at the time of the offering of the evening sacrifice, that Elijah the prophet came near and said, "Yahweh, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Israel, let it be known this day that you are God in Israel, and that I am your servant, and that I have done all these things at your word. <sup>37</sup> Hear me, Yahweh, hear me, that these people may know that you, Yahweh, are God, and that you have turned their heart back again to yourself."

### translationWords:

- sacrifice, offering
- Elijah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Jacob, Israel
- know, knowledge, make known
- kingdom of Israel
- servant, slave, slavery
- word
- turn, turn away, turn back
- heart

### translationNotes:

- **It happened** - This phrase is used here to reference a significant and meaningful time of the day in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **Yahweh, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Israel** - Here "Israel" is referring to Jacob. God changed Jacob's name to Israel (Genesis 32:28), and God named the nation of Jacob's descendants "Israel."



- **let it be known this day** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “make these people know today” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Hear me ... hear me** - This phrase is repeated to emphasize the appeal of Elijah to Yahweh.
- **turned their heart back again to yourself** - “turn their heart” is a metonymy for the affection and loyalty of the people. AT: “caused them to be loyal to you again” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 18:38-40

### UDB:

<sup>38</sup> Immediately a fire from Yahweh flashed down from the sky. The fire burned up the pieces of meat, the wood, the stones, and the dirt that was around the altar. It even dried up all the water in the ditch!

<sup>39</sup> When the people saw that, they prostrated themselves on the ground and shouted, “Yahweh is God! Yahweh is God!”

<sup>40</sup> Then Elijah commanded them, “Seize all the prophets of Baal! Do not allow any of them to escape!” So the people seized all the prophets of Baal, and took them down the mountain to the brook of Kishon, and Elijah killed them all there.

### ULB:

<sup>38</sup> Then the fire of Yahweh fell and consumed the burnt offering, as well as the wood, the stones, and the dust, and licked up the water that was in the trench. <sup>39</sup> When all the people saw this, they lay facedown on the ground and said, “Yahweh, he is God! Yahweh, he is God!” <sup>40</sup> So Elijah said to them, “Take the prophets of Baal. Do not let one of them escape.” So they took them, and Elijah brought the prophets of Baal down to the brook Kishon and killed them there.

### translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [consume](#)
- [Baal](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the fire of Yahweh fell** - “the fire of Yahweh came down”
- **licked up** - The fire is compared to a thirsty person drinking water. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Yahweh, he is God! Yahweh, he is God!** - This phrase is repeated for emphasis.
- **brook Kishon** - A “brook” is a small stream or watercourse. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 18:41-42****UDB:**

<sup>41</sup> Then Elijah said to Ahab, “Go and get something to eat and drink. But do it quickly, because it is soon going to rain very hard!” <sup>42</sup> So Ahab and his men left to prepare a big meal. But Elijah went back up to the top of Mount Carmel and prayed.

**ULB:**

<sup>41</sup> Elijah said to Ahab, “Get up, eat and drink, for there is the sound of much rain.” <sup>42</sup> So Ahab went up to eat and to drink. Then Elijah went up to the top of Carmel, bowed himself down on the earth and put his face between his knees.

**translationWords:**

- [Ahab](#)
- [Carmel, Mount Carmel](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [face](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **there is the sound of much rain** - “it sounds like it is going to rain a lot”
- **bowed himself down on the earth and put his face between his knees** - This describes a posture used for praying.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 18:43-44

### UDB:

<sup>43</sup> Then he said to his servant, “Go and look out toward the sea, to see if there are any rain clouds.” So his servant went and looked, and came back and said, “I do not see anything.” This happened six times. <sup>44</sup> But when the servant went the seventh time, he came back and said, “I saw a very small cloud above the sea. As I extend my arm, the cloud is about the size of my hand.”

Then Elijah shouted to him, “Go and tell King Ahab to get his chariot ready and go home immediately! If he does not do that, the rain will stop him!”

### ULB:

<sup>43</sup> He said to his servant, “Go up now, look toward the sea.” His servant went up and looked and said, “There is nothing.” So Elijah said, “Go again, seven times.” <sup>44</sup> At the seventh time the servant said, “Look, there is a cloud going up from the sea, as small as a man’s hand.” Elijah replied, “Go up and say to Ahab, ‘Make ready your chariot and go down before the rain stops you.’”

### translationWords:

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea](#)
- [chariot](#)

### translationNotes:

- **seven times** - The word “seven” can be rendered as the numeral “7.” AT: “7 times” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **as small as a man’s hand** - From a long distance, the cloud could be covered from sight by a man’s hand.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 18:45-46

### UDB:

<sup>45</sup> Very soon the sky was full of black clouds. There was a strong wind, and then it began to rain very hard. Ahab got into his chariot and started to return to the city of Jezreel. <sup>46</sup> Yahweh gave extra strength to Elijah. He tucked his cloak into his belt in order to run fast, and he ran ahead of Ahab's chariot all the way to Jezreel.

### ULB:

<sup>45</sup> It happened that in a little while the heavens grew black with clouds and wind, and there was a great rain. Ahab rode and went to Jezreel, <sup>46</sup> but the hand of Yahweh was on Elijah. He tucked his robe in his belt and ran before Ahab to the entrance of Jezreel.

### translationWords:

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Jezreel](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [robe](#)

### translationNotes:

- **It happened** - This phrase is used here to mark where a new step in the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **the hand of Yahweh was on Elijah** - Here the word "hand" is a metonymy for strength. AT: "Yahweh gave his power to Elijah" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **tucked his robe in his belt** - Elijah wrapped his long robe around his waist so that his legs would be free for running.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 18 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 19 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The story of Elijah continues in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

The queen was angry that Elijah had killed her prophets of Baal. She promised to kill Elijah. Elijah fled south into the desert south of Judah. He traveled on to Mount Horeb also known as Mount Sinai, the mountain of God. God asked him why he was there. He said because Israel had deserted God, killed his prophets and wanted to kill him. God sent him home to make Hazael the king of Aram, Jehu the king of Israel and Elisha as the prophet in his place. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [promise](#))

### Links:

- [1 Kings 19:01 Notes](#)

**1 Kings 19:1-3****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> When Ahab got home, he told his wife Jezebel what Elijah had done. He told her that Elijah had killed all the prophets of Baal. <sup>2</sup> So Jezebel sent this message to Elijah, “By this time tomorrow I will have killed you, just like you killed all those prophets of Baal. If I do not do that, I hope the gods will kill me.”

<sup>3</sup> When Elijah received her message, he was afraid. So taking his servant with him, he fled in order that he would not be killed. He went far south to Beersheba, in Judah. He left his servant there.

**ULB:**

**19** <sup>1</sup> Ahab told Jezebel all that Elijah had done and how he had killed all the prophets with the sword. <sup>2</sup> Then Jezebel sent a messenger to Elijah, saying, “So may the gods do to me, and more also, if I do not make your life like the life of one of those dead prophets by tomorrow about this time.”

<sup>3</sup> When Elijah heard that, he arose and fled for his life and came to Beersheba, which belongs to Judah, and left his servant there.

**translationWords:**

- Ahab
- Jezebel
- Elijah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- sword
- send, send out, sent
- messenger
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- life, live, living, alive
- death, die, dead
- Beersheba
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- servant, slave, slavery

**translationNotes:**

- **So may the gods do to me, and more also** - This is a comparison used as an emphatic oath. “May the gods kill me and do even more bad things”
- **if I do not make your life like the life of one of those dead prophets** - “if I do not kill you like you killed those prophets”
- **he arose** - “he stood up”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 19 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 19:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> Then he went by himself further south into the desert. He walked all day. He sat down under a broom tree and prayed that Yahweh would allow him to die. He said, “Yahweh, I cannot endure anymore. So allow me to die, because for me to live is no better than being with my ancestors who have died.”

<sup>5</sup> Then he lay down under the broom tree and slept. But while he was sleeping, an angel touched him and woke him up and said to him, “Get up and eat some food!”

<sup>6</sup> Elijah looked around and saw some bread which had been baked on hot stones, and he also saw a jar of water. So he ate some bread and drank some water and lay down to sleep again.

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> But he himself went a day’s journey into the wilderness, and came and sat down under a broom tree. He requested for himself that he might die, and said, “It is enough, now, Yahweh; take away my life, for I am no better than my dead ancestors.” <sup>5</sup> So he lay down and slept under a broom tree. Suddenly an angel touched him and said to him, “Get up and eat.” <sup>6</sup> Elijah looked, and near his head was bread that had been baked on coals and a jug of water. So he ate and drank and then lay down again.

**translationWords:**

- desert, wilderness
- Yahweh
- sleep, asleep, fall asleep
- angel, archangel
- bread

**translationNotes:**

- **he himself went a day’s journey** - The word “himself” is used to emphasize that he was alone. AT: “he walked by himself for a day” (See: **Reflexive Pronouns**)
- **broom tree** - A “broom tree” is a plant that grows in the desert. (See: **Translate Unknowns**)
- **He requested for himself that he might die** - “He prayed that he would die”
- **It is enough, now, Yahweh** - “These troubles are too much for me, Yahweh”
- **bread that had been baked on coals** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “bread that someone had cooked on hot stones” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **jug of water** - “a container of water”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 19 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 19:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> Then the angel who had been sent by Yahweh came again and touched him, and said, “Get up and eat some more food, because you need more strength to go on a long journey.” <sup>8</sup> So he got up and ate and drank some more; because he did that, he got enough strength to travel for forty days and nights to Mount Horeb, the mountain that was dedicated to God.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> The angel of Yahweh came again a second time and touched him and said, “Get up and eat, because the journey will be too much for you.” <sup>8</sup> So he arose and ate and drank, and he traveled in the strength of that food forty days and forty nights to Horeb, the mountain of God.

### translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Horeb](#)
- [God](#)

### translationNotes:

- **will be too much for you** - “will be too difficult for you.”
- **he traveled in the strength of that food forty days and forty nights** - “that food gave him energy to travel for 40 days and 40 nights” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 19 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 19:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> He went into a cave there and slept there that night.

The next morning, Yahweh said to him, “Elijah, why are you here?” <sup>10</sup> Elijah replied, “I have zealously served you, Yahweh, commander of angel armies. But the Israelite people have rejected the agreement that they made with you. They have torn down your altars, and they have killed all of your prophets. I am the only one whom they have not killed, and now they are trying to kill me, too. So I am running away from them.”

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> He went to a cave there and stayed in it. Then the word of Yahweh came to him and said to him, “What are you doing here, Elijah?” <sup>10</sup> Elijah replied, “I have been very zealous for Yahweh, God of hosts, for the people of Israel have forsaken your covenant, destroyed your altars, and killed your prophets with the sword. Now I, only I, am left and they are also trying to take my life.”

**translationWords:**

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Elijah
- zeal, zealous
- Yahweh
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- kingdom of Israel
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- covenant
- altar
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- sword
- life, live, living, alive

**translationNotes:**

- **to a cave there** - Here the word “there” refers to Mount Horeb. A cave is an opening in a mountainside that leads to a natural room or rooms underground.
- **the word of Yahweh came to him and said to him** - This idiom means Yahweh spoke and “word” is a metonymy representing the message. “Yahweh spoke his word and said to him.” See how you translated this in **6:11**. (See: **Idiom** and **Metonymy**)

- **What are you doing here, Elijah?** - Yahweh asks this question to rebuke Elijah and to remind him of his duty. AT: "This is not where you should be, Elijah." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **I, only I, am left** - Here the word "I" is repeated for emphasis. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 19 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 19:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> Yahweh said to him, “Go out and stand in front of me on this mountain while I pass by.” So Elijah did that. While he was standing there, a strong windstorm struck the mountain. As a result, rocks were loosened from the mountainside. But Yahweh was not in the wind. Then there was an earthquake, but Yahweh was not in the earthquake.

<sup>12</sup> Then there was a fire, but Yahweh was not in the fire. Then there was a sound like someone whispering quietly.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> Yahweh replied, “Go out and stand on the mountain before me.” Then Yahweh passed by, and a very strong wind struck the mountains and broke rocks into pieces before Yahweh, but Yahweh was not in the wind. Then after the wind, an earthquake came, but Yahweh was not in the earthquake.

<sup>12</sup> Then after the earthquake a fire came, but Yahweh was not in the fire. Then after the fire, a still small voice came.

### translationWords:

- [fire](#)
- [voice](#)

### translationNotes:

- **on the mountain before me** - “Before me” is an idiom for standing in front of someone. AT: “on the mountain in my presence” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 19 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 19:13-14

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> When Elijah heard that, he wrapped his cloak around his face. He went out of the cave and stood at its entrance. And he heard Yahweh speaking to him, saying again, “Elijah, why are you here?”

<sup>14</sup> He replied again, “I have zealously served you, Yahweh, commander of angel armies. But the Israelite people have rejected the agreement that they made with you. They have torn down your altars, and they have killed all of your prophets. I am the only one whom they have not killed, and now they are trying to kill me, too. So I am running away from them.”

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> When Elijah heard the voice, he wrapped his face in his cloak, went out, and stood at the entrance of the cave. Then a voice came to him that said, “What are you doing here, Elijah?” <sup>14</sup> Elijah replied, “I have been very zealous for Yahweh, God of hosts, because the people of Israel have forsaken your covenant, destroyed your altars, and killed your prophets with the sword. Now I, only I, am left and they are also trying to take my life.”

### translationWords:

- [face](#)

### translationNotes:

- **he wrapped his face in his cloak** - “he covered his face with his cloak” A cloak is a long robe, a piece of clothing that covers the whole body.
- **Then a voice came to him** - “Then he heard a voice”
- **What are you doing here ... and they are also trying to take my life** - Translate this text as in [19:9-10](#).
- **I, only I, am left** - Here the word “I” is repeated for emphasis. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 19 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 19:15-16

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> Then Yahweh told him, "Go back to the wilderness near Damascus. When you arrive there anoint with olive oil a man named Hazael, to appoint him to be the king of Aram. <sup>16</sup> Then anoint Jehu son of Nimshi to be the king of Israel, and also anoint Elisha son of Shaphat, from the city of Abel Meholah, to become my prophet after you are gone.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> Then Yahweh said to him, "Go, return on your way to the wilderness of Damascus, and when you arrive you will anoint Hazael to be king over Aram, <sup>16</sup> and you will anoint Jehu son of Nimshi to be king over Israel, and you will anoint Elisha son of Shaphat of Abel Meholah to be prophet in your place.

### translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [anoint, anointed](#)
- [king](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

### translationNotes:

- **prophet in your place** - "prophet instead of you"

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 19 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 19:17-18

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> Hazael's army will kill many people, and those who escape from being killed by his army will be killed by Jehu's army, and those who escape from being killed by Jehu's army will be killed by Elisha. <sup>18</sup> But you need to know that there are still seven thousand people in Israel who have never bowed to worship Baal or kissed his idol."

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> It will happen that Jehu will kill whoever escapes from the sword of Hazael, and that Elisha will kill whoever escapes from the sword of Jehu. <sup>18</sup> But I will leave for myself seven thousand people in Israel, whose knees have not bent down to Baal, and whose mouths have not kissed him."

### translationWords:

- [sword](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [kiss](#)

### translationNotes:

- **It will happen** - This phrase is used to introduce what will happen when Elijah does what Yahweh has told him to do. "What will happen is"
- **whoever escapes from the sword of Hazael** - "Sword" is metonymy for for killing as in battle. AT: "whomever Hazael does not kill with the sword" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will leave for myself** - Here the words "I" and "myself" refer to Yahweh. AT: "I will save from death" (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))
- **seven thousand people** - "7,000 people" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **whose knees have not bent down to Baal, and whose mouths have not kissed him** - "Bending down" and "kissing" are metonymies for actions people did to worship idols. They are combined for emphasis. AT: "who have not bowed down and kissed Baal" or "who have not worshiped Baal" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 19 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 19:19-20

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> So Elijah went to Aram and found Elisha as he was plowing a field with a team of oxen. There were eleven other men who were in front of him, plowing with teams of oxen in the same field. Elijah went to Elisha, and took off his own coat and put it on Elisha, to show Elisha that he wanted Elisha to take his place as a prophet. Then he started to walk away. <sup>20</sup> Elisha left the oxen standing there and ran after Elijah, and said to him, “I will go with you, but first let me kiss my parents goodbye.”

Elijah replied, “Very well, go home. But do not forget why I have given my cloak to you!”

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> So Elijah left from there and found Elisha son of Shaphat, who was plowing with twelve yoke of oxen before him, and he himself was plowing with the twelfth yoke. Elijah walked over to Elisha and draped his cloak on him. <sup>20</sup> Then Elisha left the oxen and ran after Elijah; he said, “Please let me kiss my father and my mother, and then I will follow you.” Then Elijah said to him, “Go back, but think about what I have done to you.”

### translationWords:

- [Elijah](#)
- [yoke](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Shaphat** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **twelve yoke of oxen** - “12 yoke of oxen” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **he himself was plowing with the twelfth yoke** - The word “himself” indicates that Elisha was plowing with the last yoke, while other men were plowing with the other eleven yokes. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **he said, ”Please** - The word “he” refers to Elisha.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 19 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 19:21****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> So Elisha went back home. He killed his oxen and cut them in pieces and used the wood from the plow to build a fire to roast the meat. He distributed the meat to the other people in his town, and they all ate some. Then he went with Elijah and became his helper.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> So Elisha returned from Elijah and took the yoke of oxen, killed the animals, and cooked the meat with the wood from the ox yoke. Then he gave it to the people and they ate. Then he arose, went after Elijah and served him.

**translationWords:**

- [Elisha](#)
- [serve, service](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **he gave it to the people** - Elisha gave the cooked meat to the people of his city. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 19 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 20 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This is a story of two battles between Aram and Israel.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Battle

God had chosen to defeat Ben Hadad, king of Aram. So when he attacked Samaria with a huge army, the tiny army of Israel defeated him. The people of Aram said that Yahweh was the god of the hills but they could defeat Israel on the plains. So they came again but Israel defeated them again. Then Ben Hadad offered a peace plan and Ahab accepted. But God had wanted him to kill Ben Hadad and was angry at Ahab for making peace with him.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Simile

There were so few Israel soldiers that they were “like two little flocks of goats.” (See: [Simile](#))

#### Links:

- [1 Kings 20:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Kings 20:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> Ben Hadad, the king of Aram, gathered all his army, and he brought thirty-two lesser kings to join him with their armies and horses and chariots. They marched to the city of Samaria, the capital of Israel, and surrounded it and prepared to attack it. <sup>2</sup> Ben Hadad sent messengers into the city to King Ahab, and they said this to him: "This is what King Ben Hadad says: <sup>3</sup> 'You must give to me all your silver and gold, your good-looking wives and strongest children.'"

### ULB:

**20** <sup>1</sup> Ben Hadad king of Aram gathered all his army together. There were thirty-two lesser kings with him, and horses and chariots. He went up, besieged Samaria and fought against it. <sup>2</sup> He sent messengers into the city to Ahab king of Israel, and said to him, "Ben Hadad says this: <sup>3</sup> 'Your silver and your gold are mine. Also your wives and children, the best ones, are now mine.'"

### translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [horse](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [siege, besiege](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)
- [children, child](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Ben Hadad** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **thirty-two lesser kings** - "32 lesser kings" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **lesser kings** - "kings ruling smaller groups of people"

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 20 General Notes
- 1 Kings 20 Translation Questions

**1 Kings 20:4-6****UDB:**

<sup>4</sup> The king of Israel replied to them, “Tell this to King Ben Hadad, ‘I agree to do what you requested. You can have me and everything that I own.’”

<sup>5</sup> The messengers told that to Ben Hadad, and he sent them back with another message: “I sent a message to you saying that you must give me all your silver and gold and your wives and your children. <sup>6</sup> But in addition to that, about this time tomorrow, I will send some of my officials to search your palace and the houses of your officials, and to bring to me everything that they see is valuable.”

**ULB:**

<sup>4</sup> The king of Israel answered and said, “It is as you say, my master, king. I and all that I have are yours.” <sup>5</sup> The messengers came again and said, “Ben Hadad says this, ‘I sent word to you saying that you must hand over to me your silver, your gold, your wives, and your children. <sup>6</sup> But I will send my servants to you tomorrow about this time, and they will search your house and your servants’ houses. They will seize with their own hands and take away whatever pleases their eyes.’”

**translationWords:**

- lord, master, sir
- word
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- servant, slave, slavery
- house
- seize

**translationNotes:**

- **It is as you say** - This is an idiom to express agreement. AT: “I agree with you” (See: **Idiom**)
- **tomorrow about this time** - “tomorrow at the same time of day that it is now”
- **whatever pleases their eyes** - “Pleasing their eyes” is metonymy for looking at something and desiring it. AT: “whatever pleases them” (See: **Metonymy**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 20:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> King Ahab summoned all the leaders of Israel, and said to them, “You can see for yourselves that this man is trying to cause much trouble. He sent me a message insisting that I must give him my wives and my children, my silver and my gold, and I agreed to do that.”

<sup>8</sup> The leaders and all the other people said to him, “Do not pay any attention to him! Do not do what he is requesting!”

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> Then the king of Israel called all the elders of the land together and said, “Please take note and see how this man seeks trouble. He has sent word to me in order to take my wives, children, and silver and gold, and I have not refused him.” <sup>8</sup> All the elders and all the people said to Ahab, “Do not listen to him or consent to his demands.”

### translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [call, calling, called, call out](#)
- [elder](#)
- [trouble, troubles, troubled](#)

### translationNotes:

- **of the land** - “The land” is synecdoche for all the people living there. AT: “of the people of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **take note and see** - “Take note” is an idiom to observe carefully. AT: “pay close attention to” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **I have not refused him** - This can be expressed positively. AT: “I have agreed to his demands” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 20:9-10****UDB:**

<sup>9</sup> So Ahab said to Ben Hadad's messengers, "Tell the king that I agree to give him the things that he first requested, but I do not agree to allow his officials to take anything that they want from my palace and from the houses of my officials." So the messengers reported that to King Ben Hadad, and they returned with another message from Ben Hadad.

<sup>10</sup> In that message he said, "We will destroy your city completely, with the result that there will not be enough ashes left for each of my soldiers to have one handful! I hope that the gods will strike me dead if we do not do that!"

**ULB:**

<sup>9</sup> So Ahab said to the messengers of Ben Hadad, "Tell my master the king, 'I agree to everything that you sent your servant to do the first time, but I cannot accept this second demand.'" So the messengers left and took this response to Ben Hadad. <sup>10</sup> Then Ben Hadad sent his reply to Ahab, and said, "May the gods do so to me and more also, if even the ashes of Samaria will be enough for all the people who follow me to have a handful each."

**translationWords:**

- [Ahab](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [king](#)
- [false god, foreign god, god, goddess](#)
- [ash, ashes, dust](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **May the gods do so to me and more also** - This is an oath with great emphasis. See how you translated this in [19:2](#).
- **if even the ashes of Samaria will be enough for all the people who follow me to have a handful each** - Ben Hadad is threatening that his army will totally destroy everything in Samaria. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 20:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> King Ahab replied to the messengers, “Tell King Ben Hadad this: No one wins a battle before he fights it, so do not boast before you should.”

<sup>12</sup> Ben Hadad heard that message while he and the other rulers were drinking wine in their temporary shelters. He told his men to prepare to attack the city. So his men did that.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> The king of Israel answered and said, “Tell Ben Hadad, ‘No one who is just putting on his armor, should boast as if he were taking it off.’” <sup>12</sup> Ben Hadad heard this message as he was drinking, he and the kings under him who were in their tents. Ben Hadad commanded his men, “Line yourselves up in position for battle.” So they prepared themselves in position of battle to attack the city.

### translationWords:

- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [armor](#)
- [boast, boastful](#)
- [tent](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Tell Ben Hadad, ‘No one who is just putting on his armor ... as if he were taking it off.’**  
- This is an expression to give advice. “Putting on armor” is metonymy for getting prepared for battle. “Tell Ben Hadad, ‘Do not boast as if you have already won a battle that you have not yet fought.’” (See: [Proverbs](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 20:13-15

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> At that moment, a prophet came to King Ahab and said to him, “This is what Yahweh says: ‘Do not be at all afraid of the large enemy army that you see! I will enable your army to defeat them today, and you will know that it is I, Yahweh, who has done it.’”

<sup>14</sup> Ahab asked, “What group of our army will defeat them?” The prophet replied, “The young soldiers whom the district governors command will do it.” The king asked, “Who should lead the attack?” The prophet replied, “You should!”

<sup>15</sup> So Ahab gathered the young soldiers who were commanded by the district governors. There were 232 of those men. Then he also summoned all the Israelite army. There were only seven thousand soldiers.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> Then behold, a prophet came to Ahab king of Israel and said, “Yahweh says, ‘Have you seen this great army? Look, I will place it into your hand today, and you will know that I am Yahweh.’” <sup>14</sup> Ahab replied, “By whom?” Yahweh replied and said, “By the young officers who serve the governors of the districts.” Then Ahab said, “Who will begin the battle?” Yahweh answered, “You.” <sup>15</sup> Then Ahab mustered the young officers who served the governors of the districts. They numbered 232. After them he mustered all the soldiers, all the army of Israel; seven thousand in number.

### translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- know, knowledge, make known
- serve, service
- governor, govern, proconsul, government

### translationNotes:

- **Then behold** - The word “behold” alerts us to the sudden appearance of a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.
- **Have you seen this great army?** - Yahweh asks this question to emphasize the size and strength of Ben Hadad’s army. AT: “Look at this great army.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Look, I will place it into your hand today** - The word “Look” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
- **place it into your hand** - Here the word “hand” refers to power. AT: “give you victory over that army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **By whom?** - Ahab leaves out the words 'will you do this' AT: "By whom will you do this?" (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **Ahab mustered the young officers** - "Ahab assembled the young officers"
- **232** - "two hundred and thirty-two" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **all the soldiers, all the army of Israel** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **seven thousand** - "7,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 20:16-17

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> They started to attack at noon, while Ben Hadad and the other rulers were getting drunk in their temporary shelters. <sup>17</sup> The young soldiers advanced first. Some scouts who had been sent out by Ben Hadad reported to him, “There are men coming out of Samaria”!

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> They went out at noon. Ben Hadad had been drinking himself drunk in his tent, he and the thirty-two lesser kings who were supporting him. <sup>17</sup> The young officers who served the governors of the districts went forward first. Then Ben Hadad was informed by scouts that he had sent out, “Men are coming out from Samaria.”

### translationWords:

- [drunk, drunkard](#)
- [king](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

### translationNotes:

- **They went out** - Here the word “They” refers to the Israelite army.
- **thirty-two lesser kings** - Translate this as you did in [20:1](#).
- **Ben Hadad was informed by scouts that he had sent out** - This can be expressed in active form. AT: “Scouts that Ben Hadad had sent out informed him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **scouts** - A “scout” is a soldier sent to gather information about the enemy.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 20:18-19

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> He said, “It does not matter whether they are coming to fight against us or to request for peace. Capture them, but do not kill them!”

<sup>19</sup> The young Israelite soldiers went out of the city to attack the Aramean army, and the other soldiers in the Israelite army followed them.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> Ben Hadad said, “Whether they have come out for peace or war, take them alive.” <sup>19</sup> So the young officers who served the governors of the districts went out of the city and the army followed them.

### translationWords:

- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Ben Hadad said** - It is understood that Ben Hadad is speaking to his soldiers. AT: “Ben Hadad said to his soldiers” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **Whether they have ... take them** - Here “they” and “them” refer to the Israelite army.
- **So the young officers ... the army followed** - “The young Israelite officers ... the Israelite army followed”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 20:20-21

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> Each Israelite soldier killed an Aramean soldier. The rest of the Aramean army then ran away, and the Israelite soldiers pursued them. But King Ben Hadad escaped riding his horse, along with some other men riding horses. <sup>21</sup> Then the king of Israel went out of the city; he and his soldiers captured all the other Aramean horses and chariots, and also killed a large number of Aramean soldiers.

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> They each killed his enemy and the Arameans fled. Israel pursued them. Ben Hadad the king of Aram escaped on a horse along with some horsemen. <sup>21</sup> Then the king of Israel went out and attacked the horses and chariots, and killed the Arameans in a great slaughter.

### translationWords:

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [horse](#)
- [horsemen](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [slaughter](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Israel pursued them** - “Israel” is synecdoche for all the soldiers of the nation of Israel. AT: “the men of the army of Israel pursued them” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **the king of Israel went out and attacked** - “The king” is synecdoche for the king and all the soldiers serving under him. AT: “The king of Israel and his soldiers went out and attacked” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 20:22-23

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> Then that same prophet went to King Ahab and said to him, “Go back and prepare your soldiers, and think carefully about what will be necessary for you to do, because the king of Aram will attack with his army again in the springtime of next year.”

<sup>23</sup> After the Aramean army was defeated, Ben Hadad’s officials said to him, “The gods that the Israelites worship are gods who live in the hills. Samaria is built on a hill, and that is why their soldiers were able to defeat us. But if we fight against them in the plains, we certainly will be able to defeat them.

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> So the prophet came to the king of Israel and said to him, “Go, strengthen yourself, and understand and plan what you are doing, because at the return of the year the king of Aram will come up against you again.” <sup>23</sup> The servants of the king of Aram said to him, “Their god is a god of the hills. That is why they were stronger than we were. But now let us fight against them in the plain, and surely we will be stronger than they are.

### translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- king
- strength, strengthen
- understand, understanding
- servant, slave, slavery
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess

### translationNotes:

- **strengthen yourself** - “Yourself” represents by metonymy the army of the king. AT: “strengthen your forces” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **understand and plan** - These two words mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. AT: “determine” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **at the return of the year** - Possible meanings are 1) “in the springtime of next year” (UDB) or 2) “at this time next year.”
- **let us fight ... we will be stronger** - The words “us” and “we” refer to the servants, the king, and the army all together. (See: [Inclusive “We”](#))



**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 20:24-25

### UDB:

<sup>24</sup> So, this is what you should do: You must remove the thirty-two kings who are leading your troops and replace them with army commanders. <sup>25</sup> Then gather an army like the army that was defeated. Gather an army that has as many horses and chariots as the first army had. Then we will fight the Israelites in the plains, and we will surely defeat them.”

Ben Hadad agreed with them, and he did what they suggested.

### ULB:

<sup>24</sup> So you must do this: remove all the kings from their positions of authority and replace them with military commanders. <sup>25</sup> Raise up an army like the army you lost—horse for horse and chariot for chariot—so we can fight them in the plain. Then surely we will be stronger than they are.” So Ben Hadad listened to their advice and did what they advised.

### translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [counsel, counselor, advice, advisor](#)

### translationNotes:

- **remove all the kings from their positions of authority** - “You must remove the thirty-two kings who are leading your troops”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 20:26-27****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> In the spring of the following year, he gathered his soldiers and marched with them to the city of Aphek east of the Sea of Galilee, to fight against the Israelite army. <sup>27</sup> The Israelite army was also gathered together, and they were given the things that they needed for the battle. Then they marched out and formed two groups facing the Aramean army. Their army was very small. They resembled two small flocks of goats, whereas the Aramean army was very large and spread all over the countryside.

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> After the beginning of the new year, Ben Hadad mustered the Arameans and went up to Aphek to fight against Israel. <sup>27</sup> The people of Israel were mustered and supplied to fight against them. The people of Israel camped before them like two little flocks of goats, but the Arameans filled the countryside.

**translationWords:**

- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [goat, kid](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Aphek** - This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **to fight against Israel** - “Israel” represents its armed forces by synecdoche. AT: “to fight against the army of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **The people of Israel were mustered and supplied** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The Israelite army also gathered together, and the commanders gave the arms that they needed for the battle” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **like two little flocks of goats** - This simile compares the Israelite army to two little flocks of goats. AT: “The Israelite army appeared to be small and weak like two flocks of goats.” (See: [Simile](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)

- **1 Kings 20 Translation Questions**

## 1 Kings 20:28

### UDB:

<sup>28</sup> A prophet came to King Ahab and said to him, “This is what Yahweh says: ‘The Arameans say that I am a god who lives in the hills, and that I am not a god who lives in the valleys. So I will show that they are wrong by enabling your men to defeat this huge army in the valley, and you will know that I, Yahweh, have done it.’”

### ULB:

<sup>28</sup> Then a man of God came near and spoke to the king of Israel and said, “Yahweh says: ‘Because the Arameans have said that Yahweh is a god of the hills, but he is not a god of the valleys, I will place this great army into your hand, and you will know that I am Yahweh.’”

### translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [king](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

### translationNotes:

- **a man of God** - This is another title for a prophet. AT: “a prophet” (UDB)
- **place this great army into your hand** - Here the word “hand” refers to power. AT: “give you victory over this great army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 20:29-30

### UDB:

<sup>29</sup> The two armies stayed in their tents for seven days, in groups that faced each other. Then, on the seventh day, they started fighting. The Israelite army killed 100,000 Aramean soldiers. <sup>30</sup> The other Aramean soldiers ran away into Aphek. Then the wall of the city collapsed and killed twenty-seven thousand more Aramean soldiers.

Ben Hadad also escaped into the city and hid in the back room of a house.

### ULB:

<sup>29</sup> So the armies camped opposite each other for seven days. Then on the seventh day the battle started. The people of Israel killed 100,000 Aramean footmen in one day. <sup>30</sup> The rest fled to Aphek, into the city, and the wall fell on twenty-seven thousand men who were left. Ben Hadad fled and went into the city, into an inner room.

### translationWords:

### translationNotes:

- **seven days** - “7 days” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **100,000** - “one hundred thousand” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **footmen** - A “footman” is a soldier who marches on foot.
- **The rest fled to Aphek** - The expression “the rest” assumes the words “of the Aramean soldiers.” AT: “The rest of the Aramean soldiers” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **Aphek** - This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **twenty-seven thousand** - “27,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 20:31-32****UDB:**

<sup>31</sup> His officials went to him and said, “We have heard a report that the Israelites act mercifully. So allow us to go to the king of Israel, wearing coarse sacks around our waists and ropes on our heads to indicate that we will be his slaves. Perhaps if we do that, he will allow you to remain alive.”

<sup>32</sup> The king permitted them to do that, so they wrapped coarse sacks around their waists and put ropes on their heads, and they went to the king of Israel and said to him, “Ben Hadad, who greatly respects you, says, ‘Please do not kill me.’” Ahab replied, “Is he still alive? He is like a brother to me!”

**ULB:**

<sup>31</sup> Ben Hadad’s servants said to him, “Look now, we have heard that the kings of the house of Israel are merciful kings. Please let us put sackcloth around our waists and ropes around our heads, and go out to the king of Israel. Perhaps he will spare your life.” <sup>32</sup> So they put sackcloth on their waists and ropes around their heads and then went to the king of Israel and said, “Your servant Ben Hadad said, ‘Please let me live.’” Ahab said, “Is he still alive? He is my brother.”

**translationWords:**

- servant, slave, slavery
- house
- kingdom of Israel
- mercy, merciful
- sackcloth
- life, live, living, alive
- brother

**translationNotes:**

- **Look now** - This idiom emphasizes what they will say. AT: “Listen” or “Pay attention to what we are about to tell you” (See: **Idiom**)
- **put sackcloth around our waists and ropes around our heads** - This was a sign of surrender.
- **Is he still alive?** - Ahab asks this question to express surprise. AT: “I am surprised that he is still alive!” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **He is my brother** - “My brother” is a metaphor for somebody who is a good friend. AT: “He is like a brother to me” (UDB) or “He is like family” (See: **Metaphor**)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 20:33-34

### UDB:

<sup>33</sup> Ben Hadad's officials were trying to find out if Ahab would act mercifully, and when Ahab said "brother," they were optimistic. So they replied, "Yes, he is like your brother!" Ahab said, "Go and bring him to me." So they went and brought Ben Hadad to him. When Ben Hadad arrived, Ahab told him to get in the chariot and sit with him.

<sup>34</sup> Ben Hadad said to him, "I will give back to you the towns that my father's army took from your father. And I will allow you to set up market areas for your merchants in Damascus my capital, just as my father did in Samaria your capital." Ahab replied, "Because you agree to do that, I will not execute you." So Ahab made an agreement with Ben Hadad, and allowed him to go home.

### ULB:

<sup>33</sup> Now the men were listening for any sign from Ahab, so they quickly answered him, "Yes, your brother Ben Hadad is alive." Then Ahab said, "Go and bring him." Then Ben Hadad came to him, and Ahab had him come up into his chariot. <sup>34</sup> Ben Hadad said to Ahab, "I will restore to you the cities that my father took from your father, and you may make markets for yourself in Damascus, as my father did in Samaria." Ahab replied, "I will let you go with this covenant." So Ahab made a covenant with him and then let him go.

### translationWords:

- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Now the men** - The word "Now" does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.
- **for any sign from Ahab** - "Sign" is metonymy for an action that gives a meaning. AT: "for any action from Ahab that would show them that Ahab wanted to be merciful" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 20 General Notes
- 1 Kings 20 Translation Questions

**1 Kings 20:35-36****UDB:**

<sup>35</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to a member of an association of prophets and told him to request a fellow prophet to strike him. But that man refused to do it.

<sup>36</sup> So the prophet said to him, “Because you refused to obey what Yahweh told you to do, a lion will kill you as soon as you leave me.” And as soon as he left that prophet, a lion suddenly met him and killed him.

**ULB:**

<sup>35</sup> A certain man, one of the sons of the prophets, said to one of his fellow prophets by the word of Yahweh, “Please hit me.” But the man refused to hit him. <sup>36</sup> Then the prophet said to his fellow prophet, “Because you have not obeyed the voice of Yahweh, as soon as you leave me, a lion will kill you.” As soon as that man had left him, a lion came upon him and killed him.

**translationWords:**

- [son, son of](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [voice](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [lion](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **one of the sons of the prophets** - “a member of the group of prophets”
- **by the word of Yahweh** - “the word” is metonymy for the message. AT: “as Yahweh had told him to do” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **you have not obeyed the voice of Yahweh** - “The voice” is metonymy for what Yahweh commanded. AT: “you have not obeyed Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 20:37-38****UDB:**

<sup>37</sup> Then the prophet found another prophet, and said to him, “Strike me!” So that man hit him very hard and injured him. <sup>38</sup> Then the prophet put a large bandage over his face so that no one would recognize him. Then he went and stood alongside the road, waiting for the king to come by.

**ULB:**

<sup>37</sup> Then the prophet found another man and said, “Please hit me.” So the man hit him and wounded him. <sup>38</sup> Then the prophet left and waited for the king by the road; he had disguised himself with a bandage over his eyes.

**translationWords:**

- [king](#)

**translationNotes:****Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 20:39-40****UDB:**

<sup>39</sup> When the king passed by, the prophet cried out to him, saying "Your Majesty, after I was wounded while I was fighting in a battle, a soldier brought to me one of our enemies who he had captured, and said to me, 'Guard this man! If he escapes, you must pay me thirty-four kilograms of silver; if you do not pay that, you will be executed!' <sup>40</sup> But while I was busy doing other things, the man escaped!" The king of Israel said to him, "That is your problem! You yourself have said that you deserve to be punished."

**ULB:**

<sup>39</sup> As the king passed by, the prophet cried out to the king and said, "Your servant went out into the heat of the battle, and a soldier stopped and brought an enemy to me and said, 'Watch this man. If by any means he goes missing, then your life will be given for his life, or else you will pay a talent of silver.' <sup>40</sup> But because your servant was busy going here and there, the enemy soldier escaped." Then the king of Israel said to him, "This is what your punishment will be—you yourself have decided it."

**translationWords:**

- cry, cry out
- servant, slave, slavery
- adversary, enemy
- life, live, living, alive
- silver
- kingdom of Israel
- punish, punishment

**translationNotes:**

- **Your servant went out** - The prophet refers to himself in the third person as a sign of respect to the king.
- **into the heat of the battle** - "Heat of the battle" is an idiom to express the most intense and fierce fighting. AT: "to where the battle was most intense" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **then your life will be given for his life** - "then you will die in his place"
- **a talent of silver** - A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 34 kilograms. AT: "34 kilograms of silver" (UDB) (See: [Biblical Weight](#))
- **going here and there** - This is an idiom to represent being very busy and preoccupied. AT: "doing other things" (UDB) or "doing this and that" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 20:41-43

### UDB:

<sup>41</sup> The prophet immediately took off the bandage, and the king of Israel recognized that he was one of the prophets. <sup>42</sup> The prophet said to him, “This is what Yahweh says: ‘You have allowed that man Ben Hadad to escape after I commanded you to be sure to execute him! Since you did not do that, you will be killed instead. And your army will be destroyed because you allowed some of his army to escape!’” <sup>43</sup> The king went back home to Samaria, very angry and depressed.

### ULB:

<sup>41</sup> Then the prophet quickly removed the bandage from his eyes, and the king of Israel recognized that he was one of the prophets. <sup>42</sup> The prophet said to the king, “Yahweh says, ‘Because you have let go from your hand the man whom I had sentenced to death, your life will take the place of his life, and your people for his people.’” <sup>43</sup> So the king of Israel went to his house resentful and angry, and arrived in Samaria.

### translationWords:

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- death, die, dead
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- angry, anger
- Samaria, Samaritan

### translationNotes:

- **let go from your hand** - Here the word “hand” is metonymy for power. AT: “released” or “spared the life of” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **your life will take the place of his life, and your people for his people** - “you will die in his place, and your people will die in the place of his people”

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 20 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 21 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The story of Elijah continues in this chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

God hates oppression but is forgiving to people who are sorry for their sins. Ahab wanted Naboth's vineyard to make into a garden for his palace; but Naboth refused to sell it. So the queen, Ahab's wife, told the civic leaders of Naboth's town to falsely accuse him and execute him. Elijah told him that he would be killed in Naboth's vineyard and all his family destroyed. Ahab repented and showed he was very sorry for what he did so God said it would not happen to Ahab himself but to his son. (See: [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [repent](#), [repentance](#))

### Links:

- [1 Kings 21:01 Notes](#)



## 1 Kings 21:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> King Ahab had a palace in the city of Jezreel. Near the palace was a vineyard owned by a man named Naboth. <sup>2</sup> One day, Ahab went to Naboth and said to him, “Your vineyard is close to my palace. I would like to buy it, so that I can plant some vegetables there. I will give you in exchange a better vineyard somewhere else, or if you prefer, I will pay you for your vineyard.”

### ULB:

**21** <sup>1</sup> Now some time later, Naboth the Jezreelite had a vineyard in Jezreel, near the palace of Ahab, king of Samaria. <sup>2</sup> Ahab spoke to Naboth, saying, “Give me your vineyard, so I can have it as a vegetable garden, because it is near my house. In exchange, I will give you a better vineyard, or, if you prefer, I will pay you its value in money.”

### translationWords:

- [Jezreel](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [palace](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [king](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Now some time later** - This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story and indicates that these events happened later, not that Naboth owned the vineyard later. If your language has a way marking the beginning of a new part of a story, you could consider using it here. AT: “Now this is what happened later” (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))
- **Naboth the Jezreelite** - This is the name of a man from Jezreel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **king of Samaria** - “Samaria” was the capital city of the kingdom of Israel and here represents the entire nation. AT: “king of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 21 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 21:3-4

### UDB:

<sup>3</sup> But Naboth replied, “That land belonged to my ancestors, so I want to keep it. I hope that Yahweh will never allow me to give that land to you!”

<sup>4</sup> So Ahab became very sullen and angry because of what Naboth had said. He went home and lay down on his bed. He turned his face toward the wall, and he refused to eat anything.

### ULB:

<sup>3</sup> Naboth replied to Ahab, “May Yahweh forbid that I should give the inheritance of my ancestors to you.” <sup>4</sup> So Ahab went into his palace resentful and angry because of the answer Naboth the Jezreelite gave him when he said, “I will not give you the inheritance of my ancestors.” He lay down on his bed, turned away his face, and refused to eat any food.

### translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [face](#)

### translationNotes:

- **May Yahweh forbid that I should give** - This phrase is an oath that emphasizes that what follows will not happen. AT: “Because Yahweh forbids it, I will never give” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **give the inheritance of my ancestors to you** - The land that his ancestors received as a permanent possession is spoken of as if it were an inheritance. AT: “give to you the land that my ancestors received as an inheritance” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 21 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 21:5-7****UDB:**

<sup>5</sup> His wife Jezebel came in and asked him, “Why are you so depressed? Why are you refusing to eat anything?”

<sup>6</sup> Ahab replied, “I talked to Naboth, that man from Jezreel. I told him that I wanted his vineyard. I said, ‘I will buy it from you, or I will give you another vineyard for it.’ But he refused to let me have it.”

<sup>7</sup> His wife replied, “You are the king of Israel, so you can get whatever you want! Get up, and eat some food and do not worry about what Naboth said. I will get Naboth’s vineyard for you.”

**ULB:**

<sup>5</sup> Jezebel his wife came to him and said to him, “Why is your heart so sad, so that you eat no food?”

<sup>6</sup> He replied to her, “I spoke to Naboth the Jezreelite and said to him, ‘Give me your vineyard for money, or if it pleases you, I will give you another vineyard to be yours.’ Then he answered me, ‘I will not give you my vineyard.’” <sup>7</sup> So Jezebel his wife replied to him, “Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? Get up and eat; let your heart be happy. I will obtain for you the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite.”

**translationWords:**

- Jezebel
- heart
- ruler, rulers, rule
- kingdom of Israel

**translationNotes:**

- **Why is your heart so sad** - Here “heart” refers to the entire person and his emotions. AT: “Why are you so sad” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** - Jezebel uses this negative rhetorical question to rebuke Ahab. It can be translated as a positive statement. AT: “You still rule the kingdom of Israel!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **let your heart be happy** - Here “heart” refers to the entire person and his emotions. AT: “be happy” or “cheer up” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)

- 1 Kings 21 General Notes
- 1 Kings 21 Translation Questions

**1 Kings 21:8-10****UDB:**

<sup>8</sup> Then Jezebel wrote some letters, and she signed Ahab's name on them. She used his official seal to seal them. Then she sent them to the older leaders and other important men who lived near Naboth and who decided public matters with him. <sup>9</sup> This is what she wrote in the letters: "Proclaim a day when all the people will gather together and fast. Give to Naboth an important place to sit among them. <sup>10</sup> Then find two men who always cause trouble. Give them places to sit opposite him. Tell these men to testify that they heard Naboth say things that criticized God and the king. Then take Naboth out of the city and kill him by throwing stones at him."

**ULB:**

<sup>8</sup> So Jezebel wrote letters in Ahab's name, sealed them with his seal, and sent them to the elders and to the wealthy who sat with him in meetings, and who lived near Naboth. <sup>9</sup> She wrote in the letters, saying, "Proclaim a fast and seat Naboth above the people. <sup>10</sup> Also place two dishonest men with him and let them testify against him, saying, 'You cursed God and the king.'" Then take him out and stone him to death.

**translationWords:**

- letter, epistle
- Ahab
- name
- seal, to seal
- send, send out, sent
- elder
- life, live, living, alive
- proclaim, proclamation
- fast
- testimony, testify
- curse, cursed
- God
- king
- stone, stoning
- death, die, dead

**translationNotes:**

- **wrote letters in Ahab's name** - Possible meanings are 1) she wrote Ahab's name on the letters. AT: "wrote letters and signed them with Ahab's name" or 2) the word "name" is a metonym for authority. AT: "wrote letters on behalf of Ahab" (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **the wealthy who sat with him** - The word “wealthy” refers to wealthy people. AT: “the wealthy people who sat with Naboth” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **seat Naboth above the people** - Having Naboth sit in a place of honor is spoken of as if it were having him sit above the rest of the people who were present. AT: “have Naboth sit in a place of honor among the people” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **let them testify against him** - “have them accuse him”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 21 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 21:11-14****UDB:**

<sup>11</sup> The leaders received the letters and did what Jezebel had written in the letters for them to do. <sup>12</sup> They declared a day on which the people would all go without food. And they gave Naboth a seat in a place where honored people sat, in front of the people. <sup>13</sup> Two men who always caused trouble sat opposite Naboth. While everyone was listening, they stated that they had heard Naboth say things that criticized God and the king. So the people seized Naboth. They took him outside the city and killed him by throwing stones at him. <sup>14</sup> Then those leaders sent a message to Jezebel, saying, “We have executed Naboth.”

**ULB:**

<sup>11</sup> So the men of his city, the elders and the wealthy who lived in Naboth’s city, did as Jezebel had described to them, as was written in the letters that she had sent to them. <sup>12</sup> They proclaimed a fast and seated Naboth above the people. <sup>13</sup> The two dishonest men came in and sat before Naboth; they testified against Naboth in the presence of the people, saying, “Naboth cursed both God and the king.” Then they carried him out of the city and stoned him to death. <sup>14</sup> Then the elders sent word to Jezebel, saying, “Naboth has been stoned and is dead.”

**translationWords:**

- send, send out, sent
- word

**translationNotes:**

- **the wealthy who lived in Naboth’s city** - The word “wealthy” refers to wealthy people. AT: “the wealthy people who lived in Naboth’s city” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **as was written in the letters** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “as she had written in the letters” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **seated Naboth above the people** - Having Naboth sit in a place of honor is spoken of as if it were having him sit above the rest of the people who were present. See how you translated this idea in [21:9](#). AT: “had Naboth sit in a place of honor among the people” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **sat before Naboth** - “sat in front of Naboth”
- **they carried him out** - Here the word “they” refers to the people of the city.
- **Naboth has been stoned and is dead** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “We have stoned Naboth and he is dead” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 21 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 21:15-16

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> When Jezebel found out that Naboth had been killed, she told Ahab, “Naboth is dead. Now you can go and take possession of the vineyard that he refused to sell to you.” <sup>16</sup> When Ahab heard that Naboth was dead, he got up and went to the vineyard to claim that he now owned it.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> So when Jezebel heard that Naboth had been stoned and was dead, she said to Ahab, “Get up and take possession of the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite, which he refused to give you for money, because Naboth is not alive, but dead.” <sup>16</sup> When Ahab heard that Naboth was dead, he rose up to go down to the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite and take possession of it.

### translationWords:

- [Jezebel](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [possess, possession](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [Jezreel](#)

### translationNotes:

- **that Naboth had been stoned and was dead** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that the people had stoned Naboth and he was dead” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Naboth is not alive, but dead** - These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize Jezebel’s statement. AT: “Naboth is dead!” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 21 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 21:17-18

### UDB:

<sup>17</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to Elijah the prophet. He said, <sup>18</sup> "Go to Samaria and talk to Ahab, the king of Israel. He is in the vineyard of a man named Naboth. He has gone there to claim that he now owns it.

### ULB:

<sup>17</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying, <sup>18</sup> "Get up and go meet Ahab king of Israel, who lives in Samaria. He is in the vineyard of Naboth, where he has gone to take possession of it.

### translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [king](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - This idiom means that Yahweh spoke or has sent a message. See how you translated this in [6:11](#). AT: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 21 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 21:19-20

### UDB:

<sup>19</sup> Tell Ahab that this is what I, Yahweh, say to him, ‘You have murdered Naboth and taken his land. So I am telling you this. In the same place where Naboth died and dogs came and licked up Naboth’s blood, you will die and the dogs will lick up your blood, too!’”

<sup>20</sup> So when Elijah met with Ahab, Ahab said to him, “You, my enemy, have found me!” Elijah answered, “Yes, I have found you. You have never stopped doing the things that Yahweh says are wrong.

### ULB:

<sup>19</sup> You must speak to him and say that Yahweh says, ‘Have you killed and also taken possession?’ Then you will tell him that Yahweh says, ‘In the place where dogs licked the blood of Naboth, the dogs will lick your blood, yes, your blood.’” <sup>20</sup> Ahab said to Elijah, “Have you found me, my enemy?” Elijah answered, “I have found you, because you have sold yourself to do what is evil in the sight of Yahweh.

### translationWords:

- Yahweh
- blood
- adversary, enemy
- evil, wicked, wickedness

### translationNotes:

- **Have you killed and also taken possession?** - Yahweh asks this question to scold Ahab. AT: “You have killed Naboth and stolen his vineyard!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **your blood, yes, your blood** - This is repeated for emphasis.
- **Have you found me, my enemy?** - Ahab uses this question to express anger toward Elijah. That Elijah “found” Ahab likely refers to Elijah discovering Ahab’s actions, not to finding his physical location. AT: “You have found me, my enemy!” or “You have discovered what I have done, my enemy!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **you have sold yourself to do what is evil** - A person being committed to doing what is evil is spoken of as if that person had sold himself to evil. AT: “you have dedicated yourself to doing what is evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **what is evil in the sight of Yahweh** - The phrase, “in the sight of” refers to someone’s opinion. See how you translated this in [11:6](#). AT: “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 21 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 21:21-22****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> So this is what Yahweh says to you, 'I will soon get rid of you. I will kill you, and I will also kill every male in your household, including those who are slaves and those who are not slaves. <sup>22</sup> Your family will all be killed, just like the family of King Jeroboam and like the family of King Baasha were killed. I will get rid of you because you have caused me to become very angry, and you have also induced the Israelite people to sin.'

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> Yahweh says this to you: 'See, I will bring disaster on you and will completely consume and cut off from you every male child and slave and free man in Israel. <sup>22</sup> I will make your family like the family of Jeroboam son of Nebat, and like the family of Baasha son of Ahijah, because you have provoked me to anger and have led Israel to sin.'

**translationWords:**

- consume
- cut off
- children, child
- servant, slave, slavery
- free, freedom, liberty
- family
- Jeroboam
- son, son of
- Baasha
- Ahijah
- angry, anger
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

**translationNotes:**

- **See** - "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"
- **completely consume and cut off from you every male child and slave and free man in Israel** - Yahweh speaks of destroying Ahab's family and preventing him from having any decedents as if he were consuming these people like a fire would consume them, and cutting them off as one would cut a branch from a tree. AT: "destroy every one of your male children in Israel, whether slave or free" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I will make your family like the family of Jeroboam ... and like the family of Baasha** - Yahweh will destroy Ahab's family like he destroyed the families of Jeroboam and Baasha.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 21 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 21:23-24****UDB:**

<sup>23</sup> Yahweh has also told me that your wife Jezebel will be killed, and dogs in Jezreel will eat her body. <sup>24</sup> The dead bodies of the members of your family who die in this city will not be buried. They will be eaten by dogs, and the bodies of those who die in the fields will be eaten by vultures.”

**ULB:**

<sup>23</sup> Yahweh has also spoken concerning Jezebel, saying, ‘The dogs will eat Jezebel beside the wall of Jezreel.’ <sup>24</sup> Anyone who belongs to Ahab and dies in the city, the dogs will eat; and the birds of the sky will eat anyone who dies in the field.”

**translationWords:**

- [Jezebel](#)
- [Jezreel](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Anyone who belongs to Ahab** - “Anyone who belongs to Ahab’s family”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 21 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 21:25-26

### UDB:

<sup>25</sup> There was no man who gave himself as completely to do things that Yahweh said were evil like Ahab did. But his wife Jezebel urged him to do many of those things. <sup>26</sup> The most disgusting thing that Ahab did was to worship idols, just like the Amor people group had done. And that is why Yahweh took their land from them and gave it to the Israelites.

### ULB:

<sup>25</sup> There was no one like Ahab, who sold himself to do what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, whom Jezebel his wife incited to sin. <sup>26</sup> Ahab did disgusting deeds for the idols he followed, just as all that the Amorites had done, those whom Yahweh had removed before the people of Israel.

### translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Yahweh
- works, deeds, work, acts
- idol, idolatrous
- Amorite
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

### translationNotes:

- **who sold himself to do what was evil** - A person being committed to doing what is evil is spoken of as if that person had sold himself to evil. See how you translated this idea in [21:20](#). AT: “who dedicated himself to doing what was evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - The phrase, “in the sight of” refers to someone’s opinion. See how you translated this in [11:6](#). AT: “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **removed before the people of Israel** - Here “Israel” refers to all twelve tribes of Israel and not just to the northern kingdom. AT: “removed from the presence of the people of Israel” or “drove out of the land before the people of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 21 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 21:27-29

### UDB:

<sup>27</sup> After Elijah finished talking to Ahab, Ahab tore his clothes to show that he was sorry for all the sins that he had committed. He put on rough clothes that were made from sacks, and he refused to eat anything. He even wore those rough clothes made from sacks when he slept, to show that he was sorry.

<sup>28</sup> Then Yahweh said this to Elijah, <sup>29</sup> “I have seen that Ahab is now very sorry for all the evil things that he has done. So the things that I promised to do to his family will not happen while he is still alive. I will cause them to happen after his son becomes king. Then those things will happen to his family.”

### ULB:

<sup>27</sup> When Ahab heard these words, he tore his clothes and put sackcloth on his body and fasted, and lay in sackcloth and became very sad. <sup>28</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying, <sup>29</sup> “Do you see how Ahab humbles himself before me? Because he humbles himself before me, I will not bring the coming disaster in his days; it is in his son’s day that I will bring disaster on his family.”

### translationWords:

- word
- sackcloth
- fast
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Elijah
- humble, humility
- son, son of
- family

### translationNotes:

- **the word of Yahweh came** - This idiom means that Yahweh spoke or has sent a message. See how you translated this in [6:11](#). AT: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Do you see how Ahab humbles himself before me?** - God uses this question to show Elijah that Ahab’s sorrow is genuine. AT: “I have seen how Ahab humbles himself before me.” or “Look at how Ahab humbles himself before me.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **in his days ... in his son’s day** - Here the word “days” represents the entire lifetime of a person. AT: “during his lifetime ... during his son’s lifetime” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 21 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 22 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This is the end of the story of Ahab and a continuation of the story of Elijah as he had predicted Ahab's death and the dogs licking his blood.

### Special concepts in this chapter

When God has decided a person will die, then they cannot avoid death. Ahab persuaded Jehoshaphat, king of Judah to help him in a battle against the army of Aram. His false prophets all told him to go because he would be successful. But a randomly shot arrow hit him and he bled to death. They washed his chariot at the pool and the dogs licked up his blood, just as Elijah had said they would. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

**“However, the shrines were still not taken away. The people were still sacrificing and burning incense at the shrines.”**

At the shrines, the people worshiped Yahweh. But later, during Hezekiah's reign it was decided that all sacrifices must be made only at the temple. (See: [temple](#))

### Links:

- [1 Kings 22:01 Notes](#)

## 1 Kings 22:1-2

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> For almost three years there was no war between Aram and Israel. <sup>2</sup> Then King Jehoshaphat, who ruled Judah, went to visit King Ahab, who ruled Israel.

### ULB:

22 <sup>1</sup> Three years passed without war between Aram and Israel. <sup>2</sup> Then it came about that in the third year, Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went down to the king of Israel.

### translationWords:

- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [king](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Three years** - “3 years” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **it came about that** - This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 22:3-4****UDB:**

<sup>3</sup> While they were talking, Ahab said to his officials, “Do you realize that the Arameans are still occupying our city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead? And we are doing nothing to retake that city!” <sup>4</sup> Then he turned toward Jehoshaphat and asked, “Will your army join my army to fight against the people of Ramoth and retake that city?”

Jehoshaphat replied, “Certainly! I will do whatever you want, and you may command my troops. You may take my horses into battle, also.”

**ULB:**

<sup>3</sup> Now the king of Israel had said to his servants, “Do you know that Ramoth Gilead is ours, but that we are doing nothing to take it from the hand of the king of Aram?” <sup>4</sup> So he said to Jehoshaphat, “Will you go with me to war at Ramoth Gilead?” Jehoshaphat replied to the king of Israel, “I am like you, my people are like your people, and my horses are like your horses.”

**translationWords:**

- servant, slave, slavery
- Ramoth
- Gilead
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- horse

**translationNotes:**

- **Do you know that Ramoth Gilead is ours, but that we are doing nothing to take it from the hand of the king of Aram?** - Ahab asks this question to emphasize that they should have already recaptured Ramoth Gilead. AT: “Ramoth Gilead is ours, but we have done nothing yet to take it from the hand of the king of Aram.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **to take it from the hand of the king of Aram** - Here the word “hand” refers to power. AT: “to take it from the control of the king of Aram” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I am like you, my people are like your people, and my horses are like your horses** - Jehoshaphat tells Ahab that he, his people, and his horses belong to Ahab, meaning that Ahab can command them as he pleases. AT: “I, my soldiers, and my horses are yours to use in any way you want” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 22:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Then he added, “But we should ask Yahweh first, to find out what he wants us to do.” <sup>6</sup> So Ahab summoned about four hundred of his prophets together, and he asked them, “Should my army go to fight the people in Ramoth and retake that city, or not?”

They answered, “Yes, go and attack them, because God will enable your army to defeat them.”

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, “Please seek direction from the word of Yahweh for what you should do first.” <sup>6</sup> Then the king of Israel gathered the prophets together, four hundred men, and said to them, “Should I go to Ramoth Gilead to battle, or should I not?” They said, “Attack, for the Lord will give it into the hand of the king.”

### translationWords:

- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Lord](#)

### translationNotes:

- **four hundred men** - “400 men” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **for the Lord will give it into the hand of the king** - Here the word “hand” refers to power. AT: “for the Lord will allow the king to capture Ramoth Gilead” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 22:7-9

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> But Jehoshaphat asked, “Is there no other prophet of Yahweh here whom we can ask?”

<sup>8</sup> The king of Israel replied, “There is one other man we can ask. His name is Micaiah son of Imlah. But I hate him, because when he prophesies he never says that anything good will happen to me. He always predicts that bad things will happen to me.”

Jehoshaphat replied, “King Ahab, you should not say that!”

<sup>9</sup> So the king of Israel told one of his officers to summon Micaiah immediately.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> But Jehoshaphat said, “Is there not here yet another prophet of Yahweh from whom we might seek advice?” <sup>8</sup> The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, “There is still one man by whom we may seek advice from Yahweh to help, Micaiah son of Imlah, but I hate him because he does not prophesy anything good about me, but only hardships.” But Jehoshaphat said, “May the king not say that.” <sup>9</sup> Then the king of Israel called an officer and commanded, “Bring Micaiah son of Imlah, right away.”

### translationWords:

- Jehoshaphat
- Yahweh
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- king
- kingdom of Israel
- good, goodness
- command, to command, commandment

### translationNotes:

- **May the king not say that** - Jehoshaphat refers to Ahab in the third person to show respect for him. AT: “You should not say that” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 22:10-12

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> The king of Israel and the king of Judah were both wearing their royal robes and sitting on thrones at a gate in the city wall of Samaria. Many prophets were speaking messages to them. <sup>11</sup> One of them, whose name was Zedekiah son of Kenaanah, had made from iron something that resembled horns of a bull. Then he proclaimed to Ahab, “This is what Yahweh says, ‘With horns like these your army will keep attacking the Arameans as a bull attacks another animal, until you completely destroy them!’”

<sup>12</sup> All the other prophets of Ahab agreed. They said, “Yes! If you go up to attack Ramoth in Gilead, you will be successful, because Yahweh will enable you to defeat them!”

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> Now Ahab the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah were sitting each on a throne, clothed in their robes, in an open place at the entrance of the gate of Samaria, and all the prophets were prophesying before them. <sup>11</sup> Zedekiah son of Kenaanah made himself horns of iron and said, “Yahweh says this: ‘With these you will push the Arameans until they are consumed.’” <sup>12</sup> Then all the prophets prophesied the same, saying, “Attack Ramoth Gilead and win, for Yahweh has given it into the hand of the king.”

### translationWords:

- Ahab
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- throne
- robe
- gate, gate bar
- Samaria, Samaritan
- horn, horns
- Aram, Aramean, Aramaic
- consume
- Ramoth
- Gilead
- hand, right hand, to hand over

### translationNotes:

- **made himself horns of iron** - “made iron horns for himself”
- **With these you will push the Arameans until they are consumed** - The prophet’s actions are a symbolic metaphor that illustrates the way that Ahab would defeat the Arameans.

Ahab's army will win with great strength, as a bull attacks another animal. (See: [Symbolic Action](#) and [Metaphor](#))

- **until they are consumed** - Destroying an enemy army is spoken of as if it were consuming them. This can be stated in active form. AT: “until you consume them” or “until you destroy them” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **given it into the hand of the king** - Here the word “hand” refers to power. AT: “allowed the king to capture it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 22:13-15****UDB:**

<sup>13</sup> Meanwhile, the messenger who went to summon Micaiah said to him, “Listen to me! All the other prophets are predicting that the king’s army will defeat the Arameans. So be sure that you agree with them and say what will be favorable.”

<sup>14</sup> But Micaiah replied, “As surely as Yahweh lives, I will tell Ahab only what Yahweh tells me to say.”

<sup>15</sup> When Micaiah came to Ahab, Ahab asked him, “Micaiah, should we go to fight against the people of Ramoth, or not?”

Micaiah replied, “Of course you should go! Yahweh will enable your army to defeat them!”

**ULB:**

<sup>13</sup> The messenger who went to call Micaiah spoke to him, saying, “Now look, the words of the prophets declare good things to the king with one mouth. Please let your word be like one of them and say good things.” <sup>14</sup> Micaiah replied, “As Yahweh lives, it is what Yahweh says to me that I will say.” <sup>15</sup> When he came to the king, the king said to him, “Micaiah, should we go to Ramoth Gilead for battle, or not?” Micaiah answered him, “Attack and win. Yahweh will give it into the hand of the king.”

**translationWords:**

- messenger
- call, calling, called, call out
- word
- life, live, living, alive

**translationNotes:**

- **Now look** - “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”
- **the words of the prophets declare good things to the king with one mouth** - The prophets all saying the same thing is spoken of as if they all spoke with the same mouth. The phrase “the words of the prophets” represents the message that the prophets declare. AT: “the prophets all declare the same good things to the king” (See: **Metaphor** and **Metonymy**)
- **let your word be like one of them** - Here the word “them” refers to “the words of the prophets.” AT: “let what you say agree with what they have said” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **should we go** - The word “we” refers to Ahab, Jehoshaphat, and their armies but not to Micaiah. (See: **Exclusive “We”**)

- **will give it into the hand of the king** - Here the word “hand” refers to power. AT: “will allow the king to capture it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 22:16-17****UDB:**

<sup>16</sup> But King Ahab realized that Micaiah was being sarcastic, so he said to Micaiah, “I have told you many times that you must always tell only the truth when you say what Yahweh has revealed to you!”

<sup>17</sup> So Micaiah said to him, “The truth is that in a vision I saw all the troops of Israel scattered on the mountains. They seemed to be like sheep that did not have a shepherd. And Yahweh said, ‘Their master has been killed. So tell them all to go home peacefully.’”

**ULB:**

<sup>16</sup> Then the king said to him, “How many times must I require you to swear to tell me nothing but the truth in the name of Yahweh?” <sup>17</sup> So Micaiah said, “I saw all Israel scattered to the mountains, like sheep who have no shepherd, and Yahweh said, ‘These have no shepherd. Let every man return to his house in peace.’”

**translationWords:**

- king
- oath, swear, swear by
- true, truth, come true
- name
- Yahweh
- kingdom of Israel
- sheep, ram, ewe
- shepherd, to shepherd
- house
- peace, peaceful

**translationNotes:**

- **How many times must I require ... in the name of Yahweh?** - Ahab asks this question out of frustration to rebuke Micaiah. AT: “Many times I have required ... in the name of Yahweh.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **in the name of Yahweh** - Here the word “name” refers to authority. AT: “as the representative of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I saw all Israel** - Here “all Israel” refers to the army of Israel. AT: “I saw the entire army of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **like sheep who have no shepherd** - The people of the army are compared to sheep that have no one to lead them because their shepherd, the king, has died. (See: [Simile](#))

- **These have no shepherd** - Yahweh speaks of the king as if he were a shepherd. Just like a shepherd is responsible to care for and protect his sheep, the king is responsible to lead and protect his people. AT: “These people no longer have a leader” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 22:18-20

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> Ahab said to Jehoshaphat, "I told you that he never predicts that anything good will happen to me! He always predicts that bad things will happen to me."

<sup>19</sup> But Micaiah continued, saying, "Listen to what Yahweh showed to me! In a vision I saw Yahweh sitting on his throne, with all the armies of heaven surrounding him, on his right side and on his left side. <sup>20</sup> And Yahweh said, 'Who can persuade Ahab to go to fight against the people of Ramoth, in order that he may be killed there?'

Some suggested one thing, and others suggested something else.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> So the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "Did I not tell you that he would not prophesy good concerning me, but only disaster?" <sup>19</sup> Then Micaiah said, "Therefore hear the word of Yahweh: I saw Yahweh sitting on his throne, and all the host of heaven were standing by him on his right hand and on his left. <sup>20</sup> Yahweh said, 'Who will entice Ahab, so that he may go up and fall at Ramoth Gilead?' One of them said this and another one said that.

### translationWords:

- Jehoshaphat
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- throne
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- right hand
- Ahab
- Ramoth
- Gilead

### translationNotes:

- **Did I not tell you ... but only disaster?** - Ahab asks this question to emphasize that he had spoken the truth about Micaiah. AT: "I told you ... but only disaster!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **fall at Ramoth Gilead** - Ahab dying in battle is spoken of as if he will fall. AT: "die at Ramoth Gilead" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))
- **One of them said ... and another one said** - "One ... and another" refers to two or more angels in the heavenly host who were responding to Yahweh's question in the previous verse.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)



**1 Kings 22:21-23****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> Finally one spirit came to Yahweh and said, 'I will deceive him!'

<sup>22</sup> Yahweh asked him, 'How will you do it?' The spirit replied, 'I will go and inspire all of Ahab's prophets to tell lies.' Yahweh said, 'You will be successful; go and do it!' <sup>23</sup> So now I tell you that Yahweh has let all of your prophets lie to you. Yahweh has decided that something terrible will happen to you."

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> Then a spirit came forward, stood before Yahweh, and said, 'I will entice him.' Yahweh said to him, 'How?' <sup>22</sup> The spirit replied, 'I will go out and be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.' Yahweh replied, 'You will entice him, and you will also be successful. Go now and do so.' <sup>23</sup> Now see, Yahweh has put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these prophets of yours, and Yahweh has decreed disaster for you."

**translationWords:**

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [decree](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets** - Here the word "spirit" refers to the attitudes of the prophets and the words "the mouth" represents what they will say. AT: "cause all his prophets to speak lies" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Now see** - "Indeed." The word "see" here adds emphasis to what follows.
- **has put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these prophets of yours** - Here the word "spirit" refers to the attitudes of the prophets and the words "the mouth" represents what they will say. AT: "has caused all of your prophets to speak lies" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 22:24-25

### UDB:

<sup>24</sup> Then Zedekiah walked over to Micaiah and slapped him on his face. He said, “Do you think that Yahweh’s Spirit left me in order to speak to you?”

<sup>25</sup> Micaiah replied, “You will find out for yourself to which of us Yahweh’s Spirit has truly spoken on the day when you go into a room of some house to hide from the Aramean troops!”

### ULB:

<sup>24</sup> Then Zedekiah son of Kenaanah, came up, slapped Micaiah on the cheek, and said, “Which way did the Spirit of Yahweh take to go from me to speak to you?” <sup>25</sup> Micaiah said, “Look, you will know that on that day, when you run into some inner room to hide.”

### translationWords:

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Which way did the Spirit of Yahweh take to go from me to speak to you?** - Zedekiah asks this sarcastic question to insult and rebuke Micaiah. AT: “Do not think that Yahweh’s Spirit left me to speak to you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Look** - “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”
- **you will know that** - “you will know the answer to your question.” If Zedekiah’s rhetorical question is translated as a statement, this phrase may be translated to supply implicit information. AT: “you will know that the Spirit of Yahweh has spoken to me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 22:26-28****UDB:**

<sup>26</sup> King Ahab commanded his soldiers, "Seize Micaiah and take him to Amon, the governor of this city, and to my son Joash. <sup>27</sup> Tell them that I have commanded that they should put this man in prison and give him only bread and water. Do not give him anything else to eat until I return safely from the battle!"

<sup>28</sup> Micaiah replied, "If you return safely, it will be clear that it was not Yahweh who told me what to say to you!" Then he said to all those who were standing there, "Do not forget what I have said to King Ahab!"

**ULB:**

<sup>26</sup> The king of Israel said to his servant, "Seize Micaiah and take him to Amon, the governor of the city, and to Joash, my son. <sup>27</sup> Say to him, 'The king says, Put this man in prison and feed him with only a little bread and only a little water, until I come safely.'" <sup>28</sup> Then Micaiah said, "If you return safely, then Yahweh has not spoken by me." Then he added, "Listen to this, all you people."

**translationWords:**

- king
- kingdom of Israel
- servant, slave, slavery
- seize
- governor, govern, proconsul, government
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- bread
- save, safe
- Yahweh

**translationNotes:**

- **If you return safely** - This describes something that would not happen. Yahweh had already told Micaiah that the king would not return safely. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 22:29-30

### UDB:

<sup>29</sup> So the king of Israel and the king of Judah led their armies to Ramoth in Gilead. <sup>30</sup> King Ahab said to Jehoshaphat, “I will put on different clothes, in order that no one will recognize that I am the king. But you should wear your royal robe.” So Ahab disguised himself, and they both went into the battle.

### ULB:

<sup>29</sup> So Ahab, the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, went up to Ramoth Gilead. <sup>30</sup> The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, “I will disguise myself and go into the battle, but you put on your royal robes.” So the king of Israel disguised himself and went into the battle.

### translationWords:

- [Ahab](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Ramoth](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [royal](#)
- [robe](#)

### translationNotes:

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 22:31-33

### UDB:

<sup>31</sup> The King of Aram had said to his thirty-two men who were driving the chariots, “Attack only the king of Israel!” <sup>32</sup> So when the men who were driving the Aramean chariots saw Jehoshaphat wearing the royal robes, they pursued him. They shouted, “There is the king of Israel!” But when Jehoshaphat cried out, <sup>33</sup> they realized that he was not the king of Israel. So they stopped pursuing him.

### ULB:

<sup>31</sup> Now the king of Aram had commanded the thirty-two captains of his chariots, saying, “Do not attack unimportant or important soldiers. Instead, attack only the king of Israel.” <sup>32</sup> It came about that when the captains of the chariots saw Jehoshaphat they said, “Surely that is the king of Israel.” They turned to attack him, so Jehoshaphat cried out. <sup>33</sup> It came about that when the commanders of the chariots saw that it was not the king of Israel, they turned back from pursuing him.

### translationWords:

- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [cry, cry out](#)

### translationNotes:

- **thirty-two captains** - “32 captains” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Do not attack unimportant or important soldiers** - By mentioning both “unimportant” and “important soldiers,” the king meant all soldiers. AT: “Do not attack any of the soldiers” (See: [Merism](#))
- **It came about that** - This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 22:34

### UDB:

<sup>34</sup> But one Aramean soldier shot an arrow at Ahab, without knowing that it was Ahab. The arrow struck Ahab between the places where the parts of his armor joined together. Ahab told the driver of his chariot, "Turn the chariot around and take me out of here! I have been severely wounded!"

### ULB:

<sup>34</sup> But a certain man drew his bow at random and shot the king of Israel between the joints of his armor. Then Ahab said to the driver of his chariot, "Turn around and carry me out of the battle, for I am badly wounded."

### translationWords:

- [bow and arrow](#)
- [king](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [armor](#)

### translationNotes:

- **drew his bow at random** - Possible meanings are 1) he took aim to shoot a soldier without knowing that it was Ahab or 2) he drew his bow to shoot without any specific target in mind.

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 22:35-36

### UDB:

<sup>35</sup> The battle continued all the day. Ahab was sitting propped up in his chariot, facing the Aramean troops. The blood from his wound ran down to the floor of the chariot. And late in the afternoon he died. <sup>36</sup> Just as the sun was going down, someone among the Israelite troops shouted, “The battle is ended! Everyone should return home!”

### ULB:

<sup>35</sup> The battle grew worse that day and the king was held up in his chariot facing the Arameans. He died in the evening. The blood ran out from his wound into the bottom of the chariot. <sup>36</sup> Then about the time the sun was going down, a cry went up throughout the army, saying, “Every man should go back to his city; and every man should go back to his region!”

### translationWords:

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [blood](#)

### translationNotes:

- **the king was held up in his chariot** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone held the king up in his chariot” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a cry went up** - Here “a cry” represents the soldiers who were shouting. AT: “soldiers began to shout” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Every man should go back to his city; and every man should go back to his region** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 22:37-38

### UDB:

<sup>37</sup> So King Ahab died, and they took his body in the chariot to Samaria and buried his body there. <sup>38</sup> They washed his chariot alongside the pool in Samaria, a pool where the prostitutes bathed. And dogs came and licked the king's blood, just like Yahweh had predicted would happen.

### ULB:

<sup>37</sup> So King Ahab died and was brought to Samaria, and they buried him in Samaria. <sup>38</sup> They washed the chariot by the pool of Samaria, and the dogs licked up his blood (this was where the prostitutes bathed), just as the word of Yahweh had declared.

### translationWords:

- [Ahab](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)

### translationNotes:

- **was brought to Samaria** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "his soldiers brought his body to Samaria" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **they buried him** - "people buried him"
- **just as the word of Yahweh had declared** - Here "the word of Yahweh" represents Yahweh himself. AT: "just as Yahweh had declared" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)



## 1 Kings 22:39-40

### UDB:

<sup>39</sup> The account of the other things that happened while Ahab was ruling, and about the palace decorated with much ivory that they built for him, and the cities that were built for him, was written in Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel. <sup>40</sup> When Ahab died, his body was buried where his ancestors were buried. Then his son Ahaziah became king.

### ULB:

<sup>39</sup> As for the other matters concerning Ahab, all that he did, the ivory house that he built, and all the cities that he built, are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel? <sup>40</sup> So Ahab slept with his ancestors, and Ahaziah his son became king in his place.

### translationWords:

- [written](#)
- [sleep, asleep, fall asleep](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)

### translationNotes:

- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel?** - This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how you translated this in [15:31](#). AT: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.” or “you can read them in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **slept with his ancestors** - Ahab dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. See how you translated this in [2:10](#). AT: “died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 22:41-42

### UDB:

<sup>41</sup> Before King Ahab died, when he had been ruling in Israel for four years, Asa's son Jehoshaphat started to rule in Judah. <sup>42</sup> Jehoshaphat was thirty-five years old when he started to rule, and he ruled in Jerusalem for twenty-five years. His mother was Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi.

### ULB:

<sup>41</sup> Then Jehoshaphat son of Asa began to reign over Judah in the fourth year of Ahab king of Israel. <sup>42</sup> Jehoshaphat was thirty-five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem twenty-five years. His mother's name was Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi.

### translationWords:

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### translationNotes:

- **thirty-five years old** - "35 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **twenty-five years** - "25 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 22:43-44

### UDB:

<sup>43</sup> Jehoshaphat was a good king, just like his father Asa had been. He did things that pleased Yahweh. But while he was king, he did not remove all the pagan altars that had been built upon the hills. So the people continued to offer sacrifices to idols on those altars and burned incense there. <sup>44</sup> Jehoshaphat also made a peace treaty with the king of Israel.

### ULB:

<sup>43</sup> He walked in the ways of Asa, his father; he did not turn away from them; he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. Yet the high places were not taken away. The people were still sacrificing and burning incense on the high places. <sup>44</sup> Jehoshaphat made peace with the king of Israel.

### translationWords:

- [walk](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [high places](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [incense](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [king](#)

### translationNotes:

- **He walked in the ways of Asa, his father** - A person's behavior is spoken of as if that person walked along a path. AT: "He did the same things that Asa, his father, had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **what was right in the eyes of Yahweh** - Here "eyes" represents seeing and Yahweh's opinion is spoken of as if he were able to see something. AT: "what Yahweh considered to be right" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **the high places were not taken away** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "he did not take away the high places" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

## 1 Kings 22:45-47

### UDB:

<sup>45</sup> All the other things that happened while Jehoshaphat was ruling, and the great things that he did and the victories his troops won, are written in Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah. <sup>46</sup> Jehoshaphat removed from the land the male prostitutes that still lived in that region. These were same the male prostitutes who had lived there in the time of his father Asa.

<sup>47</sup> At that time, there was no king in Edom. A ruler who had been appointed by Jehoshaphat ruled there.

### ULB:

<sup>45</sup> As for the other matters concerning Jehoshaphat, and the might that he showed, and how he waged war, are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah? <sup>46</sup> He removed from the land the rest of the cultic prostitutes who had remained in the days of his father Asa. <sup>47</sup> There was no king in Edom, but a deputy ruled there.

### translationWords:

- [mighty, might](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)

### translationNotes:

- **are they not written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah?** - This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how you translated this in [14:29](#). AT: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.” or “you can read them in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 22:48-50****UDB:**

<sup>48</sup> Jehoshaphat ordered some Israelite men to build a fleet of ships to sail south to the region of Ophir to get gold. But they were wrecked at Ezion Geber, so the ships never sailed. <sup>49</sup> Before the ships were wrecked, Ahab's son Ahaziah suggested to Jehoshaphat, "Allow my sailors to go with your sailors," but Jehoshaphat refused.

<sup>50</sup> When Jehoshaphat died, his body was buried where his ancestors were buried in Jerusalem, the city where King David had ruled. Then Jehoshaphat's son Jehoram became king.

**ULB:**

<sup>48</sup> Jehoshaphat built oceangoing ships; they were to go to Ophir for gold, but they did not go because the ships were wrecked at Ezion Geber. <sup>49</sup> Then Ahaziah son of Ahab said to Jehoshaphat, "Let my servants sail with your servants in the ships." But Jehoshaphat would not allow it. <sup>50</sup> Jehoshaphat slept with his ancestors and was buried with them in the city of David, his ancestor; Jehoram his son became king in his place.

**translationWords:**

- Jehoshaphat
- gold
- Ahaziah
- Ahab
- servant, slave, slavery
- sleep, asleep, fall asleep
- bury, buried, burial
- city of David
- Jehoram, Joram

**translationNotes:**

- **the ships were wrecked** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "the ships wrecked" (See: *Active or Passive*)
- **slept with his ancestors** - Jehoshaphat dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. See how you translated this in 2:10. AT: "died" (See: *Metaphor and Euphemism*)
- **was buried with them** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "people buried him" (See: *Active or Passive*)

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)

**1 Kings 22:51-53****UDB:**

<sup>51</sup> Before King Jehoshaphat died, when he had been ruling in Judah for seventeen years, Ahab's son Ahaziah began to rule in Israel. Ahaziah ruled in Samaria for two years. <sup>52</sup> He did many things that Yahweh said were evil, doing the evil things that his father and mother had done and the evil things that Jeroboam had done—the king who had induced all the Israelite people to sin by worshiping idols. <sup>53</sup> Ahaziah bowed in front of Baal's idol and worshiped it. That caused Yahweh, the God who is the true God of the Israelite people as well as all the world, to become very angry, just as Ahaziah's father had caused Yahweh to become angry.

**ULB:**

<sup>51</sup> Ahaziah son of Ahab began to reign over Israel in Samaria in the seventeenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, and he reigned two years over Israel. <sup>52</sup> He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh and walked in the way of his father, in the way of his mother, and in the way of Jeroboam son of Nebat, by which he led Israel to sin. <sup>53</sup> He served Baal and worshiped him and so he provoked Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger, just as his father had done.

**translationWords:**

- reign
- kingdom of Israel
- Samaria, Samaritan
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- walk
- Jeroboam
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- serve, service
- Baal
- worship
- angry, anger

**translationNotes:**

- **he reigned two years** - “he reigned 2 years” (See: **Numbers**)
- **what was evil in the sight of Yahweh** - Yahweh's opinion regarding something is spoken of as if Yahweh were seeing that thing. AT: “what Yahweh considered to be evil” (See: **Metaphor**)

- **walked in the way of his father, in the way of his mother, and in the way of Jeroboam son of Nebat** - A person's behavior is spoken of as if that person were walking along a path. AT: "did the same things that his father, mother, and Jeroboam son of Nebat had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **led Israel to sin** - Here the word "Israel" refers to the ten northern tribes that made up the kingdom of Israel.
- **He served Baal and worshiped him** - The words "served" and "worshiped" mean basically the same thing. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **the God of Israel** - Here the word "Israel" refers to all of the twelve tribes descended from Jacob.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Kings](#)
- [1 Kings 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Kings 22 Translation Questions](#)



## translationQuestions

### 1 Kings 1

**Q?** What problem did King David have when he became old?

**A.** Although they covered King David with clothes, he could not stay warm. [1:1]

---

**Q?** Although Abishag was beautiful and served the king and took care of him what did David not do with her?

**A.** The King's did not have sexual relations with Abishag. [1:4]

---

**Q?** How did Adonijah the son of Haggith exalt himself?

**A.** Adonijah wanted to be king, so he prepared for himself chariots and horsemen with fifty men to run ahead of him. [1:5]

---

**Q?** Did King David discipline his son Adonijah and correct his actions?

**A.** No, King David had never troubled Adonijah by saying, "Why have you done this or that?" [1:6]

---

**Q?** Who were the two men who followed and helped Adonijah?

**A.** Joab and Abiathar helped Adonijah in his plot to become king. [1:7]

---

**Q?** Who did Adonijah not invite to his sacrifice?

**A.** Adonijah did not invite Nathan the prophet, Benaiah, the mighty men, or his brother Solomon. [01:9,10]

---

**Q?** Who warned Bathsheba the mother of Solomon that Adonijah had become king and that her life was in danger?

**A.** Nathan the Prophet warned Bathsheba that her life and the life of her son Solomon were in danger. [1:11-12]

---

**Q?** What questions did Nathan tell Bathsheba to ask King David?

**A.** Nathan the prophet told Bathsheba to ask David whether he promised that Solomon would be king, and why Adonijah was reigning. [1:13]

---

**Q?** What promise had King David sworn to Bathsheba?

**A.** David had sworn to Bathsheba that Solomon would be king after David died. [1:17]

---

**Q?** What did Bathsheba tell King David that Adonijah had done?

**A.** Bathsheba told him that Adonijah had become king, without David knowing it, and that he had sacrificed animals in abundance [1:18-19]

---

**Q?** What did Bathsheba fear would happen when David died?

**A.** She feared that she and her son Solomon would be regarded as criminals [1:21]

---

**Q?** Why did Nathan the prophet come to visit King David?

**A.** Nathan the prophet wanted to inform King David that Adonijah was setting himself up as King without David's permission. [01:24,25]

---

**Q?** What question did Nathan the prophet ask of King David?

**A.** Nathan asked him if David had said that Adonijah would reign after him and sit on his throne as king. [1:24]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What oath did King David make to Bathsheba?

**A.** David made an oath that Solomon the son of Bathsheba would reign after him and sit on his throne in David's place. [1:29-30]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did King David tell Zadok, Nathan, and Benaiah to do for his son Solomon?

**A.** King David told his three loyal subjects to take Solomon to Gihon on David's own mule and to anoint him as king over Israel. [01:32,33]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How did the people respond when Zadok anointed Solomon as king?

**A.** The people said "Long live King Solomon!" and rejoiced with great joy [1:39-40]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Adonijah do when he heard the news that David had made Solomon the king of Israel?

**A.** Adonijah was afraid of Solomon, and went into the temple of God and took hold of the horns of the altar. [1:51]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was King Solomon tell Adonijah to do when they brought him before Solomon?

**A.** King Solomon told Adonijah to go to his house. [1:53]

\_\_\_\_\_

## 1 Kings 2

**Q?** What did King David tell his son Solomon?

**A.** David told his son to always fear and obey God. [2:3]

---

**Q?** What was Yahweh's promise to David?

**A.** Yahweh promised that David would never cease to have a man on Israel's throne. [2:4]

---

**Q?** What did King David's tell Solomon about Joab son of Zeruah?

**A.** King David told Solomon not to let him go down to the grave in peace. [2:6]

---

**Q?** What had the sons of Barzillai done for King David?

**A.** The sons of Barzillai had come to David when he fled from Absalom. [2:7]

---

**Q?** What had Shimei done to King David?

**A.** Shimei had violently cursed King David. [2:8]

---

**Q?** What did King David tell Solomon to do to Shimei?

**A.** David told Solomon not to let Shimei go free from punishment, but to bring him down to the grave with blood. [2:9]

---

**Q?** How long did King David reign over Israel?

**A.** David reigned for forty years. [2:11]

---

**Q?** What did Adonijah say to Bathsheba when he came to her?

**A.** Adonijah said that all Israel expected him to be King. [2:15]

---

**Q?** What did Adonijah request from Bathsheba?

**A.** Adonijah requested that she ask Solomon for Abishag the Shunammite to be given to him as his wife. [2:16]

---

**Q?** Why did Bathsheba go to Solomon?

**A.** Bathsheba went to Solomon to ask that Abishag would be given to Adonijah as his wife. [2:21]

---

**Q?** What did King Solomon say in response to Bathsheba?

**A.** Solomon said that Adonijah had spoken this request at the cost of his life. [2:23]

---

**Q?** Who did King Solomon send to execute Adonijah?

**A.** Solomon sent Benaiah son of Jehoiada to execute him. [2:25]

---

**Q?** What did King Solomon tell Abiathar the priest to do?

**A.** Solomon told Abiathar to go back to his fields and dismissed him from being priest. [2:27]

---

**Q?** Where did Joab go to flee from Solomon?

**A.** Joab fled to the tent of Yahweh and took hold of the horns of the altar. [2:28]

---

**Q?** What did King Solomon send Benaiah son of Jehoiada to do?

**A.** Solomon sent him to kill Joab. [2:29]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Joab say to Benaiah the son of Jehoiada?

**A.** Joab told him that he would not come out of the temple and would die at the altar. [2:30]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did King Solomon tell Benaiah to do to Joab?

**A.** Solomon told Benaiah to do as Joab asked. [2:31]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why did King Solomon kill Joab?

**A.** Solomon killed Joab because Joab attacked and killed Abner son of Ner and Amasa son of Jether without King David's permission. [2:33]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did King Solomon do to reward Benaiah son of Jehoiada?

**A.** Solomon put him in charge of the army. [2:35]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where did King Solomon allow Shimei to live?

**A.** Solomon told Shimei that he could live in Jerusalem. [2:36]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What warning did King Solomon give to Shimei when he allowed him to live in Jerusalem?

**A.** Solomon told Shimei that if he left Jerusalem to go any other place, he would be killed. [2:37]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why did Shimei saddle his donkey and leave Jerusalem to go to Gath?

**A.** Shimei went to Gath to bring back two of his servants who had run away from him. [2:40]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did King Solomon say that Shimei had done to Yahweh?

**A.** Solomon told Shimei that he had not kept his oath to Yahweh, and that Yahweh would return his wickedness back on his own head. [2:44]

---

**Q?** What did King Solomon do when he was told that Shimei had left Jerusalem?

**A.** Solomon told Benaiah the son of Jehoiada to kill Shimei. [2:46]

---

### 1 Kings 3

**Q?** How did King Solomon ally himself with Pharaoh king of Egypt?

**A.** Solomon allied himself to Pharaoh by marrying his daughter. [3:1]

---

**Q?** What thing did King Solomon do that was not a statute of Yahweh?

**A.** Solomon sacrificed and burned incense at the shrines. [3:3]

---

**Q?** Where was the great shrine located?

**A.** The great shrine was located in Gibeon. [3:4]

---

**Q?** How did Yahweh appear to King Solomon?

**A.** Yahweh appeared to Solomon in a dream at night. [3:5]

---

**Q?** What did King Solomon ask of Yahweh?

**A.** Solomon asked Yahweh to give him an understanding heart to judge his people. [3:9]

---

**Q?** Did King Solomon's request please the Lord?

**A.** Yes, Solomon's request pleased the Lord. [3:10]

---

**Q?** What did God give to King Solomon?

**A.** God gave Solomon a wise and understanding heart so that there was no one else like him. [3:12]

---

**Q?** Did God give King Solomon something for which he did not ask?

**A.** Yes, God gave Solomon both riches and honor. [3:13]

---



\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What would King Solomon need to do to cause God to lengthen his days?

**A.** God said he would lengthen Solomon's days if Solomon walked in God's statutes and commands as King David did. [3:14]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did King Solomon do after he woke up from sleeping?

**A.** Solomon came to Jerusalem and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings and made a feast for his servants . [3:15]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Who came and stood before King Solomon?

**A.** Two women who were prostitutes came and stood before Solomon. [3:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the one woman say to King Solomon?

**A.** The one woman said that the other woman took her living son from her and laid the other woman's dead son at her breast while she slept. [3:20]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What command did King Solomon give to his servants?

**A.** Solomon said to bring a sword and divide the living child in two and give the parts to the two women. [3:25]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the first woman say to King Solomon?

**A.** The first woman said to give the living child to the second woman and not kill it. [3:26]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did King Solomon say to do with the living child?

**A.** Solomon said to give the living child to the first woman and by no means kill it. [3:27]

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did all of Israel do when they heard of the judgement the king had given?

**A.** All of Israel feared the king because they saw the wisdom that God gave him for giving judgments.

[3:28]

\_\_\_\_\_

## 1 Kings 4

**Q?** Was Solomon king over all Israel?

**A.** Yes, Solomon was king over all Israel. [4:1]

---

**Q?** Did King Solomon have officials and officers?

**A.** King Solomon had many men who were officials and officers. [4:5]

---

**Q?** How long did each of Solomon's officers provide food for his household?

**A.** Each officer had to make provision for one month of the year. [4:7]

---

**Q?** How numerous were Judah and Israel?

**A.** Judah and Israel were as numerous as the sand by the sea. [4:20]

---

**Q?** How far did Solomon rule?

**A.** Solomon ruled over the kingdoms from the River to the land of the Philistines to the border of Egypt. [4:21]

---

**Q?** What was Solomon's provision for one day?

**A.** Solomon's provision for one day included flour, meal, oxen, sheep, deer, gazelles, roebucks, and fattened fowl. [04:22,23]

---

**Q?** How did Judah and Israel live all of the days of Solomon?

**A.** Judah and Israel lived in safety, every man under his vine and under his fig tree all the days of Solomon. [4:25]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How many stalls of horses did Solomon have for his chariots?

**A.** Solomon had forty thousand stalls of horses for his chariots. [4:26]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was brought for Solomon's horses?

**A.** Barley and straw were brought for the chariot horses and the riding horses. [4:28]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did God give to Solomon?

**A.** God gave Solomon great wisdom and understanding like the sand on the seashore. [4:29]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How far did Solomon's fame reach?

**A.** Solomon's fame reached to all of the surrounding nations. [4:31]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How many proverbs and songs did Solomon have?

**A.** Solomon spoke three thousand songs and his proverbs were one thousand and five. [4:32]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How far did people come to hear the wisdom of Solomon?

**A.** People came from all the nations to hear the wisdom of Solomon. [4:34]

\_\_\_\_\_

## 1 Kings 5

**Q?** Who sent servants to Solomon?

**A.** Hiram king of Tyre sent his servants to Solomon. [5:1]

---

**Q?** Why was David not able to build a house for the name of Yahweh?

**A.** David was not able to build a house for the name of Yahweh because of wars. [5:3]

---

**Q?** What did Yahweh tell David?

**A.** Yahweh told David, “your son whom I will set on the throne will build a temple for my name.” [5:5]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon ask Hiram to do?

**A.** Solomon asked Hiram to command his servants to cut cedars from Lebanon for him. [5:6]

---

**Q?** What did Hiram do when he heard Solomon’s words?

**A.** Hiram rejoiced greatly and said, “May Yahweh be blessed today.” [5:7]

---

**Q?** Did Hiram do what Solomon asked him to do?

**A.** Yes, Hiram sent word saying, “I will do all you desire concerning the timber of cedar and cypress.” [5:8]

---

**Q?** What would Hiram’s servants do with the trees?

**A.** Hiram’s servants brought the trees down from Lebanon to the sea where they were made into rafts. [5:9]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was Hiram's desire?

**A.** Hiram desired that Solomon would give food for his household. [5:9]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What food did Solomon give to Hiram?

**A.** Solomon gave Hiram twenty thousand measures of wheat and twenty measures of pure oil every year. [5:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Was there peace between Hiram and Solomon?

**A.** Yes, there was peace between Hiram and Solomon and the two of them made a covenant. [5:12]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How many forced laborers did Solomon have out of Israel?

**A.** Solomon had thirty thousand forced laborers out of Israel. [5:13]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Who did Solomon put over all of the forced laborers?

**A.** Solomon put Adoniram over all of the forced laborers. [5:14]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Did Solomon have men who supervised all of the workers?

**A.** Yes, Solomon had 3,300 chief officers who were over the work and supervised the workers. [5:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the workers quarry for the foundation of the house of Yahweh?

**A.** The workers quarried large stones for the foundation of the house of Yahweh. [5:17]

\_\_\_\_\_

## 1 Kings 6

**Q?** When did Solomon begin building the temple of Yahweh?

**A.** Solomon began building the temple of Yahweh in the 480th year after the people of Israel came out of Egypt. [6:1]

---

**Q?** What were the dimensions of the temple that Solomon built for Yahweh?

**A.** The temple that Solomon built was sixty cubits long, twenty cubits wide, and thirty cubits high. [6:2]

---

**Q?** Did Solomon make windows for the house?

**A.** Yes, Solomon made framed windows for the house. [6:4]

---

**Q?** Where were the stones for the house prepared?

**A.** The stones for the house were prepared at the quarry. [6:7]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon use to cover the house?

**A.** Solomon covered the house with beams and planks of cedar. [6:9]

---

**Q?** How were the side rooms joined to the house?

**A.** The side rooms were joined to the house with timbers of cedar. [6:10]

---

**Q?** Did Yahweh promise to live among the people of Israel?

**A.** Yes, Yahweh promised to live among the people of Israel and to not leave them. [6:13]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon use to build the interior walls of the house?

**A.** Solomon used boards of cedar to build the interior walls of the house. [6:15]

---

**Q?** What was the length of the main hall of the house?

**A.** The main hall of the house was forty cubits long. [6:17]

---

**Q?** Why did Solomon prepare the most holy place inside the house?

**A.** Solomon prepared the most holy place inside the house in order to place the ark of the covenant of Yahweh there. [6:19]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon use to overlay the inside of the temple and the altar of the most holy place?

**A.** Solomon overlaid the entire interior of the temple and the altar of the most holy place with gold. [6:22]

---

**Q?** What was the height of the cherubim that Solomon made for the most holy place?

**A.** Solomon made the two cherubim for the most holy place ten cubits high. [6:23]

---

**Q?** Where did Solomon place the cherubim he had made?

**A.** Solomon placed the cherubim in the innermost room. [6:27]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon carve on the walls of the house?

**A.** Solomon carved figures of cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers on the walls of the house. [6:29]

---



**Q?** Did Solomon make doors for the entrance to the holy place?

**A.** Yes, Solomon made doors of olive wood for the entrance to the holy place. [6:31]

---

**Q?** How long did Solomon take to build the temple?

**A.** Solomon took seven years to build the temple. [6:38]

---

## 1 Kings 7

**Q?** How long did Solomon take to build his own palace?

**A.** Solomon took thirteen years to build his own palace. [7:1]

---

**Q?** What forest did Solomon use to build his palace?

**A.** Solomon built his palace from the forest of Lebanon. [7:2]

---

**Q?** How big was the colonnade at Solomon's palace?

**A.** The colonnade at Solomon's palace was fifty cubits long and thirty cubits wide. [7:6]

---

**Q?** What was Solomon's hall of justice covered with?

**A.** Solomon's hall of justice was covered from floor to floor with cedar. [7:7]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon build for his wife, Pharaoh's daughter?

**A.** Solomon built a house like his own for Pharaoh's daughter, his wife. [7:8]

---

**Q?** How big were the foundation stones of the buildings?

**A.** The foundation stones used for the buildings were eight and ten cubits in length. [7:10]

---

**Q?** How many rows of cut stones did the great courtyard surrounding the palace have?

**A.** The great courtyard surrounding the palace had three rows of cut stones. [7:12]

---

**Q?** Who came to work with bronze for king Solomon?

**A.** Hiram came from Tyre to work for king Solomon with bronze. [7:14]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How many pillars of bronze did Hiram make?

**A.** Hiram made two pillars of bronze. [7:15]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was included at the very top of the pillars?

**A.** There were two hundred pomegranates in rows at the top of the pillars. [7:20]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How many oxen did the sea stand on?

**A.** The sea stood on twelve oxen with three looking north, south, east and west. [7:25]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was the height of the ten bronze stands that Hiram made?

**A.** The height of each of the ten stands was three cubits. [7:27]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What were the wheels underneath the panels made of?

**A.** The wheels underneath the panels were made of cast metal. [7:33]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How much water could each of Hiram's basins hold?

**A.** Hiram's basins held forty baths of water per basin. [7:38]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Did Hiram finish the work in the temple of Yahweh?

**A.** Yes, Hiram finished all of the work that he did for King Solomon in the temple of Yahweh. [7:40]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How many pomegranates did Hiram make for the decorative latticework?

**A.** Hiram made four hundred pomegranates for the decorative latticework. [7:42]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon use to make all of the furnishings in the temple of Yahweh?

**A.** Solomon used gold to make all of the furnishings in the temple of Yahweh. [7:48]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon put in the storerooms of the house of Yahweh?

**A.** Solomon put into the storerooms all of the silver, gold and furnishings that David his father had dedicated. [7:51]

---

## 1 Kings 8

**Q?** Why did Solomon assemble the leaders of Israel before himself?

**A.** Solomon assembled the leaders of Israel to bring up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh from the city of David. [8:1]

---

**Q?** Who assembled before King Solomon at the feast?

**A.** All the men of Israel assembled before King Solomon at the feast. [8:2]

---

**Q?** Who took up the ark?

**A.** The priests took up the ark. [8:3]

---

**Q?** What was sacrificed before the ark?

**A.** King Solomon sacrificed sheep and oxen that could not be counted before the ark . [8:5]

---

**Q?** To where did the priests bring the ark of the covenant of Yahweh?

**A.** The priests brought the ark of the covenant of Yahweh into the most holy place. [8:6]

---

**Q?** What filled the house of Yahweh?

**A.** The glory of Yahweh filled his house. [8:11]

---

**Q?** What did the king do for the assembly of Israel?

**A.** The king blessed all of the assembly of Israel while they were standing. [8:14]

---

**Q?** What had Yahweh told David?

**A.** Yahweh told David that his son would build the house for his name. [8:19]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon do before the altar of Yahweh?

**A.** Solomon stood before the altar of Yahweh and spread out his hands. [8:22]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon pray and ask of Yahweh?

**A.** Solomon prayed that the promise Yahweh made to David would come true. [8:26]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon pray for Yahweh to do?

**A.** Solomon prayed that Yahweh would have his eyes on the temple both day and night. [8:29]

---

**Q?** Where would Yahweh listen from when Israel prayed to him?

**A.** Yahweh would listen from the heavens, the place where he lived. [8:30]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon ask Yahweh to do for the righteous person?

**A.** Solomon asked that the righteous would be declared innocent and rewarded according to his righteousness. [8:32]

---

**Q?** When would Israel be defeated by an enemy?

**A.** Israel would be defeated by an enemy when they sinned against Yahweh. [8:33]

---

**Q?** Why would the skies be shut and no rain fall?

**A.** The skies would be shut and rain not fall because the people sinned against Yahweh. [8:35]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why did Solomon ask Yahweh to listen from heaven and forgive the sins of the people?

**A.** Solomon asked Yahweh to forgive the people so they would fear Him all of the days they lived on the land. [8:40]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why would a foreigner come from a distant country?

**A.** A foreigner would come from a distant country because of Yahweh's name. [8:41]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why did Solomon ask Yahweh to do whatever the foreigner asks him to do?

**A.** Solomon asked Yahweh to do whatever the foreigner asks him to do so that all people groups would know his name and fear him. [8:43]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why would an enemy carry Israel away captive to their land?

**A.** An enemy would carry Israel away captive because Yahweh was angry with Israel and handed them over to their enemy. [8:46]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What would the Israelites say in the land of their enemy?

**A.** The Israelites would say, "We have acted wickedly and sinned. We have behaved wickedly." [8:47]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What would the Israelites do in the land of their enemy?

**A.** The Israelites would return to Yahweh with all their heart and all their soul and pray toward Him. [8:48]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Solomon ask Yahweh to do when his people prayed to Him?

**A.** Solomon asked Yahweh to forgive his people and to have compassion on them. [8:50]

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** From where did Yahweh rescue his people?

**A.** Yahweh rescued his people from out of Egypt as out of a furnace. [8:51]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Solomon ask Yahweh to do when his people cried to him?

**A.** Solomon asked Yahweh to open His eyes to their requests and to listen to them. [8:52]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why did Yahweh separate his people from among all the peoples of the earth?

**A.** Yahweh separated his people from among all the peoples of the earth to belong to him and to receive his promises. [8:53]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Solomon do after he finished all his prayer and request to Yahweh?

**A.** After he finished his prayer, Solomon stood and blessed all the assembly of Israel in a loud voice. [8:55]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Solomon want all peoples of the earth to know?

**A.** Solomon wanted all the peoples of the earth to know that Yahweh is God and there is no other God. [8:60]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Solomon tell Yahweh's people to do?

**A.** Solomon told them to keep their heart true to Yahweh and to walk in his statutes and commandments. [8:61]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Who offered sacrifices to Yahweh?

**A.** The king and all Israel with him offered sacrifices to Yahweh. [8:62]

\_\_\_\_\_



\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How many oxen and sheep did Solomon sacrifice?

**A.** Solomon sacrificed 22,000 oxen and 120,000 sheep to Yahweh. [8:63]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why did the king consecrate the courtyard that was in front of the temple of Yahweh?

**A.** The king consecrated the courtyard because the bronze altar before Yahweh was too small for all of the offerings. [8:64]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** When did the king send the people away back to their homes?

**A.** On the eighth day, the king sent the people back to their homes. [8:66]

\_\_\_\_\_

## 1 Kings 9

**Q?** After Solomon finished building the house of Yahweh, what did Yahweh do?

**A.** When Solomon finished the house of Yahweh, he appeared to Solomon a second time. [9:2]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Yahweh say to Solomon?

**A.** Yahweh said to Solomon, "I have heard your prayer and request you made before me." [9:3]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Yahweh want Solomon to obey?

**A.** Yahweh wanted Solomon to obey all the commandments and decrees that he had commanded him. [9:4]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Yahweh promise to David, Solomon's father?

**A.** Yahweh promised to establish the throne of David's kingdom over Israel forever. [9:5]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Yahweh tell Solomon he would do if Solomon did not keep his commandments?

**A.** Yahweh told Solomon that he would cut off Israel from the ground that he had given them. [9:7]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What would people ask when they passed by the temple of Yahweh?

**A.** People would ask, "Why has Yahweh done this to this land and to this house?" [9:8]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why would Yahweh bring this disaster on them?

**A.** Yahweh would bring disaster on them because they rebelled against their God and worshiped other gods. [9:9]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What happened at the end of twenty years?

**A.** At the end of twenty years, Solomon finished building the temple of Yahweh and the king's palace. [9:10]

---

**Q?** With what did Hiram king of Tyre furnish Solomon?

**A.** Hiram king of Tyre furnished Solomon with cedar trees, pine trees, and gold. [9:11]

---

**Q?** What did Hiram come from Tyre to see?

**A.** Hiram came from Tyre to see the cities that Solomon had given him. [9:12]

---

**Q?** What did Hiram call the cities which Solomon had given him?

**A.** Hiram called the cities the land of Cabul which means worthless. [9:13]

---

**Q?** How much gold did Hiram send to king Solomon?

**A.** Hiram had sent 120 talents of gold to the king. [9:14]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon have built at Hazor, Megiddo, and Gezer?

**A.** Solomon had defenses built at Hazor, Megiddo, and Gezer. [9:15]

---

**Q?** What did Pharaoh king of Egypt do at Gezer?

**A.** Pharaoh king of Egypt took Gezer and burned it, and also killed the Canaanites in the city. [9:16]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon do at Gezer and Beth Horon?

**A.** Solomon rebuilt Gezer and Beth Horon. [9:17]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Solomon do with the people in the land who were not of Israel?

**A.** The people in the land who were not of Israel Solomon made into forced laborers. [9:21]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Solomon do with the people of Israel?

**A.** Solomon made the people of Israel become soldiers, servants, officials, officers and commanders. [9:22]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How many chief officers did Solomon have?

**A.** Solomon had 550 chief officers who were over the supervisors. [9:23]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Solomon offer three times a year?

**A.** Solomon offered burnt offerings and peace offerings on the altar of Yahweh three times a year. [9:25]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Solomon do at Ezion Geber?

**A.** Solomon built a fleet of ships at Ezion Geber. [9:26]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why did Solomon send servants to Ophir?

**A.** Solomon sent servants to Ophir to bring back gold. [9:28]

\_\_\_\_\_

## 1 Kings 10

**Q?** Why did the queen of Sheba come to Solomon?

**A.** The queen of Sheba came to Solomon to test him with hard questions. [10:1]

---

**Q?** What did the queen of Sheba bring to Jerusalem?

**A.** The queen of Sheba brought spices, gold, and precious gemstones to Jerusalem with her. [10:2]

---

**Q?** How many of the queen's questions did Solomon answer?

**A.** Solomon answered all of the questions of the queen of Sheba. [10:3]

---

**Q?** How did the queen of Sheba react when she saw all of Solomon's wisdom?

**A.** When the queen of Sheba saw all of Solomon's wisdom there was no more spirit in her. [10:5]

---

**Q?** What did the queen of Sheba say to Solomon?

**A.** The queen of Sheba said to Solomon, "You have exceeded the fame that I heard about you." [10:7]

---

**Q?** Why did the queen of Sheba say that Solomon's servants were blessed?

**A.** The queen of Sheba said that Solomon's servants were blessed because they heard his wisdom. [10:8]

---

**Q?** How did Yahweh show his love to Israel?

**A.** Yahweh showed his love for Israel by making Solomon king. [10:9]

---

**Q?** What did the queen of Sheba give to Solomon?

**A.** The queen of Sheba gave to Solomon 120 talents of gold, spices, and precious stones. [10:10]

---

**Q?** What did the fleet of Hiram bring from Ophir?

**A.** The fleet of Hiram brought gold from Ophir. [10:11]

---

**Q?** What did the king make for the temple of Yahweh?

**A.** The king made almug wood pillars for the temple of Yahweh. [10:12]

---

**Q?** What did King Solomon give to the queen of Sheba?

**A.** King Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba everything she asked for. [10:13]

---

**Q?** What was the weight of the gold that came to King Solomon in one year?

**A.** The weight of the gold that came to King Solomon in one year was 666 talents. [10:14]

---

**Q?** Who brought gold and silver to Solomon?

**A.** The kings of Arabia and governors in the country brought gold and silver to Solomon. [10:15]

---

**Q?** How many large shields of beaten gold did King Solomon make?

**A.** King Solomon made two hundred shields of beaten gold. [10:16]

---

**Q?** Where did King Solomon put three hundred shields of beaten gold?

**A.** King Solomon put three hundred shields of beaten gold into the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon. [10:17]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the king make out of ivory and finest gold?

**A.** The king made a great throne of ivory and the finest gold. [10:18]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was standing beside the armrests of the throne that the king made?

**A.** Two lions were standing beside the armrests of the throne that the king made. [10:19]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What stood on the side of the six steps at the throne?

**A.** Twelve lions were standing on the sides of the six steps at the throne. [10:20]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Of what were the drinking cups in the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon made?

**A.** The drinking cups in the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon were made of pure gold. [10:21]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the king's ships bring every three years?

**A.** Every three years, the king's ships brought gold, silver, ivory, apes, and baboons. [10:22]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why did all the earth seek out Solomon?

**A.** All the earth sought out Solomon to hear the wisdom God put in his heart. [10:24]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What tribute did Solomon's visitors bring to him?

**A.** Those who visited brought tribute such as gold, silver, clothing, armor, and spices. [10:25]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where did Solomon station his chariots and horsemen?

**A.** Solomon stationed his chariots and horsemen in the chariot cities and in Jerusalem. [10:26]

---

**Q?** What did the king do with cedar wood?

**A.** The king made cedar wood become as abundant as the sycamore fig trees in the lowlands. [10:27]

---

**Q?** From where were Solomon's horses brought?

**A.** Solomon's horses were brought from Egypt and Cilicia. [10:28]

---

**Q?** What was the purchase price of each chariot Solomon owned?

**A.** The chariots were purchased for six hundred shekels of silver each. [10:29]

---



## 1 Kings 11

Q? Whom did King Solomon love?

A. King Solomon loved many foreign women. [11:1]

---

Q? What did Yahweh command about marrying women from foreign nations?

A. Yahweh commanded Israel not to marry women from foreign nations. [11:2]

---

Q? What did Solomon's wives do to his heart?

A. Solomon's wives turned his heart away. [11:3]

---

Q? How was David's heart toward Yahweh?

A. David's heart was fully surrendered to Yahweh his God. [11:4]

---

Q? What did Solomon follow?

A. Solomon followed Ashtoreth the goddess of the Sidonians and Milcom of the Ammonites. [11:5]

---

Q? What did Solomon do in the sight of Yahweh?

A. Solomon did that which was evil in the sight of Yahweh. [11:6]

---

Q? What did Solomon build for Chemosh?

A. Solomon built a shrine for Chemosh, the idol of Moab. [11:7]

---

Q? What did Solomon do at the shrines of his foreign wives?

A. Solomon burned incense and sacrificed to their gods at the shrines. [11:8]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How many times did Yahweh appear to Solomon?

**A.** Yahweh appeared twice to Solomon. [11:9]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Yahweh command Solomon?

**A.** Yahweh commanded Solomon to not go after foreign gods. [11:10]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Yahweh tell Solomon he would do because of the foreign gods?

**A.** Yahweh told Solomon he would tear the kingdom from him and give it to his servant. [11:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How many tribes did Yahweh promise to give to Solomon's son?

**A.** Yahweh promised to give one tribe to Solomon's son. [11:13]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Whom did Yahweh raise up as an adversary to Solomon?

**A.** Yahweh raised up Hadad the Edomite as an adversary to Solomon. [11:14]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Who went up to bury the dead who had been killed in Edom?

**A.** Joab the captain of the army went up to bury the dead who were killed in Edom. [11:15]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How long did Joab and Israel remain in Edom?

**A.** Joab and Israel remained in Edom six months. [11:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** To where was Hadad taken?

**A.** Hadad was taken to Egypt. [11:17]

---

**Q?** Whom did Pharaoh give as a wife to Hadad?

**A.** Pharaoh gave to Hadad the sister of Queen Tahpenes as his wife. [11:19]

---

**Q?** What was the name of Hadad's son?

**A.** Hadad's son was named Genubath. [11:20]

---

**Q?** What did Hadad ask of Pharaoh?

**A.** Hadad asked Pharaoh if he might depart and go to his own country. [11:21]

---

**Q?** What was the name of another adversary that God raised up against Solomon?

**A.** God raised up another adversary to Solomon named Rezon son of Eliada. [11:23]

---

**Q?** To where did Rezon's men travel?

**A.** Rezon's men went to Damascus and lived there. [11:24]

---

**Q?** How long was Rezon an enemy of Israel?

**A.** Rezon was an enemy of Israel all of the days of Solomon. [11:25]

---

**Q?** Who lifted up his hand against the king?

**A.** Jeroboam the son of Nebat lifted up his hand against the king. [11:26]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why did Jeroboam lift up his hand against the king?

**A.** Jeroboam the son of Nebat lifted up his hand against the king because he built the Millo and repaired the wall of the city of David. [11:27]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Solomon give Jeroboam command over?

**A.** Solomon gave Jeroboam command over all the labor of the house of Joseph. [11:28]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Who found Jeroboam on the road as he went out of Jerusalem?

**A.** The prophet Ahijah found Jeroboam on the road as he went out of Jerusalem. [11:29]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Ahijah do to Jeroboam's new garment?

**A.** Ahijah grabbed Jeroboam's new garment and tore it into twelve pieces. [11:30]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Yahweh say about Solomon's kingdom?

**A.** Yahweh said that He would tear the kingdom out of Solomon's hand. [11:31]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How many tribes would Solomon keep?

**A.** Solomon would keep one tribe for the sake of David. [11:32]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How long did Yahweh make Solomon to be ruler?

**A.** Yahweh made Solomon ruler all the days of his life. [11:34]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** In which city did Yahweh choose to put his name?

**A.** Yahweh chose to put his name in the city of Jerusalem. [11:36]

---

**Q?** What did Yahweh promise to do for Jeroboam if he walked in his ways?

**A.** Yahweh promised to give Jeroboam a sure house and also give Israel to him if he walked in his ways. [11:38]

---

**Q?** What did Solomon try to do to Jeroboam?

**A.** Solomon tried to kill Jeroboam. [11:40]

---

**Q?** How long did Solomon reign in Jerusalem?

**A.** Solomon reigned in Jerusalem for forty years. [11:42]

---

**Q?** Who became king in Solomon's place?

**A.** Rehoboam became king in Solomon's place. [11:43]

---

## 1 Kings 12

**Q?** Why did Rehoboam go to Shechem?

**A.** Rehoboam went to Shechem because all Israel was coming there to make him king. [12:1]

---

**Q?** Who came with the assembly of Israel to speak to Rehoboam?

**A.** Jeroboam the son of Nebat came with the assembly of Israel to speak to Rehoboam. [12:3]

---

**Q?** What did Israel ask of Rehoboam?

**A.** All Israel asked that Rehoboam would lighten the heavy yoke his father had put on them. [12:4]

---

**Q?** For how many days did Rehoboam send the people away?

**A.** Rehoboam sent the people away for three days. [12:5]

---

**Q?** With whom did Rehoboam consult?

**A.** Rehoboam consulted with the older men who stood before Solomon his father. [12:6]

---

**Q?** What did the older men say to Rehoboam?

**A.** The older men said that Rehoboam should say good words to the people of Israel. [12:7]

---

**Q?** What did Rehoboam do with the advice the older men gave him?

**A.** Rehoboam ignored the advice of the older men. [12:8]

---

**Q?** What did the younger men tell Rehoboam to say to the people?

**A.** The younger men told Rehoboam to say, “My little finger is thicker than my father’s waist.” [12:10]

---

**Q?** What did Rehoboam say he would use to punish the people?

**A.** Rehoboam said he would use scorpions to punish the people. [12:11]

---

**Q?** What had the king instructed the people to do?

**A.** The king had instructed the people to come back on the third day. [12:12]

---

**Q?** How did the king answer the people?

**A.** The king answered the people roughly. [12:13]

---

**Q?** What did the king say he would do with the yoke on the people?

**A.** The king said he would add to the yoke on the people. [12:14]

---

**Q?** Who brought about these events?

**A.** These events were brought about by Yahweh. [12:15]

---

**Q?** What did all Israel say when they saw that the king did not listen to them?

**A.** All Israel said, “We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse; flee to your tents.” [12:16]

---

**Q?** Over what people did Rehoboam become king?

**A.** Rehoboam became king over the people of Israel who lived in the cities of Judah. [12:17]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Israel do to Adoram?

**A.** All Israel stoned Adoram to death with stones. [12:18]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Who followed the family of David?

**A.** Only the tribe of Judah followed the family of David. [12:20]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why did Rehoboam assemble the house of Judah in Jerusalem?

**A.** Rehoboam assembled the house of Judah to fight against the house of Israel. [12:21]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** To whom did the word of God come?

**A.** The word of God came to Shemaiah the man of God. [12:22]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Yahweh say?

**A.** Yahweh said, "You must not attack or fight against your brothers the people of Israel." [12:24]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where did Jeroboam build Shechem?

**A.** Jeroboam built Shechem in the hill country of Ephraim. [12:25]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Jeroboam think in his heart?

**A.** Jeroboam thought in his heart, "Now the kingdom will return to the house of David." [12:26]

\_\_\_\_\_



**Q?** What did Jeroboam say about the people offering sacrifices in the temple of Yahweh?

**A.** Jeroboam said, “If these people offer sacrifices in the temple of Yahweh, they will kill me and return to Rehoboam king of Judah.” [12:27]

---

**Q?** What did King Jeroboam make?

**A.** King Jeroboam made two calves of gold. [12:28]

---

**Q?** Where did Jeroboam set up the two calves of gold?

**A.** King Jeroboam set up one calf in Bethel and one in Dan. [12:29]

---

**Q?** What people did Jeroboam make into priests?

**A.** Jeroboam made priests of the people who were not among the sons of Levi. [12:31]

---

**Q?** What did Jeroboam do at Bethel?

**A.** Jeroboam ordained a feast at Bethel. [12:32]

---

**Q?** What did Jeroboam do at the altar in Bethel?

**A.** Jeroboam went up to the altar to burn incense. [12:33]

---

## 1 Kings 13

**Q?** Who came out of Judah by the word of Yahweh?

**A.** A man of God came out of Judah by the word of Yahweh. [13:1]

---

**Q?** What did the man of God cry out against the altar at Bethel?

**A.** The man of God cried out against the altar, “On you they will burn men’s bones.” [13:2]

---

**Q?** What sign did the man of God give about the altar?

**A.** The man of God gave a sign saying, “The altar will be split apart and the ashes on it will be poured out.” [13:3]

---

**Q?** What happened to Jeroboam’s hand when he reached out from the altar?

**A.** When Jeroboam reached out from the altar, his hand was dried up so he could not draw it back to himself. [13:4]

---

**Q?** What happened to the altar?

**A.** The altar was split apart and the ashes poured out as the man of God described. [13:5]

---

**Q?** What happened when the man of God prayed to Yahweh about Jeroboam’s hand?

**A.** When the man of God prayed to Yahweh, the king’s hand was restored and became as it was before. [13:6]

---

**Q?** What did the king say to the man of God?

**A.** The king said to the man of God, “Come home with me and I will give you a reward.” [13:7]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the man of God say to the king?

**A.** The man of God said to the king, "I will not go with you." [13:8]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the man of God do after speaking with the king?

**A.** After speaking with the king, the man of God returned home by a different way than he came to Bethel. [13:10]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where did an old prophet live?

**A.** An old prophet lived in Bethel. [13:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Who saw the way that the man of God had gone from Bethel?

**A.** The old prophet's sons saw the way that the man of God went to Bethel. [13:12]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where did the old prophet find the man of God?

**A.** The old prophet found the man of God sitting under an oak tree. [13:13]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the old prophet say to the man of God?

**A.** The old prophet said to the man of God, "Come home with me and eat food." [13:15]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was the man of God's answer to the old prophet?

**A.** The man of God answered, "I may not return with you or go in with you." [13:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was the old prophet's answer to the man of God?

**A.** The old prophet was lying to the man of God and answered, "An angel spoke by the word of Yahweh saying 'Bring him back to your house.'" [13:17]

---

**Q?** Where did the man of God go after the old prophet lied to him?

**A.** The man of God went back and ate food and drank water in his house. [13:19]

---

**Q?** What came to the old prophet as they sat at the table?

**A.** The word of Yahweh came to the old prophet as they sat at the table. [13:20]

---

**Q?** What did the word of Yahweh say to the man of God?

**A.** The word of Yahweh said, "Because you came back and ate food and drank water your body will not be buried in the tomb of your fathers." [13:22]

---

**Q?** What did the old prophet do after they ate?

**A.** After they ate, the old prophet saddled the man of God's donkey for him. [13:23]

---

**Q?** What happened after the man of God had gone?

**A.** After the man of God had gone, a lion met him on the road and killed him. [13:24]

---

**Q?** What did men do when they saw the body of the man of God lying on the road?

**A.** When men saw the man of God's body lying on the road, they came back and told it in the city of the old prophet. [13:25]

---

**Q?** What was the old prophet's answer to the men?

**A.** The old prophet answered, "This is the man of God who was disobedient to the word of Yahweh."  
[13:26]

---

**Q?** What did the old prophet do after hearing the men?

**A.** The old prophet spoke to his sons to saddle his donkey and he went and found the body left in the road. [13:28]

---

**Q?** What did the old prophet do with the body of the man of God?

**A.** The old prophet took up the body of the man of God and buried him in his own grave. [13:30]

---

**Q?** What did the old prophet say to his sons about his own burial?

**A.** The old prophet said to his sons, "When I am dead, bury me in the tomb in which the man of God is buried." [13:31]

---

**Q?** What thing became sin to the family of Jeroboam and caused it to be cut off from the face of the earth?

**A.** Jeroboam did not turn away from evil and consecrated as priests whomever he would; this thing became sin to the family of Jeroboam. [13:34]

---

## 1 Kings 14

**Q?** What happened to Abijah the son of Jeroboam?

**A.** Abijah the son of Jeroboam fell sick. [14:1]

---

**Q?** What did Jeroboam ask his wife to do?

**A.** Jeroboam asked his wife to disguise herself and go to the prophet Ahijah in Shiloh. [14:2]

---

**Q?** Why did Jeroboam ask his wife to go to the prophet Ahijah?

**A.** Jeroboam asked his wife to go to the prophet Ahijah to find out what would happen to his sick son. [14:3]

---

**Q?** What was wrong with Ahijah's eyes?

**A.** Since Ahijah was old he was blind and his eyes could not see. [14:4]

---

**Q?** Who told Ahijah, "The wife of Jeroboam is coming to see you."?

**A.** Yahweh told Ahijah, "The wife of Jeroboam is coming to see you to seek advice concerning her son." [14:5]

---

**Q?** What did Ahijah say to the wife of Jeroboam?

**A.** When Ahijah heard her come in at the door he said to her, "Why do you pretend to be someone that you are not?" [14:6]

---

**Q?** What did the God of Israel say about Jeroboam?

**A.** The God of Israel said to Jeroboam, "You have not been like my servant David who kept my commandments." [14:8]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Jeroboam do to provoke Yahweh to anger?

**A.** Jeroboam cast metal images to provoke Yahweh to anger. [14:9]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What disaster would Yahweh bring on Jeroboam?

**A.** Yahweh said that he would cut off from him every male child in Israel. [14:10]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What would happen to anyone of Jeroboam's family who died in the city?

**A.** Anyone of Jeroboam's family who died in the city would be eaten by dogs. [14:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What would all Israel do for the child of Jeroboam?

**A.** All Israel would mourn for and bury the child of Jeroboam. [14:13]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How far did Yahweh say that he would scatter Israel?

**A.** Yahweh said that he would scatter Israel beyond the Euphrates river. [14:15]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Yahweh say that Jeroboam led Israel to do?

**A.** Yahweh said that Jeroboam led Israel to sin. [14:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What happened when Jeroboam's wife came to the threshold of the house?

**A.** When Jeroboam's wife came to the threshold of the house, the child died. [14:17]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did all Israel do after the child died?

**A.** All Israel mourned for him and buried him. [14:18]

---

**Q?** Where were the other matters concerning Jeroboam written?

**A.** The other matters concerning Jeroboam were written in the Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel. [14:19]

---

**Q?** How many years did Jeroboam reign before he slept with his fathers?

**A.** Jeroboam reigned for twenty-two years and slept with his fathers. [14:20]

---

**Q?** Who was reigning in Judah?

**A.** Rehoboam the son of Solomon was reigning in Judah. [14:21]

---

**Q?** How did Judah provoke Yahweh to jealousy?

**A.** Judah provoked Yahweh to jealousy with the sins they committed. [14:22]

---

**Q?** What did Judah build on every high hill and under every green tree?

**A.** Judah built shrines and Asherah poles on every high hill and under every green tree. [14:23]

---

**Q?** What despicable things did the nations do?

**A.** The nations had male prostitutes in the land. [14:24]

---

**Q?** In what year did Shishak come up against Jerusalem?

**A.** In the fifth year of king Rehoboam, Shishak came up against Jerusalem. [14:25]

---



\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What shields did Shishak take away from Jerusalem?

**A.** Shishak took the shields of gold that Solomon had made. [14:26]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did King Rehoboam do with the shields of bronze that he made?

**A.** King Rehoboam entrusted them into the hands of the commander of the guard. [14:27]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** When would the guards carry the shields of bronze?

**A.** Whenever the king entered the house of Yahweh, the guards would carry the shields. [14:28]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where were the other matters of King Rehoboam written?

**A.** The other matters of King Rehoboam were written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah. [14:29]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Who became king in Rehoboam's place?

**A.** Abijah, Rehoboam's son, became king in his place. [14:31]

\_\_\_\_\_

## 1 Kings 15

Q? When did Abijah begin to reign over Judah?

A. Abijah began to reign over Judah in the fifteenth year of King Jeroboam. [15:1]

---

Q? How long did Abijah rule in Jerusalem?

A. Abijah ruled in Jerusalem for three years. [15:2]

---

Q? Was Abijah's heart devoted to Yahweh his God?

A. Abijah's heart was not devoted to Yahweh his God. [15:3]

---

Q? Why did Yahweh raise up a son for Abijah in Jerusalem?

A. Yahweh raised up a son for Abijah to strengthen Jerusalem. [15:4]

---

Q? In what matter did David turn away from Yahweh?

A. David only turned away from Yahweh in the matter of Uriah the Hittite. [15:5]

---

Q? What happened all the days of Abijah's life?

A. There was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam all the days of Abijah's life. [15:6]

---

Q? When Abijah slept with his fathers who became king in his place?

A. When Abijah slept with his fathers Asa became king in his place. [15:8]

---

Q? When did Asa begin to reign over Judah?

A. Asa began to reign over Judah in the twentieth year of Jeroboam king of Jerusalem. [15:9]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How many years did Asa reign in Jerusalem?

**A.** Asa reigned forty-one years in Jerusalem. [15:10]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Asa do in the eyes of Yahweh?

**A.** Asa did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh as David had done. [15:11]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Asa do in the land?

**A.** Asa removed the male prostitutes and the idols his ancestors had made in the land. [15:12]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Whom did Asa remove from being queen?

**A.** Asa removed his own grandmother Maacah from being queen. [15:13]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was the condition of Asa's heart toward Yahweh?

**A.** Asa's heart was completely devoted to Yahweh all his days. [15:14]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Asa bring into the house of Yahweh?

**A.** Asa brought consecrated things into the house of Yahweh. [15:15]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** With whom was Asa at war?

**A.** Asa was at war with Baasha king of Israel all their days. [15:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Why did Baasha build up Ramah?

**A.** Baasha built up Ramah so that no one would enter into or leave the land of Asa. [15:17]

---

**Q?** What did Asa do with all the silver and gold from the storerooms of the house of Yahweh?

**A.** Asa sent the silver and gold to Benhadad who lived in Damascus. [15:18]

---

**Q?** What did Asa say to Benhadad?

**A.** Asa said to Benhadad, "Let there be a treaty between me and you, as there was between my father and your father." [15:19]

---

**Q?** What did Benhadad do after he listened to Asa?

**A.** After he listened to Asa, Benhadad sent his armies to attack the cities of Israel. [15:20]

---

**Q?** What did Baasha do when he heard about this?

**A.** When Baasha heard about the attacks, he stopped building up Ramah. [15:21]

---

**Q?** What did Asa do with the materials that were used to build up Ramah?

**A.** Asa took the materials that were used to build up Ramah and used them to build up Geba and Mizpah. [15:22]

---

**Q?** Where were all of Asa's matters written?

**A.** All of Asa's matters were written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah. [15:23]

---

**Q?** After Asa slept with his fathers, who became king in his place?

**A.** After Asa slept with his fathers, his son Jehoshaphat became king in his place. [15:24]

---

**Q?** Who began to reign over Israel in the second year of Asa?

**A.** Nadab the son of Jeroboam began to reign over Israel in the second year of Asa. [15:25]

---

**Q?** How did Nadab walk in the sight of Yahweh?

**A.** Nadab did evil in the sight of Yahweh and walked in the ways of his father. [15:26]

---

**Q?** What did Baasha son of Ahijah do at Gibbethon?

**A.** Baasha the son of Ahijah killed Nadab at Gibbethon. [15:27]

---

**Q?** What did Baasha do as soon as he became king?

**A.** As soon as Baasha became king, he killed all of the family of Jeroboam. [15:29]

---

**Q?** How long was there war between Asa and Baasha?

**A.** There was war between Asa and Baasha all their days. [15:31]

---

**Q?** How long did Baasha reign in Tirza?

**A.** Baasha reigned in Tirza for twenty-four years. [15:33]

---

**Q?** How did Baasha live?

**A.** Baasha did evil in the sight of Yahweh and lived in the way of Jeroboam. [15:34]

---

## 1 Kings 16

**Q?** Out of what did Yahweh exalt Baasha?

**A.** Yahweh exalted him out of the dust. [16:2]

---

**Q?** What would eat anyone belonging to Baasha who died in the city?

**A.** The dogs would eat anyone belonging to Baasha who died in the city. [16:4]

---

**Q?** Why did the word of Yahweh come against Baasha and his family?

**A.** The word of Yahweh came against Baasha and his family, both because of all the evil he did in the sight of Yahweh, and also because he had killed all of Jeroboam's family. [16:7]

---

**Q?** What was Elah doing when Zimri killed him?

**A.** Elah was drinking himself drunk in the house of Arza when Zimri killed him. [16:9-10]

---

**Q?** When did Zimri kill all the family of Baasha?

**A.** When Zimri began to reign, as soon as he had sat on his throne, he killed all the family of Baasha. [16:11]

---

**Q?** To whom did Gibbethon belong?

**A.** Gibbethon belonged to the Philistines. [16:15]

---

**Q?** Where did Zimri kill himself?

**A.** Zimri killed himself in the fortress attached to the king's palace. [16:18]

---

**Q?** By what two leaders were the people of Israel divided into two parts?

**A.** The people of Israel divided into two parts by Tibni the son of Ginath and by Omri. [16:21]

---

**Q?** Why did Omri call the name of the city Samaria?

**A.** Omri called the name of the city Samaria, after the name of Shemer, the past owner of the hill. [16:24]

---

**Q?** Who became king in Omri's place?

**A.** Ahab his son became king in his place. [16:28]

---

**Q?** Who had built the house of Baal in Samaria?

**A.** Ahab had built the house of Baal in Samaria. [16:32]

---

**Q?** What caused the loss of Hiel's son Abiram?

**A.** Hiel rebuilt Jericho, causing the loss of Abiram. [16:34]

---

## 1 Kings 17

**Q?** What ominous message did Elijah give to Ahab?

**A.** Elijah told Ahab that as Yahweh lives, there would not be dew or rain unless he said so. [17:1]

---

**Q?** Who did Yahweh command to feed Elijah while Elijah was at the brook Cherith?

**A.** Yahweh commanded the ravens to feed Elijah at the brook Cherith. [17:4]

---

**Q?** What happened when there was no rain in the land?

**A.** The brook dried up when there was no rain in the land. [17:7]

---

**Q?** Where did Elijah go after the brook dried up?

**A.** Yahweh sent Elijah to a widow in Zarephath. [17:8-10]

---

**Q?** Why was the widow gathering two sticks ?

**A.** The widow was gathering two sticks so she could go in and cook for herself and her son, that they could eat, and die. [17:12]

---

**Q?** For how long would the widow's jar of meal and jug of oil be full?

**A.** They would be full until the day that Yahweh sent rain on the earth. [17:14]

---

**Q?** How sick was the woman's son?

**A.** The son's sickness was so severe that there was no more breath left in him. [17:17]

---



**Q?** What did Elijah do to save the child?

**A.** Elijah stretched himself on the child three times; he cried out to Yahweh and said, “Yahweh my God, I beg you, please let this child’s life return to him.” [17:21]

---

**Q?** How did the woman know that Elijah was a man of God?

**A.** The woman knew that Elijah was a man of God when her son revived, and Elijah took the child and brought him out of his room down into the house. [17:22-23]

---

## 1 Kings 18

**Q?** What message did Yahweh ask Elijah to give to Ahab during the severe famine?

**A.** Yahweh asked Elijah to tell Ahab he would send rain on the land. [18:1-2]

---

**Q?** How did Obadiah honor Yahweh when Jezebel was killing the prophets of Yahweh?

**A.** Obadiah honored Yahweh by hiding one hundred prophets by fifties in a cave and feeding them with bread and water. [18:3-4]

---

**Q?** Why did Ahab and Obadiah go through the land to all the water springs and brooks?

**A.** Ahab and Obadiah were searching for water and grass so they would not lose the horses and mules. [18:5-6]

---

**Q?** What dangerous message did Elijah ask Obadiah to tell Ahab?

**A.** Elijah asked Obadiah to tell Ahab that “Elijah is here.” [18:7-8]

---

**Q?** Why was Obadiah reluctant to tell Ahab that “Elijah is here.”?

**A.** Obadiah was reluctant to tell Ahab, “Elijah is here.” because all the nearby nations had taken an oath that Elijah was not there. [18:9-11]

---

**Q?** What did Obadiah think would happen as soon as he left Elijah?

**A.** Obadiah thought the Spirit of Yahweh would carry Elijah some place Obadiah did not know. [18:12]

---

**Q?** What did Elijah tell Obadiah to calm his fears?

**A.** Elijah told Obadiah that as Yahweh lives, he would surely show himself to Ahab that day. [18:14-15]

---

Q? What did Ahab call Elijah when he met him?

A. Ahab called Elijah a “troublemaker” when he met him. [18:16-17]

---

Q? How did Elijah respond to Ahab calling him a “troublemaker”?

A. Elijah told Ahab that he and his father’s family were the troublemakers because they abandoned the commandments of Yahweh to follow the Baal idols. [18:18]

---

Q? Who did Elijah say to gather on Mount Carmel?

A. Elijah said to gather all the people of Israel, along with the 450 prophets of Baal and the four hundred prophets of Asherah who eat at Jezebel’s table. [18:19]

---

Q? Who did Elijah tell the people they should follow?

A. Elijah told the people to follow Yahweh if he was God or Baal if he was God. [18:21]

---

Q? What proposal did Elijah bring before the people?

A. Elijah proposed that the prophets of Baal and himself each call upon their god to consume the sacrifice of a bull by fire to prove which one was god. [18:22-24]

---

Q? How long did the prophets of Baal call on Baal?

A. The prophets of Baal called on Baal from morning until noon. [18:26]

---

Q? After Elijah mocked the prophets of Baal at noon what did the prophets of Baal do?

A. The prophets of Baal cried more loudly and cut themselves with swords and spears. [18:28]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How long did the prophets of Baal continue their raving?

**A.** The prophets of Baal were raving until the time of the evening sacrifice. [18:29]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Elijah do to the ruined altar of Yahweh?

**A.** Elijah repaired the altar of Yahweh with twelve stones, [18:30-32]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Elijah make around the altar of Yahweh?

**A.** Elijah dug a trench around the altar of Yahweh. [18:32]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Elijah have the people do to the wood and the bull for the burnt offering?

**A.** Three times Elijah had the people fill four jars with water and pour them on the burnt offering and the wood. [18:33-34]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How did the people of Israel respond when the fire of Yahweh fell and consumed the sacrifice and everything around it?

**A.** The people lay face down on the ground and said, "Yahweh, he is God!, Yahweh, he is God!" [18:38-39]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Elijah do with the prophets of Baal?

**A.** Elijah brought the prophets of Baal down to the brook of Kishon and killed them. [18:40]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the servant of Elijah see after he looked toward the sea seven times?

**A.** After the seventh time, the servant saw a cloud as small as a man's hand. [18:43-44]

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Elijah tell his servant to say to Ahab?

**A.** Elijah told his servant to tell Ahab to make ready his chariot and go down before the rain stopped him. [18:44]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Elijah do as Ahab rode and went to Jezreel?

**A.** Elijah tucked his robe in his belt and ran before Ahab to the entrance of Jezreel. [18:46]

\_\_\_\_\_

## 1 Kings 19

**Q?** What threat did Jezebel make to Elijah?

**A.** Jezebel told Elijah that she would make him to be one of the dead prophets by the next day. [19:1-2]

---

**Q?** How did Elijah respond to the threat from Jezebel?

**A.** Elijah fled for his life to Beersheba. [19:3]

---

**Q?** Why did Elijah request that he might die?

**A.** Elijah requested that he might die because he felt he was no better than his dead ancestors. [19:4]

---

**Q?** What happened as Elijah was sleeping under a broom tree?

**A.** An angel touched Elijah and said to him, "Get up and eat." [19:5]

---

**Q?** What did Elijah see and do after the angel touched him?

**A.** Elijah saw bread that had been baked on coals and a jug of water. Elijah ate and drank and lay down again. [19:6]

---

**Q?** How long did it take Elijah to get to Horeb, the mountain of God?

**A.** Elijah traveled forty days and forty nights to Horeb. [19:8]

---

**Q?** How did Elijah respond when Yahweh asked him what he was doing in a cave?

**A.** Elijah told Yahweh that he had been very zealous for him, but the people of Israel had forsaken his covenant, destroyed his altars, and killed his prophets, and he was the only one left. [19:9-10]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did Yahweh tell Elijah to do?

**A.** Yahweh told Elijah to return to the wilderness to anoint Hazael to be king over Aram, Jehu to be king over Israel, and Elisha to be a prophet in his place. [19:15-16]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How did Yahweh respond to Elijah's claim that he was the only prophet left in the land?

**A.** Yahweh told Elijah there were seven thousand people in Israel who were faithful to him. [19:18]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What excuse did Elisha give to Elijah after he draped his cloak on him?

**A.** Elisha asked Elijah to let him kiss his mother and father before he followed him. [19:19-20]

\_\_\_\_\_

## 1 Kings 20

**Q?** What was the message which Ahab received from Ben Hadad when the city of Samaria was under siege?

**A.** Ben Hadad told Ahab that his silver and gold as well as his wives and children were now Ben Hadad's possessions. [20:1-2]

---

**Q?** How did Ben Hadad respond to Ahab's willingness to give him his silver, gold, wives, and children?

**A.** Ben Hadad informed Ahab that he was sending his servants the next day, and they would seize with their hands whatever pleased their eyes. [20:4-6]

---

**Q?** What was the advice which the king of Israel received from all the elders of the land and the people?

**A.** The elders of the land and the people told the king not to listen or consent to the demands of Ben Hadad because he was only seeking trouble. [20:7-8]

---

**Q?** What was the message Ahab sent back to Ben Hadad?

**A.** Ahab told Ben Hadad that he was agreeable to his first demand, but he could not accept his second demand. [20:9]

---

**Q?** What was the response of Ben Hadad to the message of Ahab?

**A.** Ben Hadad took an oath that he would reduce Samaria to ashes. [20:10]

---

**Q?** What did Ben Hadad say when the king of Israel told him that he should not boast as if the battle was over?

**A.** Ben Hadad told his soldiers to line up in position to prepare for battle. [20:11-12]

---



**Q?** Who did Yahweh say would win the battle for Israel against the great army of the Arameans?  
**A.** Yahweh told Ahab that the young officers who served the governors of the districts would win the battle for Israel. [20:13-15]

---

**Q?** When the young officers who served the governors of the districts went forward first what were Ben Hadad and the thirty-two lesser kings who were supporting him doing?  
**A.** Ben Hadad and his thirty-two lesser kings were drinking themselves drunk. [20:16-17]

---

**Q?** What happened to Ben Hadad and the Arameans?  
**A.** Ben Hadad escaped on a horse with some horsemen and many of the Arameans were killed in a great slaughter. [20:20-21]

---

**Q?** What message did the prophet bring to the king of Israel?  
**A.** The prophet told the king of Israel that the king of Aram would return against them again, so Israel should strengthen itself and plan what they would do. [20:22]

---

**Q?** What did the servants of the king of Aram give as the reason for Israel being stronger in battle than the Arameans?  
**A.** The servants of the king of Aram told him Israel was stronger than the Arameans, since their god is a god of the hills. [20:23]

---

**Q?** What did Ben Hadad do after the beginning of the new year?  
**A.** Ben Hadad mustered the Arameans and went up to Aphek to fight against Israel. [20:26]

---

**Q?** What did a man of God say to the king of Israel concerning the Arameans?  
**A.** The man of God said that because the Arameans said God was a god of the hills and not a god of the valleys, God was going to place the Aramean army into the hands of the king of Israel. [20:28]

---

---

**Q?** What was the outcome of the battle between the armies?

**A.** Israel killed one hundred thousand Aramean footmen in one day. The rest fled to Aphek, into the city where a wall fell on twenty-seven thousand men who were left and Ben Hadad fled into the city into an inner room. [20:29-30]

---

**Q?** What did Ben Hadad's servants do for Ben Hadad?

**A.** Ben Hadad's servants put sackcloth on their waists and ropes around their heads and went to the king of Israel and begged the king of Israel to let Ben Hadad live. [20:31-32]

---

**Q?** What proposal did Ben Hadad make to Ahab when he was summoned to meet with him in his chariot?

**A.** Ben Hadad told Ahab that he would restore to him the cities which had been taken from Israel if Ahab would let him go. [20:33-34]

---

**Q?** Why was one of the prophets killed by a lion?

**A.** One of the prophets was killed by a lion because he did not obey the voice of Yahweh by hitting his fellow prophet. [20:35-36]

---

**Q?** How did the prophet disguise himself from the king after he had been hit and wounded?

**A.** The prophet disguised himself from the king with a bandage over his eyes. [20:37-38]

---

**Q?** Why did the prophet tell a story to the king of Israel?

**A.** The prophet told the story to the king of Israel to deceive him, so the king would make a ruling which would result in the forfeit of the king's own life. [20:39-40]

---

**Q?** What bold statement did the prophet make to the king of Israel?

**A.** The prophet told the king that he would lose his own life since he had allowed the man whom Yahweh had sentenced to death to live. [20:41-43]

---

## 1 Kings 21

**Q?** What did Ahab the king of Samaria want from Naboth the Jezreelite?

**A.** Ahab, king of Samaria, wanted the vineyard from Naboth, which was near his palace. [21:1,2]

---

**Q?** What did Ahab offer Naboth for his vineyard?

**A.** Ahab offered to give Naboth a better vineyard or to pay him money. [21:2]

---

**Q?** Why did Naboth refuse to give his vineyard to Ahab?

**A.** Naboth refused to give his vineyard to Ahab because it was the inheritance of his ancestors. [21:3]

---

**Q?** What did Ahab do when Naboth refused to give up his vineyard?

**A.** Ahab became resentful and angry, went to bed, and refused to eat any food. [21:4]

---

**Q?** Who told Ahab to get up from bed, eat, and be happy?

**A.** Ahab's wife, Jezebel, told him to get out of bed, eat, and be happy. [21:7]

---

**Q?** What did Jezebel do to make sure Ahab would get Naboth's vineyard?

**A.** Jezebel had two dishonest men falsely accuse Naboth of blasphemy against God and the king at a public fast. [21:10]

---

**Q?** What would be the penalty for Naboth's blasphemy?

**A.** Naboth would be taken out and stoned to death. [21:10]

---

**Q?** What did Ahab do when Jezebel told him that Naboth was dead?

**A.** When Ahab heard that Naboth was dead, he went to the vineyard to take possession of it. [21:18]

---

**Q?** Who did Yahweh send to the vineyard to meet Ahab?

**A.** Yahweh sent Elijah the Tishbite to the vineyard. [21:17]

---

**Q?** What did Elijah tell Ahab would happen to him because of his sin?

**A.** Elijah told Ahab that dogs would lick his blood where they had licked the blood of Naboth. [21:19]

---

**Q?** What message did Elijah deliver to Ahab from Yahweh?

**A.** Elijah told Ahab that Yahweh said that he would be cut off from every male child and slave and free man in Israel because he had led Israel to sin. [21:22]

---

**Q?** What would happen to Jezebel?

**A.** The dogs would eat Jezebel by the wall of Jezreel. [21:23]

---

**Q?** What did Ahab do when he heard these words?

**A.** Ahab tore his clothes, put on sackcloth on his body, and fasted. [21:27]

---

**Q?** What did Yahweh do when Ahab humbled himself before him?

**A.** Yahweh said that he would not bring this disaster in Ahab's day, but would do it in his son's day. [21:29]

---

## 1 Kings 22

**Q?** How long was there no war between Aram and Israel?

**A.** For three years there had been no war between Aram and Israel. [22:1]

---

**Q?** Who was the king of Judah?

**A.** The king of Judah was Jehoshaphat. [22:2]

---

**Q?** What did the king of Israel ask Jehoshaphat to do with him?

**A.** The king of Israel asked Jehoshaphat to go to Ramoth Gilead and make war on the king of Aram. [22:4]

---

**Q?** Who did the king of Israel call together to seek the will of Yahweh in this matter?

**A.** The king of Israel gathered the prophets, 400 men, and asked them about making war on Aram. [22:6]

---

**Q?** From what other prophet did the king of Israel seek advice?

**A.** The king of Israel called upon Micaiah the son of Imiah. [22:9]

---

**Q?** As the kings Ahab and Jehoshaphat sat on their thrones before the prophets, what was the prophesy they heard?

**A.** As the kings Ahab and Jehoshaphat sat on their thrones, all the prophets said to them that they should attack Ramoth Gilead and win. [22:12]

---

**Q?** Was Micaiah in agreement with all the other prophets?

**A.** Yes, Micaiah was in agreement with all the other prophets. [22:15]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What bad news did Micaiah tell the king of Israel?

**A.** Micaiah told the king of Israel that they would have no shepherd and would be scattered. [22:17]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How did Micaiah tell the king of Israel that he would be enticed to go to Ramoth Gilead?

**A.** Micaiah told the king of Israel that he would be enticed to go to Ramoth Gilead by the lies his prophets would tell him. [22:21-23]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the king of Israel order to be done to Micaiah?

**A.** The king of Israel ordered that Micaiah be seized and put in prison and be fed only a little bread and water until the king of Israel returned safely. [22:26-27]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What did the king of Israel do to avoid capture in the battle at Ramoth Gilead?

**A.** The king of Israel disguised himself to avoid capture at Ramoth Gilead. [22:30]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How did Ahab receive a serious wound at the battle of Ramoth Gilead?

**A.** A soldier of Aram shot his bow at random and it struck Ahab between the joints of his armor. [22:34]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Where was Ahab buried?

**A.** Ahab was buried in Samaria. [22:37]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Who became king at the death of Ahab?

**A.** His son Ahaziah became king of Israel. [22:40]

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How long did Jehoshaphat reign in Jerusalem?

**A.** Jehoshaphat reigned in Jerusalem for twenty-five years. [22:42]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was said about the reign of Jehoshaphat?

**A.** It was said that Jehoshaphat did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. [22:43]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was said about the reign of Ahab?

**A.** It was said that Ahab did what was evil in the eyes of Yahweh. [22:52]

\_\_\_\_\_

## translationWords

### twelve tribes of Israel

#### Definition:

The term, “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham’s grandson. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes are slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [tribe](#))

#### Bible References:

Waiting



## **Abiathar**

### **Definition:**

Abiathar was a high priest for the nation of Israel during the time of King David.

- When King Saul killed the priests, Abiathar escaped and went to David in the wilderness.
- Abiathar and another high priest named Zadok served David faithfully throughout his reign.
- After David's death, Abiathar helped Adonijah try to become king instead of Solomon.
- Because of this, King Solomon removed Abiathar from the priesthood.

(See also: [Zadok](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [David](#), [Solomon](#), [Adonijah](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Abijah

### Facts:

Abijah was the name of a king of Judah who reigned from 915-913 BC. He was the son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament.

- Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Another Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was the name of one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also the name of a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Abner

### Definition:

Abner was the cousin of King Saul in the Old Testament.

- Abner was the chief commander of Saul's army, and introduced young David to Saul after David killed Goliath the giant.
- After King Saul's death, Abner appointed Saul's son Ishbosheth as king in Israel, while David was appointed king in Judah.
- Later, Abner was treacherously killed by David's chief commander, Joab.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father”
- “Abraham” means, “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- While living in the land of Canaan, when they were very old, Abraham and his wife Sarah had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [chaldea](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#), [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **[05-04]** Then God changed **Abram’s** name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham’s** faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[06-01]** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[06-04]** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **[21-02]** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

## Absalom

### Facts:

Absalom was the third son of King David. He was known for his handsome appearance and fiery temperament.

- When Absalom's sister Tamar was raped by their half-brother, Amnon, Absalom made a plan to have Amnon killed.
- After the murder of Amnon, Absalom fled to the region of Geshur (where his mother Maacah was from) and stayed there three years. Then King David sent for him to come back to Jerusalem, but did not allow Absalom to come into his presence for two years.
- Absalom turned some of the people against King David and led a revolt against him.
- David's army fought against Absalom and killed him. David was very grieved when this happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Geshur](#), [Amnon](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Adonijah

### Definition:

Adonijah was the fourth son of King David.

- Adonijah tried to take over as king of Israel after the deaths of his brothers Absalom and Amnon.
- However God had promised the throne to David's son Solomon, so Adonijah's plot was overthrown and Solomon was given the throne.
- When Adonijah tried a second time to make himself king, Solomon put him to death.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [David](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **adversary, enemy**

### **Definition:**

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- An adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- A nation can be called an “adversary” when it fights against another nation.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## afflict, affliction

### Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like, “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as, “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.” physical
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as, “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See: [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Ahab

### Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Jezebel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-02]** Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- **[19-03]** **Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- **[19-05]** After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

## Ahaziah

### Facts:

Ahaziah was the name of two kings: one ruled over the kingdom of Israel, the other ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Judah's King Ahaziah was the son of King Jehoram. He reigned for one year (841 BC) and then was killed by Jehu. Ahaziah's young son Joash eventually took his place as king.
- Israel's King Ahaziah was the son of King Ahab. He reigned for two years (850-49 BC). He died from injuries suffered in a fall at his palace and his brother Joram became king.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jehu](#), [Ahab](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Joash](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **Ahijah**

### **Facts:**

Ahijah is the name of several different men in the Old Testament. The following are some of these men:

- Ahijah was the name of a priest in the time of Saul.
- A man named Ahijah was a secretary during the reign of King Solomon.
- Ahijah was the name of a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.
- The father of King Baasha of Israel was also named Ahijah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baasha](#), [Shiloh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## altar

### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living nearby the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **[13-09]** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **[16-06]** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

## Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess

### Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as, “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Balaam](#), [curse](#), [cursed](#), [Jordan River](#), [Lot](#) other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Amorite

### Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one" which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall in height.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites" which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices that were included in that.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-07] Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- [15-08] In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- [15-09] God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- [15-10] God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

## angel, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God is by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include, “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include, “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh who looked like an angel.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [02-12] God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- [22-03] The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- [23-06] Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God...
- [25-08] Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- [38-12] Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- [38-15] “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”



## angry, anger

### Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## anoint, anointed

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle, were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **appoint, appointed**

### **Definition:**

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in, “appointed to eternal life.” This means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include, “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as, “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as, “be chosen.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Arabia, Arabian

### Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term “Arabian” is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham’s son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Esau](#), [Galatia](#), [Ishmael](#), [Shem](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **Aram, Aramean, Aramaic**

### **Definition:**

“Aram” is the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as “Arameans” and spoke “Aramaic.” Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem’s sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name, “Syria.”
- The term “Paddan Aram” means “plain of Aram” and was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham’s relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in “Paddan Aram.”
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms “Aram” and “Paddan Aram” refer to the same region.
- The term “Aram Naharaim” may mean “Aram of Two Rivers.” This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of “Paddan Aram.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Mesopotamia](#), [Aram Naharaim](#), [Paddan Aram](#), [Rebekah](#), [Shem](#), [Syria](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## ark

### Definition:

The term, “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small in size, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include, “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. It is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [basket](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh**

### **Definition:**

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: [ark](#), [covenant](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [holy place](#), [most holy place](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**armor****Definition:**

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means, “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: [faith](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [salvation](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## Asa

### Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913-873 BC.

- King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshiping Yahweh again.
- Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
- Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease which eventually killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## ash, ashes, dust

### Facts:

The term “ash” or “ashes” refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned. It is sometimes used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or useless.

- In the Bible sometimes the word “dust” is used when speaking about ashes. It can also refer to the fine, loose dirt that can form on dry ground.
- An “ash heap” is a pile of ashes.
- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving.
- When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or sprinkle the ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- When someone is striving for something worthless, it is said to be like “feeding on ashes.”
- When translating “ashes,” use the word in the project language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.
- Note that an “ash tree” is a completely different term.

(See also: [fire](#), [sackcloth](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Asher

### Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel which was also called “Asher.”

- Asher’s mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
- His name means “happy” or, “blessed.”
- Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [israel](#), [twelvetribeisrael](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth

### Definition:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. “Ashtoreth” may be another name for “Asherah,” or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

- The term “Asherah poles” refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
- Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah’s husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
- God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
- Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
- But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Baal](#), [Gideon](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## assembly, assemble

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” where the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers is sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

(See also: [council](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **ax**

### **Definition:**

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

- An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
- If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate “ax.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “tree-cutting tool” or “wooden tool with blade” or “long-handled wood-chopping tool.”
- In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax falls into the river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that could come loose from the wooden handle.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Azariah

### Facts:

Azariah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Azariah is best known by his Babylonian name, Abednego. He was one of many Israelites from Judah who were captured by Nebuchadnezzar's army and taken to live in Babylon. Azariah and his fellow Israelites Hananiah and Mishael refused to worship the Babylonian king, so he had them thrown into a blazing furnace as punishment. But God protected them and they were not harmed at all.
- Uzziah king of Judah was also known as "Azariah."
- Another Azariah was an Old Testament high priest.
- In the time of the prophet Jeremiah, a man named Azariah wrongly urged the Israelites to disobey God by leaving their homeland.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [Hananiah](#), [Mishael](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Uzziah](#), [Azariah](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Baal

### Facts:

“Baal” means “lord” or “master” and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had “Baal” as part of their names, such as “Baal of Peor.” Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as “the Baals.”
- Some people had names that included the word “Baal” in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God’s prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [asherah](#), [Elijah](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [prostitute](#), [harlot](#), [whore](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [19-02] Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!”
- [19-07] Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, “Hear us, O **Baal**!”
- [19-12] So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.



## **Baasha**

### **Facts:**

Baasha was one of Israel's evil kings, who influenced the Israelites to worship idols.

- Baasha was the third king of Israel and reigned for twenty-four years, during the time when Asa was king of Judah.
- He was a military commander who became king by killing the previous king, Nadab.
- During Baasha's reign there were many wars between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah, especially with King Asa of Judah.
- Baasha's many sins caused God to eventually remove him from office by his death.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asa](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **Bashan**

### **Facts:**

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel’s wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [oak](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [Syria](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Bathsheba

### Facts:

Bathsheba was the wife of Uriah, a soldier in King David's army. After Uriah's death, she became the wife of David, and the mother of Solomon.

- David committed adultery with Bathsheba while she was married to Uriah.
- When Bathsheba became pregnant with David's child, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle.
- David then married Bathsheba and she gave birth to their child.
- God punished David for his sin by causing the child to die several days after he was born.
- Later, Bathsheba gave birth to another son, Solomon, who grew up to become king after David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Solomon](#). [Uriah](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-10]** One day, when all of David's soldiers were away from home fighting battles, he got up from an afternoon nap and saw a beautiful woman bathing. Her name was **Bathsheba**.
- **[17-11]** A short time later **Bathsheba** sent a message to David saying that she was pregnant.
- **[17-12]** **Bathsheba's** husband, a man named Uriah, was one of David's best soldiers.
- **[17-13]** After Uriah was killed, David married **Bathsheba**.
- **[17-14]** Later, David and **Bathsheba** had another son, and they named him Solomon.

## Beersheba

### Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Hagar](#), [Ishmael](#), [Jerusalem](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **beg, beggar**

### **Definition:**

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: [plead](#), [pleading](#), [plea](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[10-04]** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **[29-08]** ”The king called the servant and said, ”You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.”
- **[32-07]** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **[32-10]** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **[35-11]** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **[44-01]** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

## believe, believe in, belief

### Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as, “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believer](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-04] Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04-08] Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- [11-06] But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”

## **Benaiah**

### **Definition:**

Benaiah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Benaiah son of Jehoiada was one of David's mighty men. He was a skilled warrior and was put in charge of David's bodyguards.
- When Solomon was being made king, Benaiah helped him overthrow his enemies. He eventually became commander of the Israelite army.
- Other men in the Old Testament named Benaiah include three Levites: a priest, a musician, and a descendant of Asaph.

(See also: [Asaph](#), [Jehoiada](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [Solomon](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Benjamin

### Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Rachel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Bethel

### Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called “Luz.”

- After receiving God’s promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as “Bethel” which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name “Bethel” until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as “Luz (later called Bethel)” in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [altar Jacob](#), [Israel Jerusalem](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Beth Shemesh

### Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

- The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
- Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
- When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Joshua](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [Philistines](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **biblical time: day**

### **Definition:**

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judgment day](#), [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **biblical time: year**

### **Definition:**

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [biblical time: month](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## ble**ss**, ble**ssed**, ble**ssing**

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

*from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.*

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-07]** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **[01-15]** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **[01-16]** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[04-04]** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **[04-07]** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **[07-03]** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

## boast, boastful

### Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle, Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in ones’ work, family, or country.

### Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **bow, bow down**

### **Definition:**

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [humility](#), [worship](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**bow and arrow****Definition:**

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means, “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term, “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#), [yeast](#), [leaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## breathe, breath

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as, “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include, “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as, “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as, “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as, “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: [Adam](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**bronze****Definition:**

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **burden**

### **Definition:**

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## **burnt offering, offering by fire**

### **Definition:**

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## bury, buried, burial

### Definition:

The term “bury” usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term “burial” is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means, “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## call, calling, called, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray](#), [prayer](#) )

**Bible References:**

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

## camel

### Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food, but not the Israelites because God had said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [unclean](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Canaan, Canaanite

### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ham](#), [Promised Land](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-05]** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **[04-09]** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **[05-03]** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **[07-08]** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

## **captive, captivity**

### **Definition:**

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression “to take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [exile](#), [the Exile](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [seize](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **Carmel, Mount Carmel**

### **Facts:**

“Mount Carmel” refers to a mountain range that was located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea just north of the Plain of Sharon. Its highest peak is 546 meters high.

- There was also a town called “Carmel” located in Judah, south of the Salt Sea.
- The wealthy landowner Nabal and his wife Abigail lived near the town of Carmel where David and his men helped guard Nabal’s sheep shearers.
- On Mount Carmel, Elijah challenged the prophets of Baal to a contest in order to prove that Yahweh is the only true God.
- To make it clear that this wasn’t just a single mountain, “Mount Carmel” could be translated as, “mountain on the Carmel mountain range” or “Carmel mountain range.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **cast out, drive out, throw out**

### **Definition:**

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”

(See also: [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [demon-possessed](#), [lots](#), [casting lots](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## cedar

### Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: [fir](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## chariot

### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-10]** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.
- Rome, Romaning in his **chariot**.

## cherubim, cherub

### Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [angel](#), other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

**chief****Definition:**

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [tax collector](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## children, child

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), spirit, spiritual, believer, beloved other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Cilicia

### Facts:

Cilicia was a small Roman province located in the southeastern part of what is now the modern-day country of Turkey. It borders the Aegean Sea.

- The apostle Paul was a citizen from the city of Tarsus located in Cilicia.
- Paul spent several years in Cilicia after his encounter with Jesus on the road to Damascus.
- Some of the Jews from Cilicia were among those who confronted Stephen and influenced the people to stone him to death.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Paul](#), [Stephen](#), [Tarsus](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting



## city of David

### Facts:

The term “city of David” is another name for both Jerusalem and Bethlehem.

- Jerusalem is where David lived while he ruled Israel.
- Bethlehem is where David was born.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jerusalem](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **command, to command, commandment**

### **Definition:**

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **commander, command**

### **Definition:**

the term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- To “command” an army means to lead and be in charge of the army.
- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term “to command” an army could be translated as “to lead” or “to be in charge of.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [centurion](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**compassion, compassionate****Definition:**

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**concubine****Definition:**

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.often
- The New Testament teaches that the practice of having a concubine is against God's will.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**condemn, condemnation****Definition:**

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **confess, confession**

### **Definition:**

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **confirm, confirmation**

### **Definition:**

The terms “confirm” and “confirmation” refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

- In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## consecrate

### Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or “to make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## consume

### Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

### Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See: [devour](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **counsel, counselor, advice, advisor**

### **Definition:**

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, “to counsel” could be translated as “to advise” or “to make suggestions” or “to exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: [exhort](#), [exhortation](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **courtyard, court**

### **Definition:**

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## covenant

### Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example when God established his covenant with mankind, promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: , [New Covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-09]** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **[05-04]** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **[06-04]** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.

- [07-10] The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- [13-02] God said to Moses and the people of Israel, ”If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- [13-04] Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- [15-13] Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

## **covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love**

### **Definition:**

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable to do and say what has been promised and what will benefit someone else.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [grace](#), [gracious](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people of God](#), [my people](#), [promise](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **cow, calf, bull, cattle**

### **Definition:**

The term , “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow”, the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [heifer](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [yoke](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## crime, criminal

### Definition:

The term “crime” usually refers to a sin that involves breaking the law of a country or state. The term “criminal” refers to someone who has committed a crime.

- Types of crimes include such things as killing a person or stealing someone’s property.
- A criminal is usually captured and kept in some form of captivity such as a prison.
- In Bible times, some criminals became fugitives, wandering from place to place to escape people who wanted to harm them out of revenge for their crime.

(See also: [fugitive](#), [thief](#), [thieves](#), [robber](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **cry, cry out**

### **Definition:**

The terms “cry” or cry out” often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain or in distress or in anger.

- The phrase “cry out” also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [plead](#), [pleading](#), [plea](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **cupbearer**

### **Definition:**

In Old Testament times, a “cupbearer” was a king’s servant who was given the task of bringing the king his cup of wine, usually tasting the wine first to make sure it had not been poisoned.

- The literal meaning of this term is “cup bringer” or “someone who brings the cup.”
- A cupbearer was known for being very trustworthy and loyal to his king.
- Because of his trusted position, a cupbearer would often have influence in the decisions the ruler made.
- Nehemiah was the cupbearer for King Artaxerxes of Persia during the time when some of the Israelites were in captivity in Babylon.

(See also: [Artaxerxes](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [Persia](#), [Persians](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## curse, cursed

### Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-09]** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- **[02-11]** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **[04-04]** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **[39-07]** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **[50-16]** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

**cut off****Definition:**

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **cypress**

### **Definition:**

The term “cypress” refers to a kind of fir tree that was plentiful in the regions where people lived in Bible times, especially countries bordering the Mediterranean Sea.

- Cyprus and Lebanon are two places that are specifically mentioned in the Bible as having many cypress trees.
- The wood that Noah used to build the ark may have been cypress.
- Because cypress wood is sturdy and long-lasting, it was used by ancient peoples for building boats and other structures.

(See also: [ark](#), [Cyprus](#), [fir](#), [Lebanon](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Damascus

### Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future. more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [believer](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Dan

### Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel. The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

- During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
- Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
- The term, “Danites” refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Jerusalem](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## darkness

### Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well-known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[17-03]** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **[17-04]** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **[17-05]** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **[17-06]** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[17-09]** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

## **death, die, dead**

### **Definition:**

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

### **1. Physical death**

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### **2. Spiritual death**

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

## **declare, declaration**

### **Definition:**

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by, “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as, “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase, “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as, “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## decree

### Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as, "to order" or "to command" or "to formally require" or "to publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [declare](#), [declaration](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **dedicate, dedication**

### **Definition:**

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem’s repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## descendant, descended from

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in, “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as, “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] ”The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- [04-09] ”I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- [05-10] ”Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- [17-07] ”Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- [18-13] The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- [48-13] God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.



## **desert, wilderness**

### **Definition:**

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **discern, discernment**

### **Definition:**

The term “discern” means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

- The term “discernment” refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
- It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “discern” could also be translated as “understand” or “know the difference between” or “distinguish good and evil” or “judge rightly about” or “perceive right from wrong.”
- “Discernment” could be translated as, “understanding” or “ability to distinguish good and evil.”

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## disobey, disobedient, disobedience

### Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-11]** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **[13-07]** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[35-12]** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

## **dominion**

### **Definition:**

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other Ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as, “rule over” or “manage.”

(See: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **donkey, mule**

### **Definition:**

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## doorpost

### Definition:

The “doorpost” is a vertical beam on either side of a door, which supports the top of the door frame.

- Just before God helped the Israelites escape from Egypt, he instructed them to kill a lamb and put its blood on their doorposts.
- In the Old Testament, a slave who desired to serve his master the rest of his life would place his ear on the doorpost of his master’s house to have a nail hammered through his ear into the doorpost.
- This could also be translated as “wooden post on either side of a door” or “sides of a wooden doorframe” or “wood beams on the sides of a doorway.”

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Passover](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **dream**

### **Definition:**

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[08-02]** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **[08-07]** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **[16-11]** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **[23-01]** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

## **drunk, drunkard**

### **Facts:**

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include, “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## **dung, manure**

### **Definition:**

The term “dung” refers to human or animal solid waste, and is also called feces or excrement. When used as fertilizer for enriching the soil, it is called “manure.”

- These terms can also be used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or not important.
- Dried animal dung is often used for fuel.
- The expression “be like dung on the face of the earth” could be translated as, “be scattered like worthless dung over the land.”
- The “Dung Gate” in the South Wall of Jerusalem was probably the gate where garbage and trash were taken out of the city.

(See also: [gate](#), [gate bar](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## earth, earthly

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Edom, Edomite, Idumea

### Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [birthright](#), [Esau](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Egypt, Egyptian

### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [patriarchs](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **[08-08]** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **[08-11]** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **[08-14]** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **[09-01]** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

## elder

### Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

### Bible References:

Waiting

## chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect

### Definition:

The term, “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” These could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase, “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as, “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as, “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Elijah

### Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel or Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Baal](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-02] Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **[19-02] Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **[19-03]** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **[19-04]** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **[19-05]** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **[19-07]** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **[19-12]** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **[36-03]** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

## Elisha

### Facts:

Elisha was a prophet in Israel during the reigns of several kings of Israel: Ahab, Ahaziah, Jehoram, Jehu, Jehoahaz, and Jehoash.

- God told the prophet Elijah to anoint Elisha as prophet.
- When Elijah was taken to heaven in a chariot fire, Elisha became God's prophet to the kings of Israel.
- Elisha did many miracles, including healing a man from Syria who had leprosy and raising from the dead the son of a woman from Shunem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Elijah](#), [Naaman](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Ephraim

### Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Euphrates River

### Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## evil, wicked, wickedness

### Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

**exalt, exaltation****Definition:**

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include, “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts, it could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glorify](#), [boast](#), [boastful](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## exile, the Exile

### Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian Exile” (or “the Exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to exile” could also be translated as, “to send away” or “to force out” or “to banish.”
- The term “the Exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include, “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## face

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means, “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as, “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression, “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression, “hide his face from” could be translated as, “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as, “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression, “say it to their face” could be translated as, “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression, “on the face of the land” could also be translated as, “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## faithful, faithfulness

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- [14-12] Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- [15-13] The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- [17-09] David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- [18-04] God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- [35-12]”The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’
- [49-17] But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- [50-04] If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## false god, foreign god, god, goddess

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Asherah poles](#), [Ashtoreth](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [Moloch](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.
- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**.”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **[18-13]** But most of Judah’s kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## **family**

### **Definition:**

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term “family” is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God’s family because they believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [house](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**famine****Definition:**

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies destroying crops.
- In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as, “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## fast

### Definition:

The term “to fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb “to fast” can also be translated as “to refrain from eating” or “to not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-01]** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **[34-08]**”For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **[46-10]** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

## ancestor, father, forefather

### Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as, “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4, “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as, “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **favor, favorable, favoritism**

### **Definition:**

The term “favor” refers to doing something to benefit someone who is regarded positively. Something that is “favorable” is positive, approving, or beneficial.

- The term “favoritism” means to act favorably toward some people but not others. Often favoritism is The term “favoritism” means acting favorably toward some people, but not others. shown toward people who are rich or are considered
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” means that someone is approved of by someone else.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as, “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

“find favor” “increased in favor” “won the favor of”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh**

### **Definition:**

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## **feast**

### **Definition:**

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as, “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **fellowship offering**

### **Facts:**

In the Old Testament, the “fellowship offering” was a kind of sacrifice that was offered for different reasons, such as to give thanks to God or to fulfill a vow.

- This offering required the sacrifice of an animal, which could be male or female. This was different from the burnt offering which required a male animal.
- After giving a portion of the sacrifice to God, the person who brought the fellowship offering shared the meat with the priests and other Israelites.
- There was a meal associated with this offering which included unleavened bread.
- This is sometimes called the “peace offering.”

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [fulfill](#), [grain offering](#), [guilt offering](#), [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#), [vow](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**fig****Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow to be as tall as 6 meters high and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## fire

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as, “cause you to experience suffering in order to purify you.”

(See also: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## firstborn

### Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born. Usually the firstborn

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “firstborn” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [son](#), [son of](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**flock, herd****Definition:**

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [kid](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [pig](#), [swine](#), [pork](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), )

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**flute, pipe****Definition:**

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: [flock](#), [shepherd](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**fool, foolish, folly****Definition:**

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## **foreigner, foreign, alien**

### **Definition:**

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from your own.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not only refer to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## forever

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **forgive, forgiveness**

### **Definition:**

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against a person who did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean, “cancel” as in the expression, “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as, “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”

(See: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [07-10] But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- [13-15] Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- [17-13] David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- [21-05] In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- [29-01] One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”
- [29-08] I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- [38-05] Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

**forsake, forsaken, forsook****Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, it means they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, it means he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used as past tense as in “he has forsaken you” or to refer to someone who has “been forsaken.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- The project language may find it more clear to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text is talking about forsaking a thing or a person.

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **foundation, founded**

### **Definition:**

The verb “founded” means to be built on or based on something. A foundation is the base on which something is built.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## free, freedom, liberty

### Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression, “to set someone free” or “to free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression “to set free” could be translated as “to cause to be free” or “to rescue from slavery” or “to release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## fulfill

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as, “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill” as in “fulfill your ministry” could include, “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#), [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[24-04]** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **[40-03]** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **[42-07]** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **[43-05]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **[43-07]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **[44-05]** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

## **furnace**

### **Facts:**

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

- In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
- Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
- Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## Galilee, Galilean

### Facts:

Galilee the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A “Galilean” was a person who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the “Sea of Galilee.”
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](#), [Nazarene](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Genesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-10]** The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in **Galilee**, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of **Galilee** where he lived.
- **[39-06]** Finally, the people said, “We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from **Galilee**.”
- **[41-06]** Then the angel told the women, “Go and tell the disciples, ‘Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to **Galilee** ahead of you.’”

**gate, gate bar****Definition:**

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be, “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase, “bars of the gate” could be translated as, “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## Gath

### Facts:

Gath was one of the five major cities of the Philistines. It was located north of Ekron and east of Ashdod and Ashkelon.

- The Philistine warrior Goliath was from the city of Gath.
- During the time of Samuel, the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant from Israel and took it to their pagan temple at Ashdod. It was then moved to Gath and later to Ekron. But God punished the people of those cities with disease, so they sent it back to Israel again.
- When David was escaping from King Saul, he fled to Gath and lived there for awhile with his two wives and six hundred men who were his loyal followers.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Ashkelon](#), [Ekron](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Gaza

### Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Philip, the evangelist](#), [Philistines](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Ethiopian](#), [Gath](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Gibeon, Gibeonite

### Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: [Gilgal](#), [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-06]** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- **[15-07]** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.
- **[15-08]** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

## gift

### Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as, “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Gilead

### Definition:

Gilead is the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river, where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region is also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Jephthah](#), [Manasseh](#), [Reuben](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## glory, glorious

### Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”



## goat, kid

### Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
  - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
  - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
  - A sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from the herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of their tendency to wander away from the one taking care of them.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second live goat and send it into the desert as a symbol of the animal bearing the people’s sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [herd](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#),)

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## gold

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## good, goodness

### Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ’**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## **governor, govern, proconsul, government**

### **Definition:**

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. The word “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage people.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” is made up of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for king or emperor, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [province](#), [provincial](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## grain offering

### Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [guilt offering](#) , [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sin offering](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites

### Facts:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son, Canaan.

- The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
- Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
- King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, which caused them to be on good terms.
- Hamath was one of Solomon's storehouse cities where provisions were kept.
- The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
- The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "people from Hamath."

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Syria](#), [Zedekiah](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## hand, right hand, to hand over

### Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says, “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: **Metonymy**)
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
  - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
  - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
  - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
  - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
  - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

### Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as, “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **harp**

### **Definition:**

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, usually having a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), [fir](#), [psalm](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## head

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in, “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as, “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression, “no razor will ever touch his head” means “ he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person as in, “this gray head” referring to an elderly person or “the head of Joseph” referring to Joseph. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as, “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See: [grain](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)

- This chunk : review-publish | publish-current
- Next chunk: publish-current

## heart

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.



## **Hebron**

### **Facts:**

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

- The city was built around 2,000 B.C. during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
- Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
- The city was destroyed around 70 A.D. by the Romans.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Absalom](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## high places

### Definition:

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- When a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel continuing to worship idols.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars are located.

(See also: [altar](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Hittite

### Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Esau](#), [foreigner](#), [foreign](#), [alien](#), [Ham](#), [mighty](#), [might](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Hivite

### Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- Like all these groups, the Hivites were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Hamor](#), [Noah](#), [Shechem](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## holy, holiness

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-16]** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[09-12]** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **[13-02]** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **[22-05]** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **[50-02]** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## holy place, most holy place

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to the both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It can also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as, “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term, “most holy place” could be translated as, “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include, “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [bread](#), [consecrate](#), [courtyard](#), [court](#), [curtain](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord**

### **Facts:**

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include, “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [gift](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-01]** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **[24-08]** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **[42-10]** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-03]** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **[43-08]** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**"
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.



## honey, honeycomb

### Definition:

Honey is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever the bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Jonathan](#), [Philistines](#), [Samson](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **honor, to honor**

### **Definition:**

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Horeb

### Definition:

Mount Horeb is another name for Mount Sinai, where God gave Moses the stone tablets with the ten commandments.

- Mount Horeb is called the “mountain of God.”
- Horeb was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
- Mount Horeb was the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites by giving them the stone tablets with his commandments written on them.
- It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.
- The exact location of this mountain is not known, but it may have been in the southern part of what is now the Sinai Peninsula.
- It is possible that “Horeb” was the actual name of the mountain and that “Mount Sinai” simply means “mountain of Sinai,” referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.

(See also: [covenant](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## horn, horns

### Facts:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram’s horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term “horn” is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.

(See also: , [authority](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [deer](#), [doe](#), [buck](#), [roebuck](#), [fawn](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [royal](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [trumpet](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **horse**

### **Definition:**

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Solomon](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## horsemen

### Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who are actually riding on the horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not use a lot of horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as, “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## house

### Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as, “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as, “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include, “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house of God](#), [Yahweh’s house](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## household

### Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and any servants they have.

- If someone manages a household, this would involve directing the servants as well as taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting



## house of God, Yahweh's house

### Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as, "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as, "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **humble, humility**

### **Definition:**

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand our weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- If a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as, “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[17-02]** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[34-10]** ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

## idol, idolatrous

### Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **[13-12]** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- **[14-03]** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.”
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

## **image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure**

### **Definition:**

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [God](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image of God](#), [image](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## incense

### Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that are burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made from mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include, “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [frankincense](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

### Definition:

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
  - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
  - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
  - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Promised Land](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

## innocent

### Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as, “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- The frequently occurring expression, “innocent blood” could be translated as, “people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed.”
- The expression “shed innocent blood” could be translated as, “kill innocent people” or “kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it.”
- In the context of someone being killed, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as, “not guilty for the death of.”
- When talking about people not accepting the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not” or “not responsible for whether they accept this message.”
- When Judas said, “I have betrayed innocent blood” he was saying, “I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong” or “I have caused the death of a man who was sinless.”
- When Pilate said about Jesus, “I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man,” this could be translated as, “I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-06] After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.



- **[40-04]** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**."
- **[40-08]** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God."
-

## integrity

### Definition:

The term “integrity” refers to being honest, with strong moral principles and behavior.

- Having integrity also means choosing to do what is honest and right even when nobody else is watching.
- Certain characters in the Bible, such as Joseph and Daniel, showed integrity when they refused to do evil and chose to obey God.
- The book of Proverbs says that it is better to be poor and have integrity than to be rich and corrupt or dishonest.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “integrity” could also be translated as, “honesty” or “moral uprightness” or “behaving truthfully” or “acting in a trustworthy, honest manner.”

(See also: [Daniel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Isaac

### Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [forever](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **[05-06]** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[05-09]** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **[06-05]** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **[07-10]** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

## Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

## **Issachar**

### **Facts:**

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Issachar's land was bordered by Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
- It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Manasseh](#), [Naphtali](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Zebulun](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## I, Yahweh; me, Yahweh

### Definition:

Many times in the Old Testament, when God is speaking about himself, he uses his name instead of a pronoun.

- For example, instead of saying, “Honor me,” he says, “Honor Yahweh.”
- To make it clear that God is the one talking about himself, the ULB often translates this by adding a pronoun such as in, “Honor me, Yahweh” or “I, Yahweh say.”
- By adding the pronoun “I” or “me,” the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some translators may decide it is natural and clear in their language to simply follow the literal text and use “Yahweh” with no pronoun added.
- Some may decide to use a pronoun with Yahweh only a few times at the beginning of a portion of text, but then omit the pronoun in the rest of that section. An ULB example of this is Deuteronomy 5:9-16.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- This is a summary of possible ways to translate “Yahweh” when God is talking:
  - “Yahweh” (literal)
  - “I, Yahweh” (or “me, Yahweh”)
  - “I” (or “me”)
  - Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”
- Another option would be to only add the pronoun occasionally, but not at every occurrence.
- The translation of this phrase should sound natural in the language and should make it clear that Yahweh is talking about himself.

(See also: [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Jacob, Israel

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning, "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means, "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him, so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[07-01]** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **[07-07]** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **[07-08]** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **[07-10]** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **[08-01]** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

## jealous, jealousy

### Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envy.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include, “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as, “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#), [covet](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **Jebusites, Jebus**

### **Facts:**

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, whose name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Ham](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Melchizedek](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Jehoram, Joram

### Facts:

Jehoram was the name of two different kings in the Old Testament. Both these kings were also known as “Joram.”

- One King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Judah for eight years. He was the son of King Jehoshaphat. This is the king that is most commonly known as Jehoram.
- The other King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Israel for twelve years. He was the son of King Ahab.
- King Jehoram of Judah reigned during the time that the prophets Jeremiah, Daniel, Obadiah, and Ezekiel were prophesying in the kingdom of Judah.
- Jehoram also reigned during some of the time that his father King Jehoshaphat was reigning over Judah.
- Some translations may choose to consistently use the name “Jehoram” when this king of Israel is mentioned and the name “Joram” for the king of Judah.
- Another way to clearly identify each one would be to include the name of his father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Obadiah](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **Jehoshaphat**

### **Facts:**

Jehoshaphat is the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The most well-known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel, and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a “recorder” for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [Solomon](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Jehu

### Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
- Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
- Jehu killed two evil kings: King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
- King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab, and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
- Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
- King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Baal](#), [Elisha](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Jezebel](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Jericho

### Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- Like all the Canaanites, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-01]** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **[15-05]** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

## Jeroboam

### Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of this, God had mercy on Israel and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **[18-09]** **Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

## Jerusalem

### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of present-day Israel.

- The name, “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem”, “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it was located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-05] David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- [18-02] In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- [20-12] So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- [38-02] After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- [42-08] ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”

- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."



## Jesse

### Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David, and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an “Ephrathite,” which means he was from the town of Ephrathah (Bethlehem).
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a “shoot” or “branch” that would come from the “root of Jesse” and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Boaz](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [king](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Ruth](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Jezebel

### Facts:

Jezebel was the wicked wife of King Ahab of Israel.

- Jezebel influenced Ahab and the rest of Israel to worship idols.
- She also killed many of God's prophets.
- Jezebel caused an innocent man named Naboth to be killed so that Ahab could steal Naboth's vineyard.
- Jezebel was finally killed due to all the evil things she had done. Elijah prophesied about how she would die and it happened exactly as he had predicted.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Elijah](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Jezreel

### Definition:

Jezreel was the name of an important Israelite city in the territory of the Issachar tribe, located southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The city of Jezreel is one of the western points in the Plain of Megiddo, which is also called the “Valley of Jezreel.”
- Several kings of Israel had their palaces in the city of Jezreel.
- Naboth’s vineyard was located near King Ahab’s palace in Jezreel. The prophet Elijah prophesied against Ahab there.
- Ahab’s evil wife Jezebel was killed in Jezreel.
- Many other significant events happened in this city, including several battles.

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Elijah](#), [Issachar](#), [Jezebel](#), [palace](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Joab

### Definition:

Joab was an important military leader for King David throughout his entire reign.

- Before David became king, Joab had already been one of his loyal followers.
- Later, during David's reign as king over Israel, Joab became the commander over King David's army.
- Joab was also King David's nephew since his mother was one of David's sisters.
- When David's son Absalom betrayed him by trying to take over his kingship, Joab killed Absalom in order to protect the king.
- Joab was a very aggressive fighter and killed many people who were enemies of Israel.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [David](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Jonathan

### Facts:

Jonathan is the name of at least ten men in the Old Testament. The name means, “Yahweh has given.”

- David’s best friend Jonathan is the most well-known man in the Bible with this name. Jonathan was King Saul’s oldest son.
- Other Jonathans mentioned in the Old Testament include: a descendant of Moses; a nephew of King David; several priests, including a son of Abiathar; and an Old Testament scribe in whose house the prophet Jeremiah was imprisoned.

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abiathar](#), [David](#), [Moses](#), [Jeremiah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [scribe](#), [expert in the Jewish law](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Jordan River

### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on the west from Jordan on the east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. Because it was too deep, God miraculously stopped the water from flowing so they could go across.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Genesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-02]** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **[19-14]** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

## Joseph (OT)

### Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-02]** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **[08-04]** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **[08-07]** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **[08-09]** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **[09-02]** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

## Joshua

### Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned different parts of the land for each of the tribes of Israel to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-04]** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **[14-08]** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **[14-14]** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **[14-15]** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.



## Josiah

### Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Judah](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Passover](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## joy, joyful

### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or with a phrase that means, “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” **Metonymy**)

(See also: [rejoice](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **[34-04]**”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## Judah

### Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern part of the nation.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

## just, justice, justly

### Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-09] David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- [18-13] Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- [19-16] They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

## kingdom

### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.



## kingdom of Israel

### Facts:

The term “kingdom of Israel” refers to the northern part of the nation of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many of Isaelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [kingdom](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-11]** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God.
- **[20-02]** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-04]** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.

## Judah, kingdom of Judah

### Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah, kingdom](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-07]** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-13]** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.
- **[20-05]** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.
- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.

- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

## king

### Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

## **kiss**

### **Definition:**

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression "to kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## know, knowledge, make known

### Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **labor, laborer**

### **Definition:**

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It often implies that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include, “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or “to work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#), [labor pains](#), [in labor](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **lamp**

### **Definition:**

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- Ordinary oil lamps were usually made out of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval-shaped, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [light](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## **lampstand**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- This term could be also translated as, “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as, “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament.
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

## Lebanon

### Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was also thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#), [fir](#), [Phoenicia](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## letter, epistle

### Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter are letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include, “written message” or “written down words” or “writing.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [encouragement](#), [exhort](#), [exhortation](#), [teach](#), [teaching](#), [teacher](#), [taught](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Levite, Levi

### Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple, Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## life, live, living, alive

### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

### 1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### 2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."



**lion****Definition:**

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## lord, master, sir

### Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated as “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It could also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, it could be translated as “master” if the context shows it means “religious teacher.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is written as “Lord” (capitalized).

(See also: [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-05]** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **[26-03]** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- **[27-02]** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **[31-05]** Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **[43-09]** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- **[47-03]** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **[47-11]** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”
-

## Lord

### Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

### Facts:

In the Old Testament, “Lord Yahweh” is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

- The term “Lord” is a divine title and “Yahweh” is God’s personal name.
- “Yahweh” is also often combined with the term “God” to form “Yahweh God.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If some form of “Yahweh” is used for the translation of God’s personal name, the terms “Lord Yahweh” and “Yahweh God” can be translated literally. Also consider how the term “Lord” is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
- Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as “Yahweh Lord.” Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title “Lord” come before or after “Yahweh”?
- “Yahweh God” could also be rendered as “God who is called Yahweh” or “God who is the Living One” or “I am, who is God.”
- If the translation follows the tradition of rendering “Yahweh” as “Lord” or “LORD,” the term “Lord Yahweh” could be translated as “Lord God” or “God who is the Lord.” Other possible translations could be, “Master LORD” or “God the LORD.”
- The term “Lord Yahweh” should *not* be rendered as “Lord LORD” because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## love

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## **lute, lyre**

### **Definition:**

The lute and the lyre are small, stringed, musical instruments that were used by the Israelites to worship God.

- A lyre looks like a small harp, with an open frame that the strings are strung across.
- A lute is very similar to a modern day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which the strings are strung.
- To play a lute or a lyre, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The lute, lyre, and harp are all played by strumming or plucking the strings.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Manasseh

### Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

- Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
- Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
  
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.
- King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
  
- Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
- One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [Dan](#), [Ephraim](#), [Ezra](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [pagan](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **man of God**

### **Facts:**

The expression “man of God” is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. It is also used to refer to an angel of Yahweh

- When referring to a prophet, this could also be translated as “man who belongs to God” or “man whom God has chosen” or “man who serves God.”
- When referring to an angel this could also be translated as, “messenger of God” or “your angel” or “heavenly being from God who looks like a man.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea**

### **Facts:**

In the Bible, the “Great Sea” or “western sea” refers to what is now called the “Mediterranean Sea,” which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the “western sea.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [prosper](#), [prosperity](#), [prosperous](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: [compassion](#), [compassionate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

## **messenger**

### **Facts:**

The term, “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Midian, Midianites

### Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called “Midianites.”

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro’s daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [flock](#), [herd](#), [Gideon](#), [Jethro](#), [Reuel](#), [Moses](#),

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[16-03]** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.
- **[16-04]** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them.
- **[16-11]** The man’s friend said, ”This dream means that Gideon’s army will defeat the **Midianite** army!”
- **[16-14]** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

## **mighty, might**

### **Definition:**

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## mind

### Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **Mizpah**

### **Facts:**

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Moab](#), [Moabite](#), [Moabites](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Moab, Moabite, Moabites

### Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabites" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as, "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Judea](#), [Lot](#), [Ruth](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **mock, ridicule, scoff at**

### **Definition:**

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [21-12] Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- [39-05] The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- [39-12] The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- [40-04] Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- [40-05] The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

## Molech, Moloch

### Facts:

Molech was the name of one of the false gods that the Canaanites worshiped. Other spellings are “Moloch” and “Molek.”

- People who worshiped Molech sacrificed their children to him by means of fire.
- Some of the Israelites also worshiped Molech instead of the one true God, Yahweh. They followed the evil practices of Molech worshipers, including sacrificing their children.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [God](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#), [worship](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Moses

### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Miriam](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[12-05]** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **[12-07]** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **[12-12]** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **[13-07]** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

## **mourn, mourning**

### **Facts:**

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively, to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## name

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Naphtali

### Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Sometimes the name Naphtali is used to refer to the land where the tribe lived. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. It was also on the western border of the Sea of Chinnereth.
- This tribe is mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asher](#), [Dan](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Nathan

### Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived during the time when David was king over Israel.

- God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
- Nathan rebuked David, in spite of the fact that David was the king.
- David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Uriah](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-07]** God sent the prophet **Nathan** to David with this message, “Because you are a man of war, you will not build this Temple for me.”
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet **Nathan** to tell David how evil his sin was.

## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- The term “nation” usually includes the idea of a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” can be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” is used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” is also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as, “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## neighbor

### Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **oak**

### **Definition:**

An oak is a tall, shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks for elderly people.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunk of certain oak trees could be as wide around as 6 meters.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Many translations will have to say “oak tree” rather than just “oak.”
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, this could be translated as “an oak, which is a large shade tree like...,” then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
- See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **oath, swear, swear by**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- Often in a court of law, a witness gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together as in, “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day use of the word “swear” means to use foul language. This is not its meaning in the Bible.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated by “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include, “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## obey, obedient, obedience

### Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#), [principle](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

**oil****Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## olive

### Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit is green in color, changing to black as they ripen. Olives are used for eating and extracting oil.
- Olive oil was used for cooking, for lighting lamps, and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **oppress, oppression, oppressor**

### **Definition:**

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated by, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include, “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## ordain

### Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term “ordain” often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, “to ordain” could be translated as “to assign” or “to appoint” or “to command” or “to make a rule” or “to institute.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [covenant](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**ox, oxen****Definition:**

An “ox” refers to a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen are depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Oxen working together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase “to be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [yoke](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## palace

### Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [high priest](#), [king](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **palm**

### **Definition:**

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Jerusalem](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Paran

### Facts:

Paran was a desert or wilderness area east of Egypt and south of the land of Canaan. There was also a Mount Paran, which may have been another name for Mount Sinai.

- The slave Hagar and her son Ishmael went to live in the wilderness of Paran after Sarah ordered Abraham to send them away.
- When Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, they passed through the wilderness of Paran.
- It was from Kadesh-Barnea in the wilderness of Paran that Moses sent twelve men to spy out the land of Canaan and bring back a report.
- The wilderness of Zin was north of Paran and the wilderness of Sin was south of Paran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Kadesh](#), [Kadesh-Barnea](#), [Meribah Kadesh](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## peace, peaceful

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## peace offering

### Facts:

A “peace offering” was one of several sacrificial offerings that God commanded the Israelites to make. It is sometimes called the “thanksgiving offering” or “fellowship offering.”

- This offering involved sacrificing an animal that had no defects, sprinkling the animal’s blood on the altar, and burning the animal’s fat, as well as the rest of the animal separately.
- Added to this sacrifice was an offering of both unleavened and leavened bread, which was burned on top of the burnt offering.
- The priest and offerer of the sacrifice were permitted to share in eating the food that was offered.
- This offering symbolizes the fellowship of God with his people.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [fellowship](#), [fellowship offering](#), [grain offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## people group, peoples, the people, a people

### Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase, “the people of” could be translated as, “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as, “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as, “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[14-02]** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **[21-02]** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **[42-08]** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **[42-10]** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **[48-11]** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **[50-03]** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

## **people of God, my people**

### **Definition:**

The term, “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says, “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- Other ways to translate “my people” when God says it, could include, “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Perizzite

### Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the “Perezites,” was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **perverse, perversely, pervert**

### **Definition:**

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God’s standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include, “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God’s straight path,” depending on the context.
- “perverse speech” could be translated as, “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God’s commands” or “living in a way that rejects God’s teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Pharaoh, king of Egypt

### Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as, “Pharaoh.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [king](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[08-08]****Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **[09-02]** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **[09-13]**”I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt’s gods.

## Philistines

### Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Ashkelon](#), [David](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## pillar, column

### Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- AS a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [founded](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **plague**

### **Definition:**

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as, “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [hail](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **plead, pleading, plea**

### **Facts:**

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **possess, possession**

### **Facts:**

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as, “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The terms “possess” could also be translated as, “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase, “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as, “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [worship](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## praise

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as, “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as, “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **[17-08]** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **[22-07]** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **[43-13]** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **[47-08]** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [06-05] Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- [21-07] Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- [43-13] The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## **priest, priesthood**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him".
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like, "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [04-07] "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- [19-07] So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- [21-07] An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

**prison, prisoner, imprison****Definition:**

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## **proclaim, proclamation**

### **Definition:**

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## promise

### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as, “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as, “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-15]** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”?
- **[03-16]** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **[08-15]** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **[17-14]** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **[50-01]** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

## **prostitute, harlot, whore**

### **Definition:**

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [sexual immorality](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **proverb**

### **Definition:**

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate “proverb” could include, “wise saying” or “true word.”

(See also: [Solomon](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **punish, punishment**

### **Definition:**

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

their

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **[48-06]** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- [49-11] Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.



## **pure, purify, purification**

### **Definition:**

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as, “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as, “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase, “provided purification for sins” could be translated as, “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include, “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## queen

### Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- The term “queen mothAthaliaher” usually refers to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence, as was seen in the case of Athaliah who influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: [Ahasuerus](#), [Athaliah](#), [Esther](#), [king](#), [Persia](#), [Persians ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Sheba](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **raise, rise, risen, arise, arose**

### **Definition:**

#### **raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase, “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase, “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### **rise, arise**

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose” and “arose” are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen”!

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “raise” or “raise up” can be translated as “to lift up” or “to make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as, “to cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead,” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as, “provide” or “appoint” or “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [exalt](#), [exaltation](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [21-14] The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- [41-05] "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- [43-07] "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- [44-05] "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- [48-04] This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- [49-02] He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- [49-12] You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## Ramah

### Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before moving to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Benjamin](#), [Rachel](#), [Samuel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Ramoth

### Facts:

Ramoth was an important city in the mountains of Gilead near the Jordan River. It was also called Ramoth Gilead.

- Ramoth belonged to the Israelite tribe of Gad and was designated as a city of refuge.
- King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah waged war against the king of Aram at Ramoth. Ahab was killed in that battle.
- Sometime later, King Ahaziah and King Joram tried to take the city of Ramoth from the king of Aram.
- Ramoth Gilead was where Jehu was anointed king over Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Gad](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Joram](#), [Jordan River](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **rebel, rebellious, rebellion**

### **Definition:**

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term “to rebel” could also be translated as “to disobey” or “to revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

:(See also: [authority](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[14-14]** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **[18-09]** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **[18-13]** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **[20-07]** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **[45-03]** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

## receive

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and to treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” can be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression, “you will receive power” could be translated as, “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could also be translated as, “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “God healed him so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-13] The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- [49-06] He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- [49-10] When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- [49-13] God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.



## **redeem, redemption, redeemer**

### **Definition:**

The terms “redeem” and “redemption” refer to buying back something that was previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full payment for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “the buying back.”
- The words, “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may only use one term to translate both these terms.

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [ransom](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

### Facts:

The “Sea of Reeds” was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the “Red Sea.”

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God did a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as, “Reed Sea.”

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), , [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-04]** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh’s army and the **Red Sea**.
- **[12-05]** Then God told Moses, ”Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**.”
- **[13-01]** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

## reed, reeds

### Facts:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Rehoboam

### Facts:

Rehoboam was one of the sons of King Solomon, and became the king of the nation of Israel after Solomon died.

- At the beginning of his reign, Rehoboam was severe with his people, so ten of the tribes of Israel rebelled against him and formed the “kingdom of Israel” in the north.
- Rehoboam continued as king of the southern kingdom of Judah which consisted of the two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Rehoboam was a wicked king who did not obey Yahweh, but worshiped false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-05]** After Solomon died, his son, **Rehoboam**, became king. **Rehoboam** was a foolish man.
- **[18-06]** **Rehoboam** answered foolishly and told them, “You thought my father Solomon made you work hard, but I will make you work harder than he did, and I will punish you more harshly than he did.”
- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against **Rehoboam**. Only two tribes remained faithful to him.

## **reign**

### **Definition:**

The term “to reign” means to rule as a king over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term ”reign is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel when they rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king” or “governing as king.”

(See also: [king](#), [kingdom](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## rejoice

### Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means, “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term, “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as, “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “to turn away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [16-02] After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- [17-13] David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- [19-18] They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- [24-02] Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- [42-08] “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- [44-05] “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

## report

### Definition:

The term “to report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A report can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression, “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include, “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

Waiting

shows the interruption of thought and

shows the interruption of thought and



## rest

### Definition:

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animal rests, it can mean that they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as, “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- When God says, “they will not enter my rest,” this could be translated as, “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**restore, restoration****Definition:**

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored, has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people are restored to their home country it means they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include: “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- An expression for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it means it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration,” could be translated as, “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## reward

### Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. “To reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because of doing something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement, “the reward of the wicked.” In this context, “reward” refers to punishment or negative consequences from sinful actions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- “To reward” someone could be translated by “to repay” or “to punish” or “to give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## righteous, righteousness

### Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

## right hand

### Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include, “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be, “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated by, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”
- In Psalm 105:9, God calls for an accuser to be at the “right hand” of a wicked leader sent to punish his rebellious people. This could be translated as, “appoint an accuser to have the place of honor beside that wicked leader” or “appoint an accuser to help that wicked leader punish them.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [mighty](#), [might](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**robe****Definition:**

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by both men and women. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short in length.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: [royal](#), [tunic](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## royal

### Definition:

The term “royal” describes people and things which are associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that can be called “royal” include a king’s clothing, palace, throne, or crown.
- A king or queen usually lives in a royal palace.
- A king wears special clothing, sometimes called “royal robes.” Often a king’s robes were colored purple, which was a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus are called a “royal priesthood.” Other ways to translate this could include, “priests who serve God the King” or “called to be priests for God the King.”
- The term “royal” could also be translated as “kingly” or “belonging to a king.”

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), [robe](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**ruin, ruins****Definition:**

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, “to ruin” could be translated as “to destroy” or “to spoil” or “to make useless” or “to break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## ruler, rulers, rule

### Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## sackcloth

### Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made out of goat hair or camel hair.

- Clothing made out of sackcloth was uncomfortable for the person wearing it. It was worn as a way of showing mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

### Translation Suggestions

- This term could also be translated as, “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as, “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [ash](#), [ashes](#), [dust](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [mourn](#), [mourning](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## sacrifice, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- [05-06] "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- [05-09] God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- [17-06] David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- [48-06] Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- [48-08] But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- [49-11] Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

## Samaria, Samaritan

### Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on the west and the Jordan River on the east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region and moved them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on the north and the region of Judea on the south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Galilee](#), [Galilean](#), [Judea](#), [Sharon](#), [Plain of Sharon](#), [kingdom of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-04]** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **[27-08]** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **[27-09]** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **[45-07]** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

## save, safe

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-08]** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **[12-05]** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **[16-17]** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **[44-08]** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **[47-11]** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## **seal, to seal**

### **Definition:**

To seal an object means to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## seed

### Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man or woman that combine to cause a baby to grow inside the woman.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared seeds to the Word of God being planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [offspring](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## seize

### Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” It could also be translated as, “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated as “overcome” or “suddenly come upon.”
- This term could also be translated as, “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression, “seized and slept with her” could be translated as, “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## send, send out, sent

### Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean “to cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as “send word” or “send a message” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently uses the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as, “commissioned me” or “caused me to come” or “appointed me to go.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **servant, slave, slavery**

### **Definition:**

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **[29-03]** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **[35-06]** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **[47-04]** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **[50-04]** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

**serve, service****Definition:**

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”<sup>1</sup>[comment\\_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940](#)
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means to be separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose.

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- The term “sanctify” means to set apart a person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include, “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking

### Definition:

In the Bible, these terms are euphemisms that refer to having sexual intercourse. (See: [Euphemism](#))

- To “sleep with” someone is a common way of referring to having sexual relations. The past tense is, “slept with.”
- In the Old Testament book, “Song of Solomon,” the ULB uses the term “lovemaking” to translate the word “love,” which in that context refers to sexual relations. This is related to the expression, “make love to.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may use different expressions of this term in different contexts, depending on whether it is talking about a husband and wife, or whether it is about some other relationship. It is important to make sure that the translation of this term has the correct meaning in each context.
- Depending on the context, expressions like these could be used to translate “sleep with”: “lie with” or “make love to” or “be intimate with.”
- Other ways to translate “have relations with” could include, “have sexual relations with” or “have marital relations with.”
- The term “lovemaking” could also be translated as, “loving” or “intimacy.” Or there may be an expression that is a natural way to translate this in the project language.
- It is important to check that the terms used to translate this concept are acceptable to the people who will be using the Bible translation.

(See: [sexual immorality](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Sheba

### Facts:

In ancient times, Sheba was an ancient civilization or region of land that was located somewhere in southern Arabia.

- The region or country of Sheba was probably located near what is now the present-day country of Yemen or Ethiopia.
- Its inhabitants were probably descendants of Ham.
- The Queen of Sheba came to visit King Solomon when she heard the fame of his riches and wisdom.
- There are also several men named “Sheba” listed in genealogies in the Old Testament. It is possible that the name of the region of Sheba came from one of these men.
- The city of Beersheba is shortened to Sheba one time in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), [Beersheba](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Ethiopian](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Shechem

### Facts:

Shechem is a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem is also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

- The town of Shechem is where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
- Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem, which later became his family burial ground and where Jacob's sons buried him.
- Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, which resulted in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))[Hamor](#)

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Esau](#), [Hamor](#), [Hivite](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## sheep, ram, ewe

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. The male sheep is called a “ram.” The female sheep is called a “ewe.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially males and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[17-02]** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **[30-03]** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **[38-08]** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

## shepherd, to shepherd

### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- In the Old Testament, God is called the “shepherd” of his people because he takes care of all their needs and protects them. He also leads and guides them.
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus calls himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also refers to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” is used to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The term “pastor” is the same word as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as, “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include, “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The expression, “to shepherd (a flock)” could be translated as, “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [09-11] Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- [17-02] David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- [23-06] That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- [23-08] The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- [30-03] To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

## shield

### Definition:

A shield is an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. "To shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval in shape and were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal that were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Paul also talks about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that believing in Jesus, and living out that faith in obedience to God, will protect believers from spiritual attacks from Satan.

(See also: [faith](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Shiloh

### Facts:

Shiloh was a walled Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites under the leadership of Joshua.

- The city of Shiloh was located west of the Jordan River and northeast of the city of Bethel.
- During the time that Joshua was leading Israel, the city of Shiloh was a meeting place for the people of Israel.
- The twelve tribes of Israel met together at Shiloh to hear Joshua tell them which portion of the land of Canaan had been assigned to each of them.
- Before any temple was built in Jerusalem, Shiloh was the place where the Israelites came to sacrifice to God.
- When Samuel was a young boy, his mother Hannah took him to live in Shiloh to be trained by the priest Eli to serve Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethel](#), [dedicate](#), [dedication](#), [Hannah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jordan River](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Samuel](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Shimei

### Definition:

Shimei is the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Shimei son of Gera, was a Benjamite who cursed King David and threw stones at him as he was fleeing Jerusalem to escape being killed by his son Absalom.
- There were also several Levite priests in the Old Testament who were named Shimei.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Benjamin](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## Sidon, Sidonians

### Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The “Sidonians” were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and the immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Noah](#), [Phoenicia](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Tyre](#), [Tyrians](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **siege, besiege**

### **Definition:**

The term “siege” refers to when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from being able to receive any supplies of food and water. To “besiege” a city means to cause that city to be under a siege.

- When Babylon came to attack Israel, they used a siege tactic on Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege attack, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- The expression “lay siege” means to perform a siege. It has the same meaning as “besiege.”
- The term “besieged” has the same meaning as the expression “under siege.” Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **sign, proof, reminder**

### **Definition:**

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can be reminders of something that was promised:
  - The rainbow God created in the sky was a sign to remind people that he would never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel told shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles done by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as, “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- \* **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- \* **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- \* **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- \* **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- \* **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- \* **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- \* **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- \* **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- \* **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## slaughter

### Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it.

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter where 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies. because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression, “the slaughter was very great” could also be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include, “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [slay](#), [slain](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## sleep, asleep, fall asleep

### Definition:

These terms have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The expression “fall asleep” refers to the moment when someone starts sleeping, or in its figurative sense, the moment when someone dies.
- To “sleep with the fathers” means to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to sleep” or “to be asleep” could be translated as “to be dead.”
- To “fall asleep” could be translated as “to suddenly be asleep” or “to start sleeping” or “to die,” depending on its meaning.
- note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expression “sleep” or “asleep” does not make sense in the project language.

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Solomon

### Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well-known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the beginning years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-14]** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **[18-02]** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **[18-03]** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries. ... When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **[18-04]** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

## son, son of

### Definition:

The term “son” refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone’s male offspring or to an adopted son.

- “Son” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes “sons of God” is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning, “having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include, “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah, son of Zadok” and “Azariah, son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **[04-09]** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **[09-07]** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **[11-06]** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **[26-04]** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

## soul

### Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means, “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means, “I am tired.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as, “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for translating the terms “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase, “dividing soul and spirit” could mean, “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## spear

### Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the “javelin” or “lance.”
- Make sure that the translation of “spear” is different from the translation of “sword,” which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: [prey, to prey on](#), [Rome, Roman](#), [sword](#), [warrior](#), [soldier](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## spirit, spiritual

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [13-03] Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- [48-07] All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.



## **statute, statutes**

### **Definition:**

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” or ” command” or “law” or “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## stone, stoning

### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. The term “stoning” refers to throwing stones and larger rocks at a person in order to kill him.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- The New Testament tells of a time that Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed because of testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [crime](#), [criminal](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## strength, strengthen

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to the state of being strong physically, emotionally, or spiritually. To “strengthen” means to make someone or something stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to being able to stand up against some kind of opposing force.
- A person has strength of will if he is able to not give in to temptation.
- One writer of the Psalms calls Yahweh his strength, which means that God helps him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is “strengthened,” it means that people are rebuilding the structure, to reinforce it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase, “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following expressions are examples of how this term is used, along with their meanings, which are also alternate ways they can be translated:
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means, “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means, “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means, “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means, “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means, “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means, “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means, “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means, “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means, “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means, “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means, “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#), [right hand](#), [salvation](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **stronghold, fortress, fortified**

### **Definition:**

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses are manmade structures with defensive walls. They can also be natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortify strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that make it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” refers to something that someone wrongly trusts in for security, such as a false god or other thing that is worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as, “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **subject, be subject to, in subjection to**

### **Facts:**

The term “subject” refers to being under the authority of someone. The phrase “be subject to” is a command that means “obey” or “submit to the authority of.”

- The phrase “put in subjection to” refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
- To “subject someone to something” means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
- Sometimes the term “subject” is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, “you will be the subject of ridicule.”
- The phrase “be subject to” means the same as “be submissive to” or “submit to.”

(See also: [submit](#), [in submission](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **Succoth**

### **Definition:**

Succoth is the name of two Old Testament cities. The word, “succoth” (or “sukkoth”) means “shelters.”

- The first city called Succoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
- Jacob stayed at Succoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
- Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Succoth as they were chasing the Midanites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
- The second Succoth is located on the northern border of Egypt and was one place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## suffer, suffering

### Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means to “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as, “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-13] God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- [38-12] Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- [42-03] He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- [42-07] He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- [44-05] “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- [46-04] God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.



## sweep, swept

### Facts:

The terms “sweep” and “swept” usually refer to a broad, quick movement to remove dirt using a broom or brush. These words are also used figuratively.

- The term “sweep” is used figuratively to describe how an army attacks with swift, decisive, wide-reaching movements.
- For example, Isaiah prophesied that the Assyrians would “sweep through” the Kingdom of Judah. This means they would destroy Judah and capture its people.
- The term “sweep” can also be used to describe the manner in which rapidly flowing water pushes things and forces them away.
- To have something “sweep over” a person means that overwhelming, difficult things are happening to him.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Isaiah](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## sword

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## temple

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” refers to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it refers only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- During the reign of King Solomon he built the Temple, which was the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- When it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations will translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it clear what is being referred to.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [court Zion](#), [Mount Zion house](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-06] David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- [18-02] In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.

- [20-13] When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- [25-04] Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- [40-07] When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

## tent

### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents made of sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he made tents to earn money to support himself.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## tent of meeting

### Facts:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [pillar](#), [column](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-08]** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain.
- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God.
- **[14-08]** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**.
- **[18-02]** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

## test

### Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to keep disobeying him, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to test” could also be translated as, “to challenge” or “to cause to experience difficulties” or “to prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as “to test” or “to set up a challenge” or “to force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## testimony, testify

### Definition:

The terms “testimony” and “testify” refer to making a statement about something that one knows to be true.

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term is often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of the testimony](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **threshold**

### **Definition:**

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as, “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), [gate bar](#), [tent](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## throne

### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a king sits to decide important matters and to listen to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a king has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the king, his reign, or his power. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God is often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus is described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## tomb, grave, burial place

### Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the word for a tomb or a grave can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include, “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [buried](#), [burial](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[32-04]** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **[37-06]** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **[37-07]** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **[40-09]** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **[41-04]** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **[41-05]** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

## transgress, transgression

### Definition:

The terms “transgress” and “transgression” refer to breaking a command, rule, or moral code.

- Figuratively, “transgression” can also be described as “crossing a line,” that is, going beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression”, “sin”, “iniquity”, and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “To transgress” could be translated as “to sin” or “to disobey” or “to rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance. (See: [parallelism](#))

(See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**tribe****Definition:**

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## tribute

### Definition:

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and good relations between their nations.

- A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers might pay a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include other things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: [gold](#), [king](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [tax](#), [taxes](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **trouble, troubles, troubled**

### **Definition:**

The term “trouble” refers to experiences in life that are very difficult and distressing. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.
- The action, “to trouble” someone means “to bother” that person or to cause him distress.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as, “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as, “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as, “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include, “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [affliction](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## true, truth, come true

### Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.



- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

## trumpet

### Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [earth](#), [earthly](#), [horn](#), [horns](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

The term “trust” refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A “trustworthy” person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include, “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as, “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: , [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

## turn, turn away, turn back

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Tyre, Tyrians

### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called “Tyrians.”

- Part of the city was also located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the coast.
- Because of its location and valuable natural resources such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers for building a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also gave King Solomon wood and skilled laborers for building the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Phoenicia](#), [Sidon](#), [Sidonians](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **understand, understanding**

### **Definition:**

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [know](#), [knowledge](#), [make known](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Uriah

### Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

- Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
- David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
- To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
- Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Hittite](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-12]** Bathsheba's husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of David's best soldiers. David called **Uriah** back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But **Uriah** refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent **Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed.
- **[17-13]** After **Uriah** was killed, David married Bathsheba.

## **vine**

### **Definition:**

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means, “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting



## **vineyard**

### **Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as, “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [vine](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## virgin

### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Mary](#), [the mother of Jesus](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-09]** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **[22-04]** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **[22-05]** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **[49-01]** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

**voice****Definition:**

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as, “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#), [splendor](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**VOW****Definition:**

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

- After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
- The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
- Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
- But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
- This word should be translated differently than "oath."

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## walk

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **water, waters**

### **Definition:**

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as, “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as, “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **will of God**

### **Definition:**

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term “to will” means “to determine” or “to desire.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The “will of God” could also be translated as, “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-05] She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- [18-01] When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- [23-09] Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.



**woe****Definition:**

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says, “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression, “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “(The people in) that city will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression, “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**word****Definition:**

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## **word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, ”The seed is the **word of God**.

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## works, deeds, work, acts

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## worship

### Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally, “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [praise](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **[14-02]** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, “**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.””
- **[26-02]** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **[47-01]** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

### Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as, “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase, “is worth more than” could be translated as, “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as, “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See: [honor](#), [to honor](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**written****Definition:**

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated: “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting



## Yahweh

### Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-14]** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **[13-05]** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

## **Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host**

### **Definition:**

The terms “Yahweh of hosts” and “God of hosts” are titles that express God’s authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

- The term “host” or “hosts” is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
- Phrases similar to “host of the heavens” refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
- In the New Testament, the phrase, “Lord of hosts” means the same as “Yahweh of hosts” but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word “Yahweh” is not used in the New Testament.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Ways to translate “Yahweh of hosts” could include, “Yahweh, who rules all the angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler of all creation.”
- The phrase “of hosts” in the terms “God of hosts” and “Lord of hosts” would be translated the same way as in the phrase “Yahweh of hosts” above.
- Certain churches do not accept the literal term “Yahweh” and prefer to use the capitalized word, “LORD” instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term “LORD of hosts” would be used in the Old Testament for “Yahweh of hosts.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Lord Yahweh](#), [Yahweh God Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## yoke

### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Zadok

### Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [David](#), [Jotham](#), [Nehemiah](#), [reign](#), [Solomon](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**zeal, zealous****Definition:**

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## Zion, Mount Zion

### Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## translationAcademy

### First, Second or Third Person

*This answers the question: What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*
- *Pronouns*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you”.

#### Description

#### Definitions

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

#### Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people uses the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “*Your servant* used to keep *his* father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
 “... Do you have an arm like *God’s*? Can you thunder with a voice like *him*? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)



God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful. Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to *my Lord*, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *his* brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

### Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first or second person.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

- **But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
  - But David said to Saul, “*I, your servant*, used to keep *my* father’s sheep.”

2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”).

- **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him?”** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
  - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like *mine*? Can you thunder with a voice like *me*?”
- **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
  - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *your* brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Forms of You*

## Abstract Nouns

This answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

### Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness* with *contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

### Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
  - ”Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
  - ”But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
  - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
  - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
  - ”Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
  - ”Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”
- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.**  
(1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
  - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

## Active or Passive

*This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

### Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

**ACTIVE:** *My father* built the house in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** *The house* was built by my father in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

### Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

## Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown into the sea*** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
  - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
  - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

## Apostrophe

*This answers the question: What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

Mountains of Gilboa, Let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling the mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

### Description

Apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. This calls his listener's attention to his feelings toward that person or thing.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to.

### Examples from the Bible

Come now, you who are rich, cry out loud because of the miseries coming upon you.  
(James 5:1 ULB)

James wrote to the church, which was made up of poor people, as if rich people could hear him, showing his anger about what rich people were doing.

The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, '... on you they will burn men's bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

### Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Have the speaker express his feelings toward the thing or idea without speaking directly to it.



**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, you may preserve the meaning of the apostrophe and let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him.

- **The man of God cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh and said, "Altar, altar, Yahweh says, ' ... on you they will burn men's bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)**
  - "The man of God said, "This is what Yahweh says *about this altar*' ... They will burn men's bones on *it*."

## Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding

*This answers the question: When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

In some languages, phrases can be used with a noun for two different things. They can either distinguish one item from another or they can give more information or a reminder about an item. Other languages use phrases with a noun only for distinguishing. When people who speak these languages hear a phrase with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another.

### Description

In some languages, phrases can be used with a noun for two different things. They can either distinguish one item from other possible items, or they can give more information about an item. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know or assume.

- "Mary gave some of the food to *her sister who was very thankful*.
  - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase "who was thankful" could distinguish this sister of Mary's from another sister who was not usually thankful.
- "Mary gave some of the food to her sister, *who was very thankful*."
  - This same phrase can be used to inform us about how Mary's sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages use phrases with a noun only for distinguishing one item from another. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, people who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish one item from other possible items.

### Examples from the Bible

**1. Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:** These usually do not cause a problem in translation.

... The curtain is to separate *the holy place* from *the most holy place*. (Exodus 26:33 ULB)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to *the woman who bore him*.  
(Proverbs 17:25 ULB)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

**2. Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:** These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these. (See: [Phrases that Inform or Remind](#))

for *your righteous judgments* are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULB)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgement from his unrighteous judgement, because all of his judgments are righteous.

Can *Sarah, who is ninety years old*, bear a son? - (Genesis 17:17-18 ULB)

The phrase “who is ninety years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, see [Phrases that Inform or Remind](#) for translation strategies.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

See [Phrases that Inform or Remind](#) for how to translate phrases that inform or remind.

## Double Negatives

*This answers the question: What are double negatives?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21)

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

### Description

Most languages express the negative near the verb or at the beginning or end of the sentence. Some languages also have prefixes or suffixes that express the negative as in “*unhappy*,” “*impossible*,” and “*useless*.” Some languages can also express the negative with pronouns like “none,” “nothing,” and “no one,” with adverbs like “nowhere,” and with prepositions like “without.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did *not* happen *without* the taking of an oath, (Hebrews 7:20 ULB)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” It emphasizes the negative, and means “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages a double negative simply means a positive. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is attractive.”
- In some language the double negative weakens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is a little bit attractive.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative often strengthens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is very attractive.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

### Examples from the Bible

so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

### Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
  - **For we do *not* have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
    - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses”
  - **so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
    - “so that they may be fruitful”
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “certainly.”
  - **Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished*** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
    - “Be sure of this—wicked people will *certainly* be punished”
  - **All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)

- "All things were made through him. He made *absolutely* everything that has been made."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Verbs*

## Doublet

*This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

### Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

### Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

### Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

### Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- “You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- “King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “a lamb *without any blemish at all*”



## Ellipsis

*This answers the question: What is ellipsis?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

### Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous  
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

### Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”  
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
  - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
  - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
  - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

## Euphemism

*This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

### Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

### Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

### Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
  - “whether we are alive or dead”

## Exclusive “We”

This answers the question: What is exclusive “we”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but *not* you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow



highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



**Reason this is a translation issue** - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we”. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

Forgive *us our* sins (Luke 11:4 ULB)

God has no sins to forgive; so languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

*we* have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Inclusive “We”*

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

*This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?*

**Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*



## Generic Noun Phrases

*This answers the question: What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things.

The *one who does what is right* is kept away from trouble and it comes upon *the wicked* instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to any specific people but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

Different languages have different ways of showing that a phrase refers to something in general. Translators should use ways of doing this that are natural in their language.

### Description

Generic noun phrases refers to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

Can *a man* walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?  
So is *the man who goes into his neighbor's wife*;  
*the one who has relations with her* will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. Translators should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in their language.

### Examples from the Bible

People curse *the man who refuses to sell them grain* (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to *a good man*, but he condemns *a man who makes evil plans*.  
(Proverbs 12:2 ULB)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

### Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULB to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. Here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
  - **Yahweh gives favor to *a good man*, but he condemns *a man who makes evil plans*.** (Proverbs 12:2 ULB)
  - “Yahweh gives favor to *the good man*, but he condemns *the man who makes evil plans*.” (Proverbs 12:2)

**The following examples show how the strategies may be applied to a noun phrase that has “the” in it. Use the strategy that is most natural in your language:**

- **People curse *the man who refuses to sell them grain*.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
    - “People curse *a man* who refuses to sell them grain”
  3. Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
    - “People curse *any man* who refuses to sell them grain”
  4. Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).
    - “People curse *men* who refuse to sell them grain”
  5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.
    - “People curse *whoever* refuses to sell them grain.”

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *When Masculine Words Include Women*

## Hendiadys

*This answers the question: What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Parts of Speech*

Hendiadys is when a speaker makes a single idea more forceful by connecting two nouns or adjectives with “and” when one of the words actually describes the other.

### Description

Hendiadys is when a speaker expresses a single idea by connecting two words with “and” when one of the words actually describes the other.

his own *kingdom and glory* (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a kingdom of glory or a glorious kingdom.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys has an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Some languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that one word describes the other.

### Examples from the Bible

for I will give you *words and wisdom* (Luke 21:15 ULB)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

if you are willing and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

### Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
  - "For I will give you *wise words*"
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory***. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
  - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own glorious kingdom*."

2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
  - "For I will give you *words of wisdom*"
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory***. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
  - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom of glory*."

3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

- **if you are willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)
  - "if you are willingly obedient"

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

- **if you are willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB) - The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."
  - "if you obey willingly"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Doublet*

## Hyperbole

*This answers the question: What is hyperbole?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

### Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

### Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

### Examples from the Bible

#### Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

### Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

### Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
  - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
  - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

## Hypothetical Situations

*This answers the question: What is a hypothetical situation?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Writing Styles*

“If the sun stopped shining...” “What if the sun stopped shining...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...” “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they’ll understand why the event was imagined.

### Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.



## Examples from the Bible

### 1. Hypothetical situation in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent.

### 2. Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that people do not mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, *if* he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

### 3. Hypothetical situation in the future

*Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened.* (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

### 4. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

The Israelites said to them, “*If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.* For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. *I wish that you were either cold or hot!* (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus' wished that the people were either hot or cold. He was rebuking them.

### Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

Also watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/GfFX1wWjJhA> ) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/jlbY2ikNtHU> ).

## Idiom

*This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

## Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
  - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
  - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
  - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
  - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
  - “I am crying my eyes out”

## Inclusive “We”

*This answers the question: What is inclusive “we”?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.”

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



**Reason this is a translation issue** - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let *us* now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to *us*.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let *us* go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/PrMC2jdqY0A> ) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/2K2gFIPMFVk> ).

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Exclusive “We”*

## Litotes

*This answers the question: What is litotes?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

### Description

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

### Reason this is a translation issue

People who speak some languages do not use litotes and would fail to understand that the statement is strengthened. They might think that it is weakened or even canceled.

### Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very worthwhile.

All things were made through him. *Without him was not one thing* made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using litotes John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very concerned.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are *not the least* among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*,** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
  - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you *did much good*."
- **Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
  - "Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
  - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter."



## Merism

*This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

### Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples from the Bible

*From the rising of the sun to its setting*, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

## Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
  - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
  - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
  - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
  - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

## Metaphor

*This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

### Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

## Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

## Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

### Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB )

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
  - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
  - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

## Metonymy

*This answers the question: What is a metonymy?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

### Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

### Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

### Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.



who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

### Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
  - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
  - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
  - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
  - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

## Nominal Adjectives

This answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*

Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

*The rich man* had huge numbers of flocks and herds, (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

*He will not be rich*; his wealth will not last; (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

*...the rich* must not give more than the half shekel, and *the poor* must not give less.  
(Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use adjectives this way.
- Readers may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about many people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are *the meek* (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

“The meek” here are people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.
  - **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
    - "The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *righteous people*."
  - **Blessed are *the meek*** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
    - "Blessed are *people who are meek*"

## Parallelism

*This answers the question: What is parallelism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

### Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

### Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

### **Translation Strategies**

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

### **Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

## Personification

*This answers the question: What is personification?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- “sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

**Note:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

## Pronouns

*This answers the question: What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*

Pronouns are words that people use instead of a noun to refer to someone or something. Some examples are I, you, he, it, this, that, himself, someone.

### Description

Pronouns are words that people use instead of a noun to refer to someone or something. There are six different types of pronouns.

### Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give.

#### Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
  - Inclusive “We”
  - Exclusive “We”
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - Forms of You
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

#### Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

#### Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it



**Relationship to other words in the sentence**

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

**Other Types of pronouns**

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

- **John saw *himself* in the mirror.** - The word “himself” refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- ***Who* built the house?**

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house *that* John built.** The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- **I saw the man *who* built the house.** The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen *this* here?**
- **Who is *that* over there?**

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to *anyone*.**
- ***Someone* fixed it, but I do not know *who*.**

## Direct and Indirect Quotations

This answers the question: What are direct and indirect quotations?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*
- *Verbs*
- *Quotations and Quote Margins*

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

- Direct Quotation: John said, “I do not know at what time I will arrive.”
- Indirect Quotation: John said that he did not know what time he would arrive.

When translating a quotation, translators need to decide whether to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/oe9Pbk8pFTw>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/9ZKDMCWuCiw>).

### Description

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by direct or indirect quotations.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker’s exact words. In the example below, John would have said “I” when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is telling about John John saying this, uses the word in the quotation “I” to refer to John.

- John said, “*I* do not know at what time *I* will arrive.”

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person’s point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as “he” in the quotation and uses the word “would,” which is the past tense of “will.”

- John said that *he* did not know what time *he* would arrive.

### Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below have both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULB)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him *to tell no one*,
- Direct quote: but told him, *”Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...”*

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, “The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, ‘Look here!’ or, ‘Look there!’ because the kingdom of God is among you.” (Luke 17:20-21 ULB)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees *when the kingdom of God would come*,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, *”The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, ‘Look here!’ or, ‘Look there!’ because the kingdom of God is among you.”*
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, *’Look here!’* or, *’Look there!’*

### Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

- **He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, *”Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
  - He instructed him to tell no one, but *to go on his way, and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*

2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

- **He instructed him *to tell no one*, but told him, **“Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”**** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
  - He told him *”Tell no one. But go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Quotes within Quotes*

## Reflexive Pronouns

*This answers the question: What are reflexive pronouns?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Pronouns*
- *Sentences*

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. This page will help you understand how English shows this and will help you to see how your language handles this.

### Description

**Reflexive pronouns** are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of referring to someone or something more than once in a sentence.
- The reflexive pronouns in English have other functions.

### Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- to show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- to show that someone did something alone
- to show that someone or something was alone

### Examples from the Bible

1. Reflexive pronouns used to that show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence

If *I* should testify about *myself* alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULB)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and *many* went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify *themselves*. (John 11:55 ULB)

2. Reflexive pronouns used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence

*Jesus himself* was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULB)

So they left the crowd, taking *Jesus* with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But *Jesus himself* was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULB)

### 3. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone did something alone

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain *by himself*. (John 6:15 ULB)

### 4. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone or something was alone

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. *It* was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place *by itself*. (John 20:6-7 ULB)

## Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

- **If I should testify about *myself* alone, my testimony would not be true.** (John 5:31)
  - “If I should *self-testify* alone, my testimony would not be true.”
- **Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *purify themselves*.** (John 11:55)
  - “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *self-purify*.”

2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

- **He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases.** (Matthew 8:17 ULB)

- "It was *he who* took our sickness and bore our diseases."

- **Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were.** (John 4:2)

- "It was *not Jesus who* was baptizing, but his disciples were."

3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

- **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.** (John 6:6)

4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."

- **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.** (John 6:15)

- "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again *alone* up the mountain."

5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

- **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.** (John 20:6-7 ULB)

- "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying *in a different place*."

## Rhetorical Question

*This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

### Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

*Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!* (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

### **Translation Strategies**

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
  - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
  - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
  - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
  - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
  - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

## Simile

*This answers the question: What is a simile?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

*for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day.* (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
  - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
  - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
  - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
  - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
  - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
  - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

## Synecdoche

*This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

### Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

*My soul* exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

*the Pharisees* said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”  
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
  - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
  - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

## Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural

*This answers the question: How do I know if the word 'you' is dual or plural?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Forms of You*
- *Pronouns*
- *Parts of Speech*

Some languages have a **singular** form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to only two people. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.

### Description

Some languages have a **singular** form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to only two people. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. However, they do not show us whether it refers to only two people or more than two people. When the pronouns do not show us how many people the word “you” refers to, we need to look at the context to see who the speaker was referring to.

### Reasons this is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular, dual, and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know the number of people who were being spoken to.

## Examples from the Bible

*James and John, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him and said, "Teacher, we want you to do for us whatever we ask you." He [Jesus] said to them, "What do you want me to do for you?"* (Mark 10:35-36 ULB)

Jesus is asking the **two**, James and John, what they want him to do for them. If the target language has a **dual** form of "you," it would be appropriate to use it here. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

... and Jesus sent out two of his disciples and said to them, "Go into the village opposite us. As soon as you enter it, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me." (Mark 11:1-2 ULB)

The context makes it clear that Jesus is addressing **two** persons. If the target language has a **dual** form of "you," it would be appropriate to use it here. If the target language does not have a dual form, then the plural form would be appropriate.

James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes of the Dispersion, greetings. Consider it all joy, my brothers, when you experience various troubles, knowing that the testing of your faith works endurance. (James 1:1-3 ULB)

James wrote this letter to many people, so the word "you" refers to many people. If the target language has a **plural** form of "you," it would be appropriate to use it here.

## Strategies for finding out how many people "you" refers to

1. Look at the notes to see if they tell whether "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
2. Look at the UDB to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word "you" refers to one person or more than one person.
3. If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes "you" singular from "you" plural, see which form of "you" that Bible has in that sentence.
4. Look at the context to see who the speaker was talking to and who responded.

Also watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk>) or the tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc>).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular*



## Biblical Distance

*This answers the question: How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Decimal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

### Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

Original Measure	Centimeters	Meters
handbreadth	8 centimeters	.08 meters
span	23 centimeters	.23 meters
cubit	46 centimeters	.46 meters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters	.54 meters
stadia	-	185 meters

### Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)

1. Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half kubits*; its width will be *one kubit and a half*; and its height will be *one kubit and a half*."

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*; its width will be *0.7 meter*; and its height will be *0.7 meter*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *3 3/4 feet*; its width will be *2 1/4 feet*; and its height will be *2 1/4 feet*."

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half cubits (one meter)*; its width will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*; and its height will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*<sup>1</sup>; its width will be *0.7 meter*<sup>2</sup>; and its height will be *0.7 meter*." The footnotes would look like:
  - <sup>[1]</sup> one meter two and a half cubits
  - <sup>[2]</sup> one cubit and a half

## Biblical Volume

*This answers the question: How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Decimal Numbers*

### Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain).

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	kor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

### Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

- **For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULB)

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one *bat*, and one *homer* of seed will yield only an *efa*."

2. Use the measurements given in the UDB. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *twenty-two liters*, and *ten baskets* of seed will yield only *one basket*."
  - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *twenty-two liters* and *220 liters* of seed will yield only *twenty-two liters*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and *six and a half bushels* of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *one bath (six gallons)*, and *one homer (six and a half bushels)* of seed will yield only *an ephah (twenty quarts)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in footnotes.

- "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters<sup>1</sup>, and 220 liters<sup>2</sup> of seed will yield only twenty-two liters<sup>2</sup>." The footnotes would look like:

- <sup>[1]</sup>one bath
- <sup>[2]</sup>one home
- <sup>[3]</sup>one ephah

### When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULB and UDB, add the word “measure.”

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty measures* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty measures* of wine, there were only *twenty*.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

### Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty measures* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty measures* of wine, there were only *twenty*.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
  - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
  - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty amounts* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty amounts* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
  - “whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty baskets* of grain, there were only *ten*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty jars* of wine, there were only *twenty*.”
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

- "whenever anyone came to the grainery for *twenty liters* of grain, there were only *ten liters*, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out *fifty liters* of wine, there were only *twenty liters*."

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Fractions*
- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

## Biblical Weight

*This answers the question: How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

### Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The exact weights are uncertain, but the approximate amounts are:

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	-	0.57 kilograms
mina	50 shekels	570 grams	0.57 kilograms
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

### Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.



## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

- **The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents and 2,400 shekels*.** (Exodus 38:29 ULB)

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents and 2,400 sekels*."

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *2,400 kilograms*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *5,300 pounds*"

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.

- "The bronze from the offering weighed *seventy talents and 2,400 shekels*.<sup>1</sup>" The footnote would look like:
  - <sup>[1]</sup> This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- [Decimal Numbers](#)
- [Fractions](#)

## Hebrew Months

This page answers the question: What are the Hebrew months?

*In order to understand this page, it would be good to read*

- [Ordinal Numbers](#)

### Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

### Reasons this is a translation issue

1. Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months they use.
2. Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
3. Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
4. The scripture may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

### List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

**Abib** - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile) - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

**Ziv** - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

**Sivan** - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

**Tammuz** - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

**Ab** - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

**Elul** - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

**Ethanim** - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

**Bul** - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

**Kislev** - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

**Tebeth** - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

**Shebat** - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

**Adar** - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

### Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in *the month of Abib*. (Exodus 13:4 ULB)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day *in the first month of the year*, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULB)

### Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

1. Tell the the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- **At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of Abib*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.** (Exodus 23:15 ULB)
- **It will always be a statute for you that in *the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work** (Leviticus 16:29 ULB)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the first month of the year*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."

2. Use the months that people know.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of March*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."
- "It will always be a statute for you that *on the day I choose in late September* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

3. State clearly what season the month occurred.

- "It will always be a statute for you that *in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work"

4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

- "It will always be a statute for you that in *the day I choose in early autumn* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

## How to Translate Names

*This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

*Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

### Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
  - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
  - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
  - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;”

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Paul*”<sup>1</sup> The footnote would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
  - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) \*  
 “But \_\_Saul\_\_, who is also called \_\_Paul\_\_, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” \* \*\*It came about in Iconium that \_\_Paul\_\_ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue\*\*  
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"  
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
  - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Copy or Borrow Words*



## Numbers

*This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

### Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

### Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

### Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

### Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents),* and bronze and iron in large quantities.

**Consistency**

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

**Consistency in the ULB and UDB**

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived *130* years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived *930* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

## Ordinal Numbers

*This answers the question: What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Numbers*

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the

order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

### Examples from the Bible

The *first* lot went to Jehoiarib, the *second* to Jedaiah, the *third* to Harim, the *fourth* to Seorim, ... the *twenty-third* to Delaiah, and the *twenty-fourth* to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The *first* row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The *second* row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The *third* row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The *fourth* row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably be the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

### Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
  - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *another* to Jedaiah, *another* to Harim,... *another* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
  - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *the next* to Jedaiah, *the next* to Harim,... *the next* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
- **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *the first* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the second* river is Gihon. This one flows**

**throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the third* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. *The fourth* river is the Euphrates.**(Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)

- "A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *one* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the next* river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the next* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The *last* river is the Euphrates."

2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

- "They cast *twenty-four* lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah."

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Fractions*

## Symbolic Action

*This answers the question: What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

### Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. An action does not have to actually be performed; it may simply be referred to.

### Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

### Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes.”

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

### Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and *knock*. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people want someone to welcome them into their home, they stand at the door and knock on it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
  - "Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him."
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
  - "Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in."

2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
  - "Jairus showed Jesus great respect."
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
  - "Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in."

3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.



- “Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.”

## Translate Unknowns

*This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

### Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly *ravenous wolves*.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
  - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals*."
- **We have here only five *loaves of bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
  - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
  - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
  - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
  - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
  - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
  - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*

## Background Information

*This answers the question: What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Order of Events*
- *Writing Styles*

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. Sometimes a writer may give some background information to help his listeners understand the story. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story. The story teller and translator need to tell the story in a way that people will know whether an event is background information and will be able to understand what order the events happened in.

### Description

Every story has a storyline. The storyline tells a series of events mostly in the time order that the events happened. It is full of action verbs that moves the reader along the storyline. Occasionally an author may take a break from the storyline to share something of interest. This break is called **background information**. The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because *their village was going to have a a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!* They walked for hours through low bushes until they found a wild pig. They shot the pig and killed it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope *they had brought with them*, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that *it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.*

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter *was* the best hunter in the village" and "*it was* his own pig."

Sometimes a storyteller makes a break in the story to tell about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a a feast the next day" and "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," "that they had brought with them," and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins's pig.

### A writer may use background information

- to help their listeners be interested in the story.
- to help their listeners understand something in the story.
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story.

- to tell the setting of a story. Setting includes:
  - where the story takes place.
  - when the story takes place.
  - who is present when the story begins.
  - what is happening when the story begins.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Translators need to know whether or not the events in the Bible happened in the same order that they are told.
- Translators will need to translate the story in a way that their own readers will understand the order of events.

### Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram *was* eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, *was* about thirty years of age. He *was* the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULB)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULB)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence "But some of the Pharisees said."

### Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study the grammar and punctuation of your language. Observe how your language presents background information in writings. Follow those same grammar rules when you translate.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.

2. Reorder the information so that that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

### Examples of Translation Strategies applied

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULB English translations.

- **Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli.** (Luke 3:23 ULB)- English uses the word “now” to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb “was” shows that it is background information.
- **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch *for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done.* But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20 ULB) The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb “had” in “had done” shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

2. Reorder the information so that that earlier events are mentioned first.

- **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULB)
  - “When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”
- **John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch *for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done.* But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20) - The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.
  - “Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Connecting Words*
- *Introduction of a New Event*

## Introduction of a New Event

*This answers the question: How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Writing Styles*
- *Order of Events*

When people tell a story or when they start a new part of a story, they often put certain information at the beginning, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. They may have certain ways of telling these things. For your translation to sound natural you may need to follow those ways.

### Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. New events in a story might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? You may need to change how and in what order new information is introduced at the beginning of a new event in order for your translation to sound natural in your language.

Here are some examples of how some events are introduced in the books of Matthew and Luke.

*In the days of Herod, king of Judea, there was a certain priest named Zechariah, from the division of Abijah. His wife was from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULB)*

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrase introduce the main people.

*One day while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULB)*

Like 1:5-7 tell about Zechariah and Elizabeth being old and not having any children. The phrase *One day* helps to introduces the first event in this story.

*The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULB)*

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.



*After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,...* (Matthew 2:1 ULB)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened *after* Jesus was born.

*In those days* John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying, ... (Matthew 3:1-2 ULB)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

*Then* Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULB)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

### Examples from the Bible

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULB)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

<sup>6</sup>Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. <sup>7</sup>Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6,7 ULB)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of the chapter. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. This sentence introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this simply introduces the event. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

### Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULB or UDB. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

- **Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him ...** (John 3:1,2)
  - “There was a man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council. One night he came to Jesus and said...”
  - “One night a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council, came to Jesus and said ...”
- **As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting at the tax collecting place, and he said to him ...** (Mark 2:14 ULB)
  - “As he passed by, *Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting* at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and and said to him ...”
  - “As he passed by, *there was a man sitting* at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...”
  - “As he passed by, *there was a tax collector* sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...”

2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

- **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULB) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.
  - “*After that*, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.”
- **Again he began to teach beside the lake.** (Mark 4:1 ULB) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.
  - “*Another time* Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.”
  - “Jesus went to the lake and began to teach people again there.”

3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary. This is one way that it can be done in English.

- **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULB)
  - “*Now this is what happened when* Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.”

4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

- **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.** (Genesis 7:6 ULB)
  - *"Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because God had said that the waters of the flood would come."*

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Background Information*
- *Introduction of New and Old Participants*

## Proverbs

*This answers the question: What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Metaphor*
- *Parallelism*
- *Writing Styles*

People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. When you follow your language's ways of saying proverbs, you will make your translation sparkle.

### Description

Proverbs are a sentence or a few sentences that give wisdom or teach a truth. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism.

Hatred stirs up conflicts,  
but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULB)

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise.  
It has no commander, officer, or ruler,  
yet it prepares its food in the summer,  
and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULB)

### Reason this is a translation issue:

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in a way for people to recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

### Examples from the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,  
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULB)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,  
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULB)

This means that if a person is lazy and does do what he was sent to do, he will be very annoying to those who send.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,  
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULB)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.  
□

### Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways. Here are some ideas for ways people might say a proverb in their language.

**A good name is to be chosen over great riches,  
and favor is better than silver and gold.** (Proverbs 22:1 ULB)

- “It is better to have a good name than to have great riches, and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.”
- “Wise people choose a good name over great riches and favor over silver and gold.”
- “Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.”
- “Will riches really help you? I would rather have a good reputation.”

2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

**Like *snow in summer* or *rain in harvest*,  
so a fool does not deserve honor.** (Proverbs 26:1 ULB)

- “It is not natural for *a cold wind to blow in the hot season* or for it to rain in the harvest season; And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.”

3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

**Do not boast about tomorrow** (Proverbs 27:1 ULB)

- “Do not count your chickens before they hatch.”

4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

**A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother,  
that is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,  
but they are not washed of their filth.** (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULB)

- “People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous, and they do not turn away from their sin.”